HONDA

NEW CITY e:HEV

Owner's Manual

As you read this manual, you will find Information that is preceded by a symbol NOTICE. This information is intended to help you avoid damage to your vehicle, other property, or the environment.

Symbols ⚠ 🕮 or ⚠⚠🕮 on labels attached to your vehicle are to remind you to read this owner's manual for proper and safe operation of your vehicle.

⚠ or ⚠⚠ is colour-coded to indicate "danger" (red), "warning" (orange), or "caution" (amber).

➔ **Safety Labels** P. 94

A Few Words About Safety

Your safety, and the safety of others, is very important. And operating this vehicle safely is an important responsibility.

To help you make informed decisions about safety, we have provided operating procedures and other information on labels and in this manual. This information alerts you to potential hazards that could hurt you or others.

Of course, it is not practical or possible to warn you about all the hazards associated with operating or maintaining your vehicle. You must use your own good judgement.

You will find this important safety information in a variety of forms, including:

- **Safety Labels** - on the vehicle.
- **Safety Messages** - preceded by a safety alert symbol ⚠ and one of three signal words: **DANGER**, **WARNING**, or **CAUTION**. These signal words mean:

⚠DANGER	You WILL be KILLED or SERIOUSLY HURT if you don't follow instructions.
⚠WARNING	You CAN be KILLED or SERIOUSLY HURT if you don't follow instructions.
⚠⚠WARNING	You CAN be KILLED or SERIOUSLY HURT if you don't follow instructions.
⚠CAUTION	You CAN be HURT if you don't follow instructions.

- **Safety Headings** - such as Important Safety Precautions.
- **Safety Section** - such as Safe Driving.
- **Instructions** - how to use this vehicle correctly and safely.

This entire book is filled with important safety information - please read it carefully.

Event Data Recorders

Your vehicle is equipped with several devices commonly referred to as Event Data Recorders. They record various types of real time vehicle data such as SRS airbag deployment and SRS system components failure.

This data belongs to the vehicle owner and may not be accessed by anyone else except as legally required or with the permission of the vehicle owner.

However this data may be accessed by Honda, its authorised dealers and authorised repairers, employees, representatives and contractors only for the purpose of the technical diagnosis, research and development of the vehicle.

Service Diagnostic Recorders

Your vehicle is equipped with service-related devices that record information about powertrain performance and driving conditions. The data can be used to help technicians diagnose, repair and maintain the vehicle. This data may not be accessed by anyone else except as legally required or with the permission of the vehicle owner.

However this data may be accessed by Honda, its authorised dealers and authorised repairers, employees, representatives and contractors only for the purpose of the technical diagnosis, research and development of the vehicle.

This owner's manual should be considered a permanent part of the vehicle and should remain with the vehicle when it is sold.

This owner's manual covers all models of your vehicle. You may find descriptions of equipment and features that are not on your particular model.

The images throughout this owner's manual (including the front cover) that depict features, equipment, and Meter screens are only examples and may not be representative of your particular model.

The information and specifications included in this publication were in effect at the time of approval for printing. Honda Motor Co., Ltd. reserves the right, however, to discontinue or change specifications or design at any time without notice and without incurring any obligation.

Safe Driving P. 35

For Safe Driving P. 36 Seat Belts P. 40 Airbags P. 50

Instrument Panel P. 95

Indicators P. 96 Gauges and Driver Information Interface P. 114

Controls P. 137

Clock P. 138 Locking and Unlocking the Doors P. 140
Windows P. 156 Sunroof* P. 160
Seats P. 184 Interior Convenience Items P. 193

Features P. 211

Driving P. 213

Before Driving P. 214 Towing a Trailer P. 217 When Driving P. 218
Refueling P. 315 Fuel Economy and CO_2 Emissions P. 317

Maintenance P. 319

Before Performing Maintenance P. 320 Maintenance Schedule P. 323
Checking and Maintaining Wiper Blades P. 347
Remote Transmitter Care P. 359
Accessories and Modifications P. 369

Handling the Unexpected P. 371

Tools P. 372 If a Tyre Goes Flat P. 373
Shift Lever Does Not Move P. 399 Overheating P. 400

Information P. 419

Specifications P. 420 Identification Numbers P. 423

Contents

Child Safety P. 60
Exhaust Gas Hazard P. 93
Safety Labels P. 94

Opening and Closing the Boot P. 152
Operating the Switches Around the Steering Wheel P. 162
Climate Control System P. 207
Security System P. 154
Mirrors P. 181

Honda SENSING P. 242
Braking P. 301
Parking Your Vehicle P. 311

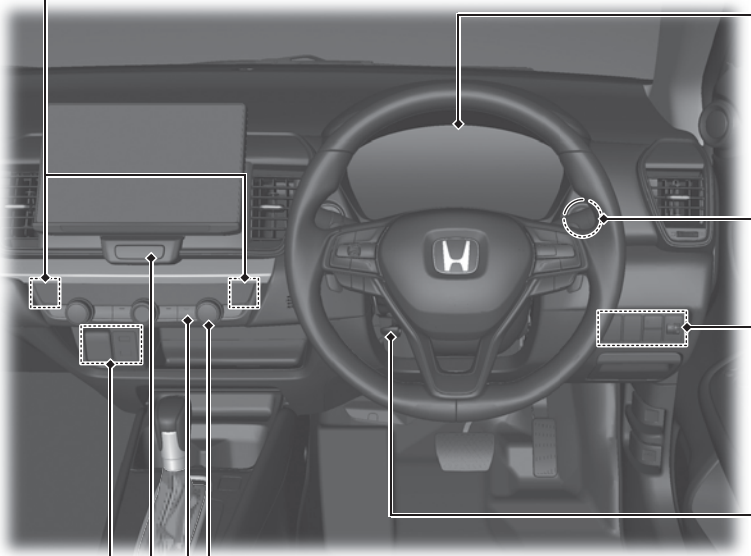
Maintenance Under the Bonnet P. 328
Checking and Maintaining Tyres P. 349
Climate Control System Maintenance P. 361
Replacing Light Bulbs P. 339
12-Volt Battery P. 356
Cleaning P. 363

Handling of the Jack P. 392
Indicator Coming On/Blinking P. 402
Power System Won't Start P. 393
Fuses P. 409
If the 12-Volt Battery Is Dead P. 396
Emergency Towing P. 417

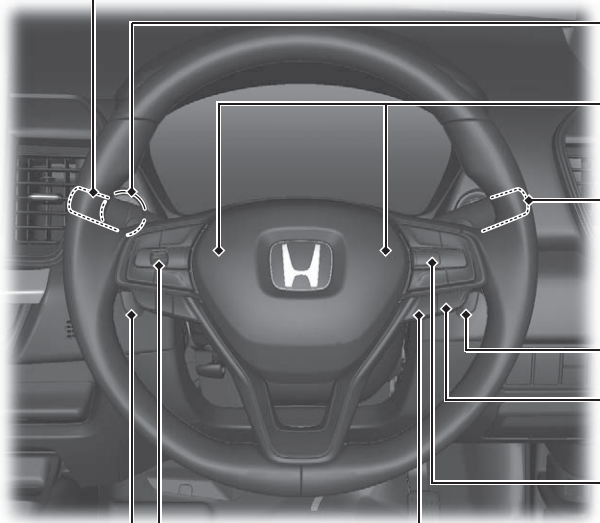
Devices that Emit Radio Waves* P. 424
Open Source Licence P. 425

Quick Reference Guide P. 4
Safe Driving P. 35
Instrument Panel P. 95
Controls P. 137
Features P. 211
Driving P. 213
Maintenance P. 319
Handling the Unexpected P. 371
Information P. 419
Index P. 426

Visual Index



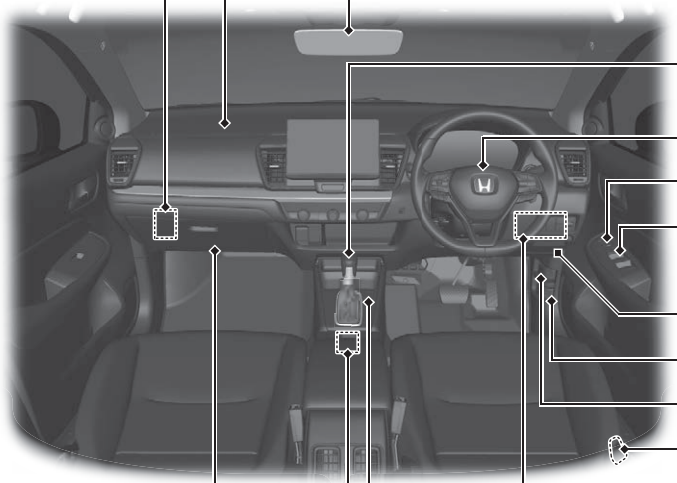
- Front seat Ventilator Buttons* P. 206
- Clock P. 138
- System Indicators P. 96
- Gauges P. 114
- Driver Information Interface P. 116
- POWER Button P. 162
- (Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) System OFF) Button P. 235
- Headlight Adjuster P. 169
- Acoustic Vehicle Alerting System OFF Button* P. 233
- Steering Wheel Adjustments P. 180
- Climate Control System P. 207
- Rear Demister Button P. 179
- Hazard Warning Button
- Accessory Power Socket P. 200
- USB Port* P. 205



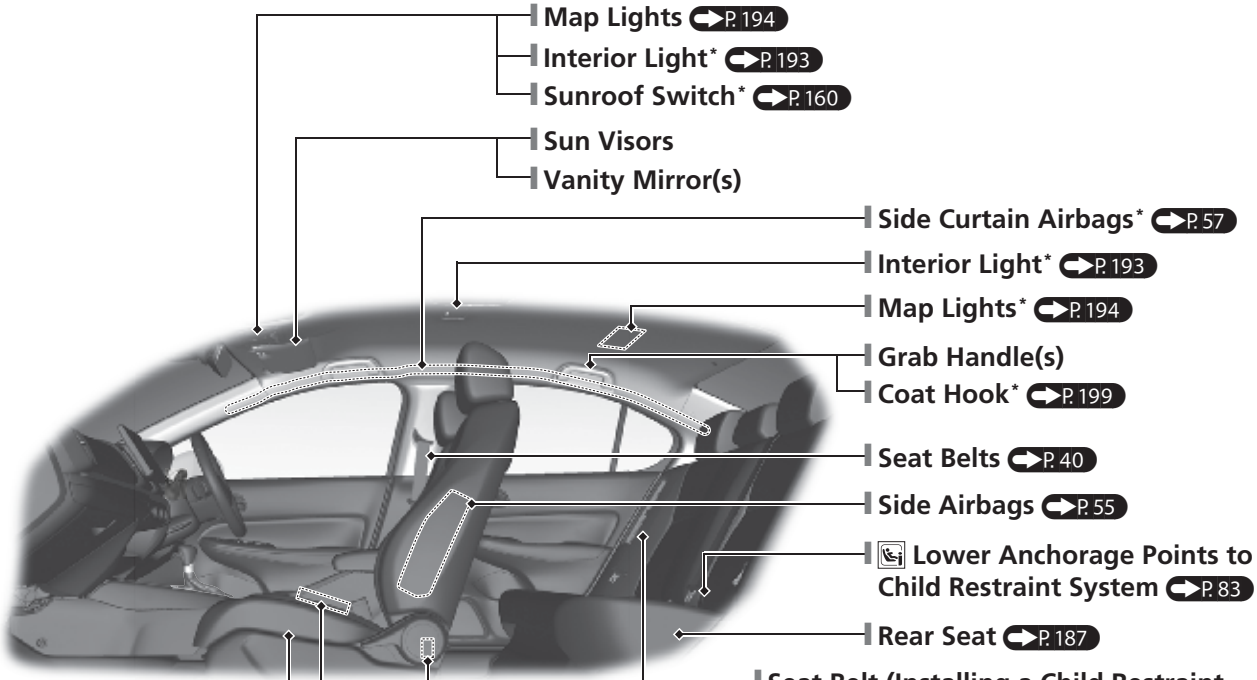
- Wipers/ Washers P. 176
- CAMERA Button*, *1
- Brightness Control P. 178
- Horn (Press an area around)
- Headlights/ Turn Signals P. 165, 166
- CAMERA Button*, *1
- LaneWatch Button*, *1
- Paddle Shifter + P. 229
- Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS) Button P. 284
- Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow Buttons P. 266
- Interval Button P. 280
- Left Selector Wheel P. 116
- Paddle Shifter − P. 229

*1 : Details are listed in a separate manual.

Visual Index

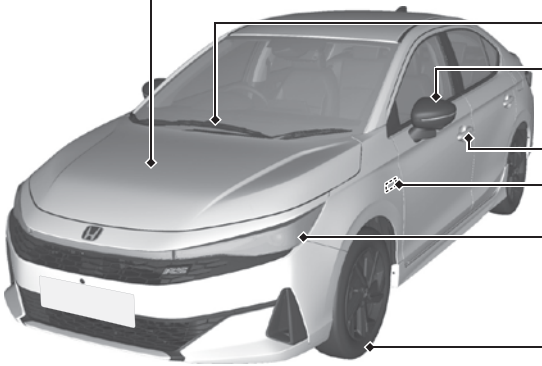


Passenger's Side Interior Fuse Box P. 414
Passenger's Front Airbag P. 52
Rearview Mirror P. 181
Shift Lever
Transmission P. 226, 227
Driver's Front Airbag P. 52
Door Mirror Controls P. 182
Power Window Switches P. 157
Master Door Lock Switch P. 150
Driver's Side Pocket P. 197
Bonnet Release Handle P. 329
Fuel Fill Door Release Handle P. 316
Boot Opener P. 152
Driver's Side Interior Fuse Box P. 412
ECON Button P. 232
Electric Parking Brake Switch P. 301
Automatic Brake Hold Button P. 305
Glove Box P. 195

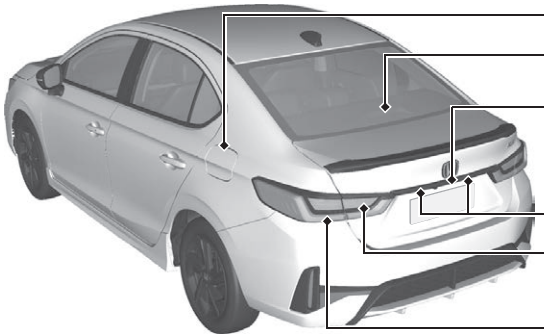


* Not available on all models

Visual Index



Maintenance Under the Bonnet P. 328
Windscreen Wipers P. 176, 347
Power Door Mirrors P. 182
Side Turn Signal Lights* P. 165, 339
Door Lock/Unlock Control P. 142
Side Turn Signal Lights* P. 165, 339
Headlights P. 166, 339
Front Turn Signal Lights P. 165, 339
Position/Daytime Running Lights P. 166, 175, 339
Tyres P. 349, 373



How to Refuel P. 316
High-Mount Brake Light P. 343
Opening/Closing the Boot P. 152
Boot Release Button P. 153
Rear Licence Plate Lights P. 343
Back-Up Lights P. 342
Taillights P. 342
Rear Turn Signal Lights P. 340
Brake Lights P. 340
Rear Side Marker/Taillights P. 340

e:HEV

Your e:HEV vehicle uses both an electric motor and a petrol engine as propulsion sources, with the electric motor receiving electricity from an internal High Voltage battery and/or internal generator. The High Voltage battery is charged from the generator driven by the engine or regenerative braking.

When driving, your vehicle is propelled exclusively by the electric motor, exclusively by the petrol engine, or by a combination of the two. The system selects which propulsion source is most appropriate and automatically switches to it.

- **Energy efficiency**
  As with a petrol-powered vehicle, hybrid vehicle fuel efficiency and driving range is most impacted by your driving style. Aggressive acceleration and high-speed driving can easily trigger the system to switch the propulsion source to the petrol-powered engine.
  In addition, heavy climate control system use negatively affects vehicle range and efficiency. Either of these use patterns will more quickly reduce the High Voltage battery's state of charge.

- **Battery types**
  There are two types of batteries used in this vehicle; a standard 12-volt battery that powers the airbags, the interior and exterior lights, and other standard 12-volt systems; and a High Voltage battery that is used to power the propulsion motor and recharge the 12-volt battery.

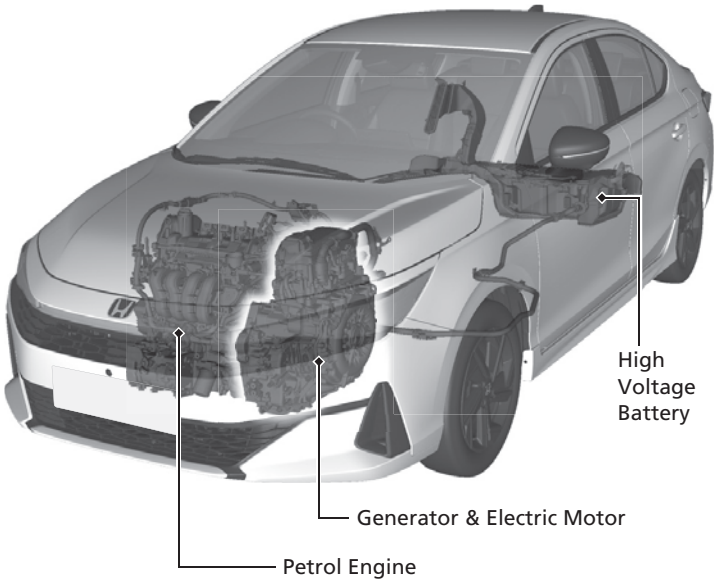
e:HEV MAIN COMPONENTS

Petrol Engine– Runs the generator and under certain conditions, drives the wheels directly.

Generator– Starts the engine and generates electric power when driven by the petrol engine to supply electricity to power the electric motor and/or to charge the High Voltage battery.

Electric Motor– Provides propulsion to drive the wheels in conjunction with the petrol engine in certain conditions and provides electricity to the High Voltage battery through regenerative braking.

High Voltage Battery– Provides electrical storage and serves as a power source for the electric motor.
Learning about the High Voltage battery's characteristics will help you get the best handling and maximise the range of your electric vehicle. P. 241



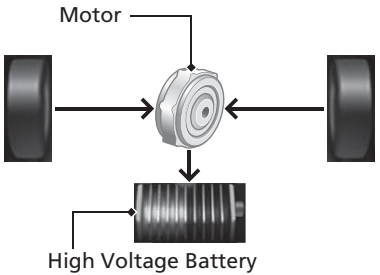
● **Sounds Unique to the e:HEV**
When you first start driving this vehicle, you will likely hear some unfamiliar sounds, particularly when you turn on the power system, or while you are driving or accelerating from a stop. Some of these sounds are unique to this vehicle's powertrain, fuel, and climate control systems; and High Voltage battery cooling systems; others are similar to sounds generated by conventional automobiles that typically are masked by louder noises absent from a vehicle of this design. These sounds are not a cause for concern, and you will soon recognise them as normal and thus be able to detect any new or unusual noise should one develop.



Operating mode	Electric Vehicle (EV)	Hybrid (HV)	Engine (Direct Drive)	Regeneration
Driving state	Stopped or driven at low speeds: • Only the electric motor provides propulsion to the wheels.	Driven in high-load conditions (e.g., when accelerating, going uphill): • The Electric Motor provides propulsion to the wheels. • The petrol engine drives the generator, supplying electricity to the electric motor for added propulsion or to the High Voltage battery for charging.	Driven in high-speed, low-load conditions: • The petrol engine provides propulsion to the wheels. • The High Voltage battery supplies electricity to the electric motor for added propulsion. • The electric motor provides electricity to the High Voltage battery through regenerative braking.	The accelerator pedal is released and the vehicle is decelerating. • The electric motor provides electricity to the High Voltage battery through regenerative braking.
Power Flow Monitor				
Electric motor	Stopped/Running	Running	Generating/Running	Regenerating
Generator	Stopped	Generating	No Output	Stopped/No Output
Engine	Stopped	Running	Running	Stopped/No Output
High Voltage battery	Discharge	Charging/Discharge	Charging/Discharge	Charging

● **Regenerative Energy and Regenerative Braking**

When regenerative braking is in operation



When decelerating without the accelerator being depressed or the brake pedal being applied, or while driving downhill, the electric motor acts as a generator that recovers a portion of the electrical energy that was used to accelerate the vehicle. This regenerative braking slows the vehicle in a manner similar to engine braking in a petrol-powered vehicle.
You can control the rate of deceleration by using the deceleration paddle selector.

● **Auto Engine Stop/Start**

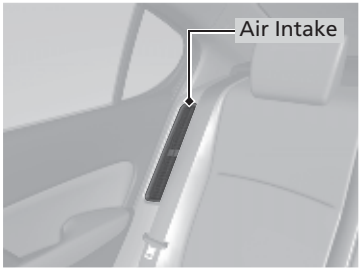
Your vehicle's petrol engine automatically stops running during vehicle operation or restarts while the vehicle is stationary when it is appropriate.
In the following cases, however, auto engine stop may not activate.

- The vehicle momentarily needs additional power for aggressive acceleration, or driving uphill or at high speed.
- The climate control system is in heavy use.
- The High Voltage battery temperature is high or low.
- The High Voltage battery is too low on charge.

Safety Precautions



Do not cover the air intake



If the air intake is obstructed during vehicle operation, the High Voltage battery can become too hot. To protect the battery, the system may start to limit the battery's output and cause the power system and 12-volt battery charging system indicators to come on.

Do not touch the High Voltage system

Attempting to take a High Voltage system component apart or disconnect one of its wires can cause severe electrical shock. Make sure that any maintenance or repairs to the High Voltage system are performed by a Honda dealer.

If a crash occurs

● Be careful of electric shock hazard.

▶If a severe crash damages your vehicle's High Voltage system, there is a possibility of electrical shock due to exposed High Voltage components or wires. If this happens, do not touch any of the High Voltage system components or any of its orange wires.

● Avoid contact with High Voltage battery fluid.

▶The High Voltage battery contains a flammable electrolyte that could leak as a result of a severe crash. Avoid skin or eye contact with the electrolyte as it is corrosive. If you accidentally come into contact with the electrolyte, rinse the exposed skin or flush your eyes with copious amounts of water for at least five minutes, and seek medical attention immediately.

● Use a fire extinguisher for an electrical fire.

▶Attempting to extinguish an electrical fire with even a small quantity of water, from a garden hose for instance, can be dangerous.

● Any time the vehicle is damaged in a crash, have it repaired by a dealer.

Emergency Shutdown System for the High Voltage System

If the vehicle is involved in a crash, the emergency shutdown system will activate depending on the severity of the impact. When the system activates, the High Voltage system automatically shuts down, and the vehicle can no longer move under its own power. To return the High Voltage system back to normal operation, consult a dealer.

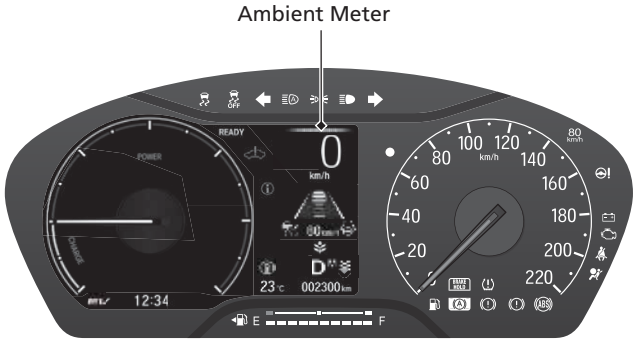
When the vehicle is disposed

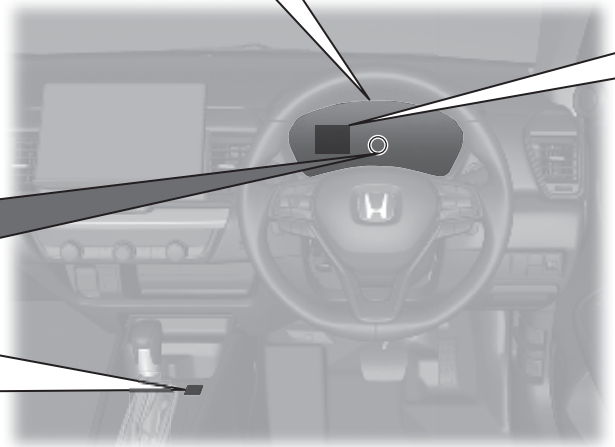
● The High Voltage battery is a Lithium ion battery. Honda collects and recycles used High Voltage batteries – consult with your dealer for proper battery disposal in the event your vehicle is not repairable.

Eco Assist System

Ambient Meter*

- The colour of the ambient meter changes to green to indicate that the vehicle is being driven in a fuel-efficient manner.





ECON Mode Indicator P. 105

Comes on when the **ECON** button is pressed.

ECON Button P. 232

Helps to maximise fuel economy.



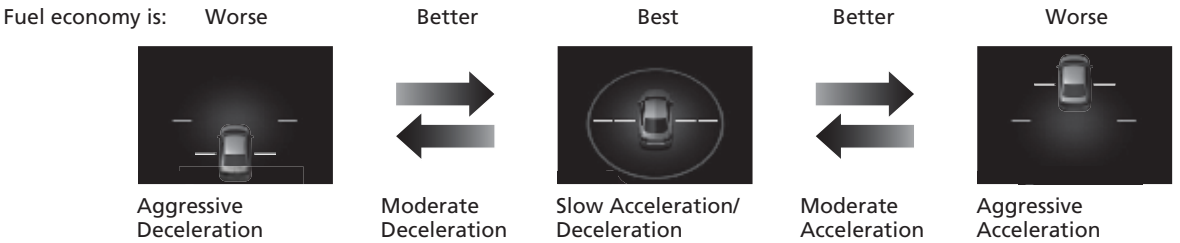
Drive Cycle Score/Lifetime Points

● Comes on when the power mode is in VEHICLE OFF.



Eco Drive Display

● Keep the vehicle icon near the centre of the circle.



* Not available on all models

Safe Driving P. 35

Before Driving Checklist P. 39

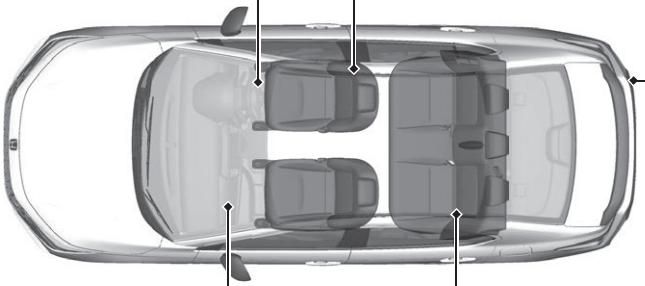
- Before driving, check that the front seats, head restraints, steering wheel, and mirrors have been properly adjusted.

Seat Belts P. 40

- Fasten your seat belt and sit upright well back in the seat.
- Check that your passengers are wearing their seat belts correctly.



Fasten your lap belt as low as possible.



Exhaust Gas Hazard P. 93

- Your vehicle emits dangerous exhaust gases that contain carbon monoxide. Do not run the engine in confined spaces where carbon monoxide gas can accumulate.

Child Safety P. 60

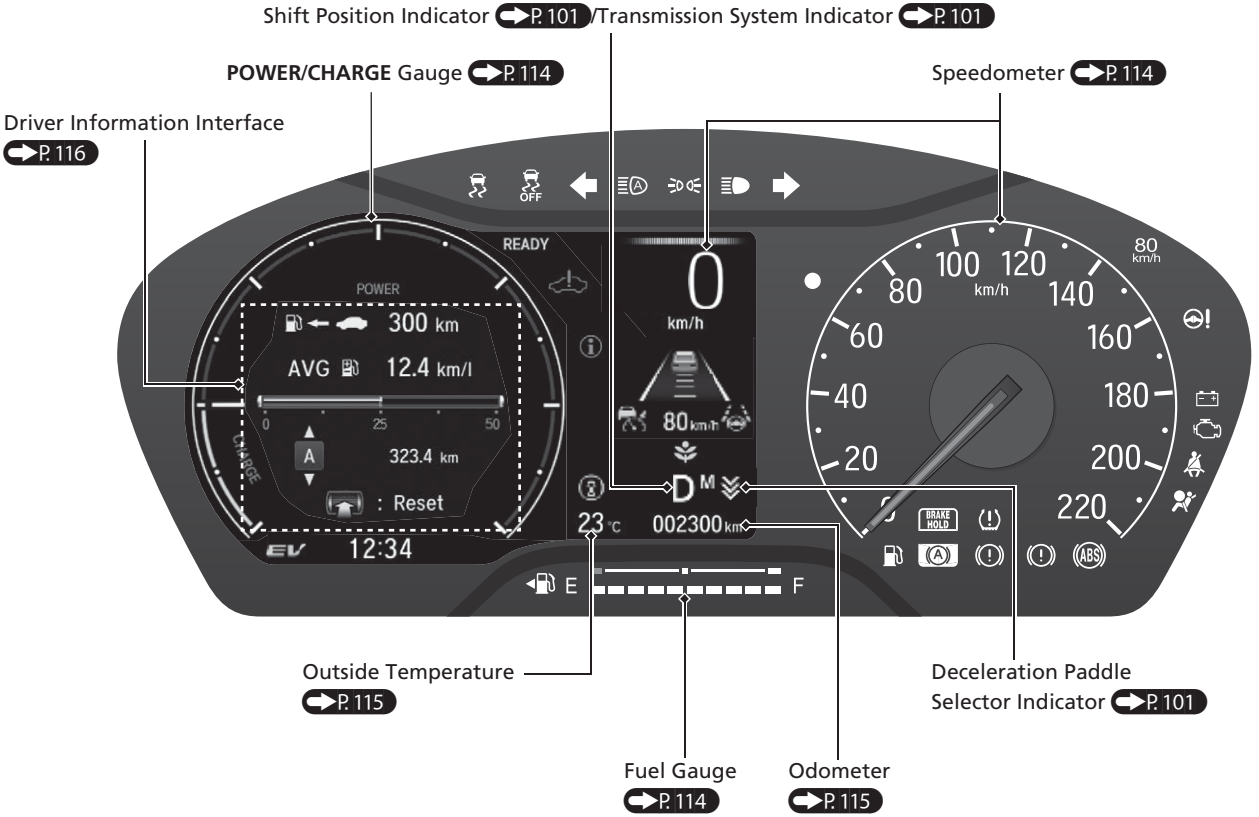
- All children 12 and younger should be seated in the rear seat.
- Small children should be properly restrained in a front-facing child restraint system.
- Infants must be properly restrained in a rear-facing child restraint system on a rear seat.

Airbags P. 50

- Your vehicle is fitted with airbags to help to protect you and your passengers during a moderate-to-severe collision.

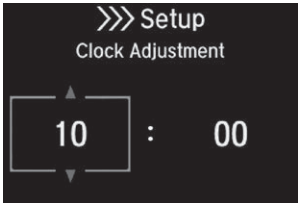
Instrument Panel P. 95

Indicators P. 96/Gauges P. 114/Driver Information Interface P. 116



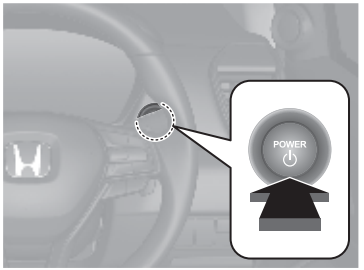
Controls P. 137

Clock P. 138



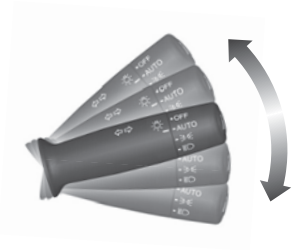
POWER Button P. 162

Press the button to change the vehicle's power mode.



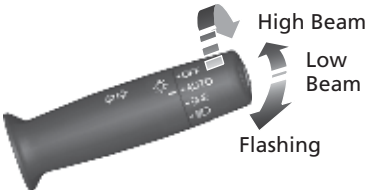
Turn Signals P. 165

Turn Signal Control Lever



Lights P. 166

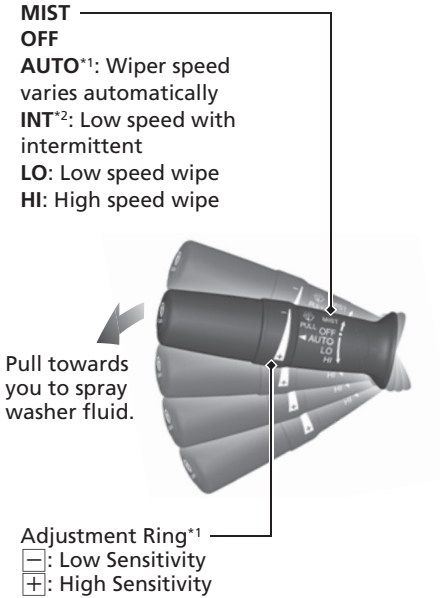
Light Control Switches



Wipers and Washers

P. 176

Wiper/Washer Control Lever



*1 : Models with automatic intermittent wipers
*2 : Models with manual intermittent operation

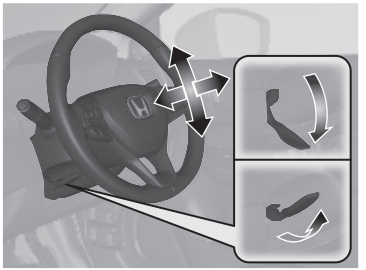
Models with automatic intermittent wipers

AUTO should always be turned **OFF** before the following situations in order to prevent severe damage to the wiper system:

- Cleaning the windscreen
- Driving through a car wash
- No rain present

Steering Wheel P. 180

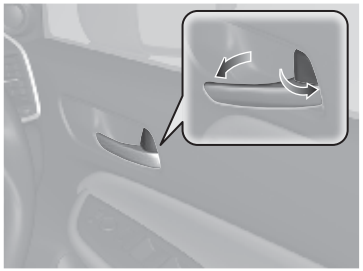
- To adjust, push the adjustment lever down, adjust to the desired position, then lock the lever back in place.



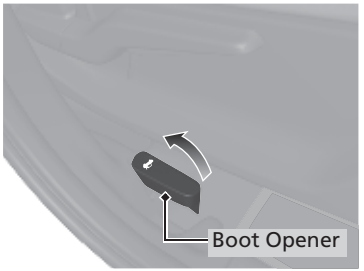
Unlocking the Driver's Door from the Inside

P. 149

- Pull the driver's door inner handle to unlock and open it at the same time.



Boot P. 152

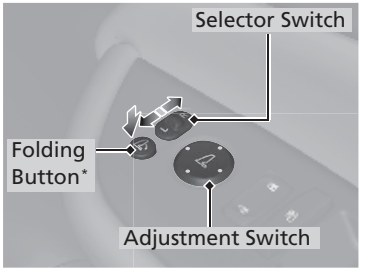


- Pull the boot opener on the outside of the driver's seat to unlock and open the boot.
- Press the boot release button on the boot lid to unlock and open the boot.
- Press the boot release button on the remote to unlock and open the boot.

Power Door Mirrors

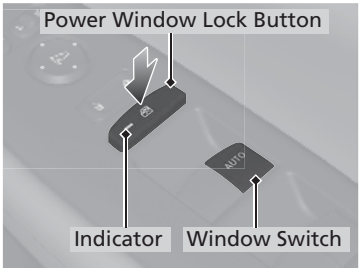
P. 182

- With the power mode in ON, move the selector switch to **L** or **R**.
- Push the appropriate edge of the adjustment switch to adjust the mirror.
- Press the folding button* to fold in and out the door mirrors.



Power Windows P. 156

- With the power mode in ON, open and close the power windows.
- If the power window lock button is in the off position, each passenger's window can be opened and closed with its own switch.
- If the power window lock button is in the ON position (indicator on), each passenger's window switch is disabled.



Climate Control System P. 207

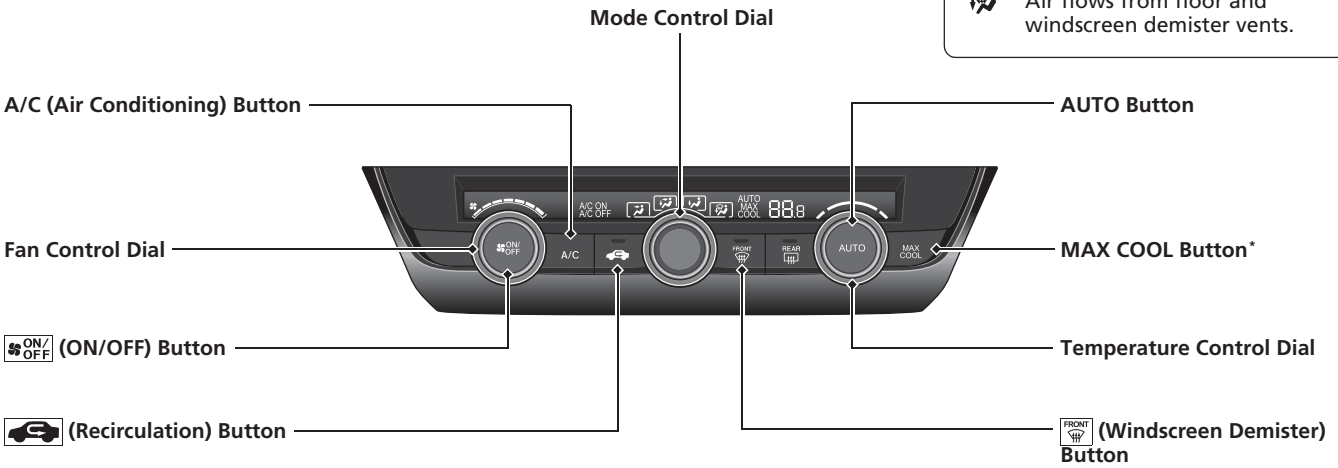
- Press the **AUTO** button to activate the climate control system.
- Press the ON/OFF button to turn the system on and off.
- Press the FRONT button to defrost the windscreen.

Air flows from dashboard vents and back of the console compartment*.

Air flows from floor and dashboard vents, and back of the console compartment*.

Air flows from floor vents.

Air flows from floor and windscreen demister vents.

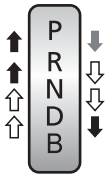


Driving P. 213

Transmission P. 227

● Shift to P and depress the brake pedal when turning on the power.

Shift selection



Depress the brake pedal and press the shift lever release button to shift.

Shift without pressing the shift lever release button.

Press the shift lever release button and shift.



P **Park**
Used when parking or turning the power on or off.

R **Reverse**
Used when reversing.

N **Neutral**
Transmission is not locked.

D **Drive**
Used:
- For normal driving.
- The deceleration paddle selector can be used temporarily.

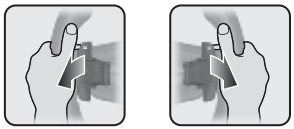
B **Drive (B)**
Used:
- When driving down a long hill and to increase regenerative braking.
- The deceleration paddle selector can be used.

Deceleration Paddle Selector P. 229

When you release the accelerator pedal, you can control the rate of deceleration without releasing your hands from the steering wheel. Using the deceleration paddle selector situated on the steering wheel, you can sequentially shift through three stages of deceleration.

Pull the + selector for a few seconds when you want to cancel the deceleration paddle selector.

- **When the shift position is in D**
  If you pull back the paddle selector, the rate of deceleration will change temporarily, and the stage will appear in the gauge.
- **When the shift position is in B**
  If you pull back the paddle selector, the rate of deceleration will change and the stage along with **M** will appear in the gauge.



− Paddle Selector

+ Paddle Selector

When the shift lever is in D, the deceleration stage appears.

When the shift lever is in B, the deceleration stage and **M** appear.



Deceleration stage



CMBS On and Off P. 249

- When a possible frontal collision is likely unavoidable, the Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS) can reduce the vehicle speed and the severity of the collision.
- The CMBS is turned on every time you start the power system.
- To turn the CMBS on or off, use the safety support of the driver information interface.

VSA On and Off P. 235

- The Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) system helps to stabilise the vehicle during cornering and helps to maintain traction while accelerating on loose or slippery road surfaces.
- VSA comes on automatically every time you turn on the power system.
- To partially disable or fully restore VSA function, press and hold the (VSA **OFF**) button until you hear a beep.

Deflation Warning System* P. 237

- Detects a change in tyre conditions and overall dimensions due to decrease in tyre pressures.
- The deflation warning system is turned on automatically every time you turn on the power system.
- An initialisation procedure must be performed when certain conditions arise.

Refueling P. 315

Fuel recommendation:

Thai, Indian, Bhutanese, Sri Lankan and Nepalese models

Unleaded petrol/gasohol up to E20 (80% petrol and 20% ethanol), research octane number 91 or higher

Except Thai, Indian, Bhutanese, Sri Lankan and Nepalese models

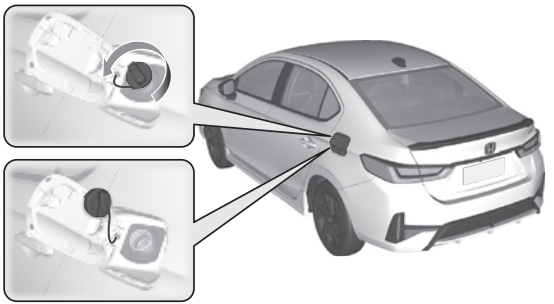
Unleaded petrol, research octane number 91 or higher

Fuel tank capacity: 40 L

1. Pull on the fuel fill door release handle under the dashboard at the driver's side.



2. Turn the fuel fill cap slowly to remove the cap.
3. Place the cap in the holder on the fuel fill door.
4. After refueling, screw the cap back on until it clicks at least once.



Honda SENSING P. 242

Assists with functions such as acceleration, braking, and steering in order to reduce the burden on the driver, as well as help to avoid or reduce the severity of collisions.

Honda SENSING has the following functions:

Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS)

P. 245

The system can assist you when it determines there is a possibility of your vehicle colliding with a vehicle (including motorcycles) ahead from behind, an oncoming vehicle in front, a vehicle approaching from the side, a pedestrian, or someone riding a bicycle (moving bicycle). The CMBS is designed to alert you when the potential for a collision is determined, as well as assist in reducing speed, avoiding collisions, and reducing collision severity.

Road Departure Mitigation System P. 259

Alerts and helps to assist you when the system detects a possibility of your vehicle unintentionally crossing over detected lane markings and/or leaving the roadway altogether.

Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow P. 266

Helps to maintain a constant vehicle speed and a set following-interval behind a vehicle detected ahead of yours and, if the detected vehicle comes to a stop, can decelerate and stop your vehicle, without you having to keep your foot on the brake or the accelerator.

Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS) P. 284

Provides steering input to help to keep the vehicle in the middle of a detected lane and provides tactile, audible and visual alerts if the vehicle is detected drifting out of its lane.

Lead Car Departure Notification System*

P. 295

Informs you with visual and audible alerts when your vehicle is stopped even though the vehicle ahead of you has started moving.

Auto High-Beam P. 170

The front wide view camera detects the light sources ahead of the vehicle such as the lights of a preceding or oncoming vehicle, or street lights. When you are driving at night, the system automatically switches the headlights between low beam and high beam depending on the situation.

Parking Sensor System*

P. 313

The rear corner* and centre sensors monitor obstacles behind your vehicle, and the beeper and driver information interface you know the approximate distance between your vehicle and the obstacle.

Maintenance P. 319

Under the Bonnet P. 328

- Check engine oil, engine coolant, and windscreen washer fluid. Add when necessary.
- Check brake fluid and high voltage system coolant.
- Check the 12-volt battery condition monthly.

1. Pull the bonnet release handle under the driver's side lower outside corner of the dashboard.



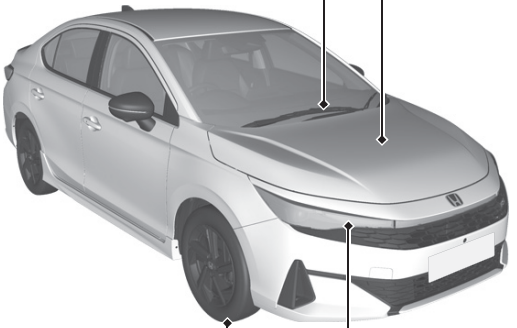
2. Locate the bonnet latch lever, pull it up, and then raise the bonnet. Once you have raised the bonnet slightly, you can release the lever.



3. When finished, close the bonnet and make sure it is firmly locked in place.

Wiper Blades P. 347

- Replace blades if they leave streaks across the windscreen or become noisy.



Tyres P. 349

- Inspect tyres and wheels regularly.
- Check tyre pressures regularly.
- Install winter tyres for winter driving.

Lights P. 339

- Inspect all lights regularly.

Handling the Unexpected P. 371

Flat Tyre P. 373

Models with tyre repair kit

- Park in a safe location and repair the flat tyre using the tyre repair kit.

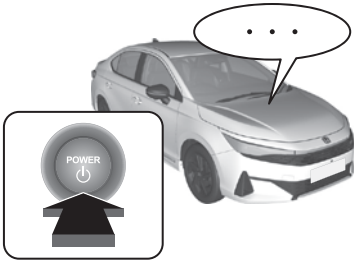
Models with spare tyre

- Park in a safe place and replace the flat tyre with the spare tyre in the boot.



Power System Won't Start P. 393

- If the battery is dead, jump start using a booster battery.



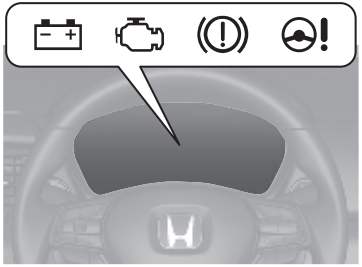
Overheating P. 400

- Park in a safe location. If you do not see steam under the bonnet, open the bonnet, and let the engine cool down.



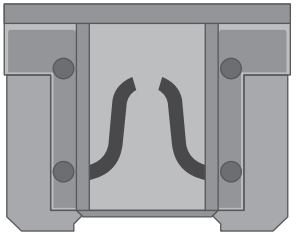
Indicators Come On P. 402

- Identify the indicator and consult the owner's manual.



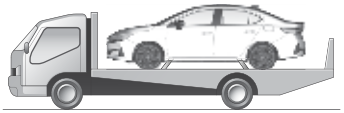
Blown Fuse P. 409

- Check for a blown fuse if an electrical device does not operate.



Emergency Towing P. 417

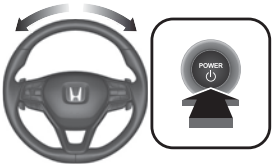
- Call a professional towing service if you need to tow your vehicle.



What to Do If

Q **The power mode does not change from VEHICLE OFF (LOCK) to ACCESSORY. Why?**

A
- The steering wheel may be locked.
- Move the steering wheel left and right after pressing the **POWER** button.



Q **The power mode does not change from ACCESSORY to VEHICLE OFF (LOCK). Why?**

A The shift lever should be moved to P.



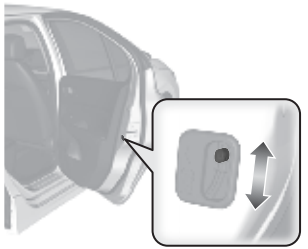
Q **Why does the brake pedal pulsate slightly when applying the brakes?**

A This can occur when the ABS activates and does not indicate a problem. Apply firm, steady pressure on the brake pedal. Never pump the brake pedal.

►Anti-lock Brake System (ABS) P. 308

Q **The rear door cannot be opened from inside the vehicle. Why?**

A Check if the childproof lock is in the lock position. If so, open the rear door with the outside door handle.
To cancel this function, slide the lever up to the unlock position.



Q **Why do the doors lock after I unlocked the doors?**

A If you do not open the doors within 30 seconds, the doors are relocked automatically for security.

Q **Why does the beeper sound when I open the driver's door?**

A The beeper sounds when:
- The power mode is in ACCESSORY.
- The exterior lights are left on.

Q **Why does a beeper sound when I walk away from the vehicle after I close the door?**

A The beeper sounds if you move outside the walk away auto lock operating range before the door completely closes.
Locking the doors and boot (Walk away auto lock) P. 144

Q **Why does the beeper sound when I start driving?**

A The beeper sounds when the driver, front passenger, and/or rear passenger* are not wearing their seat belts.

Q **Pressing the electric parking brake switch does not release the parking brake. Why?**

A Press the electric parking brake switch with the brake pedal depressed.

Q Models with deflation warning system

I'm seeing an amber indicator of a tyre with an exclamation point. What is that?

A The Deflation Warning System needs attention. If you recently inflated or changed a tyre, you have to recalibrate the system.

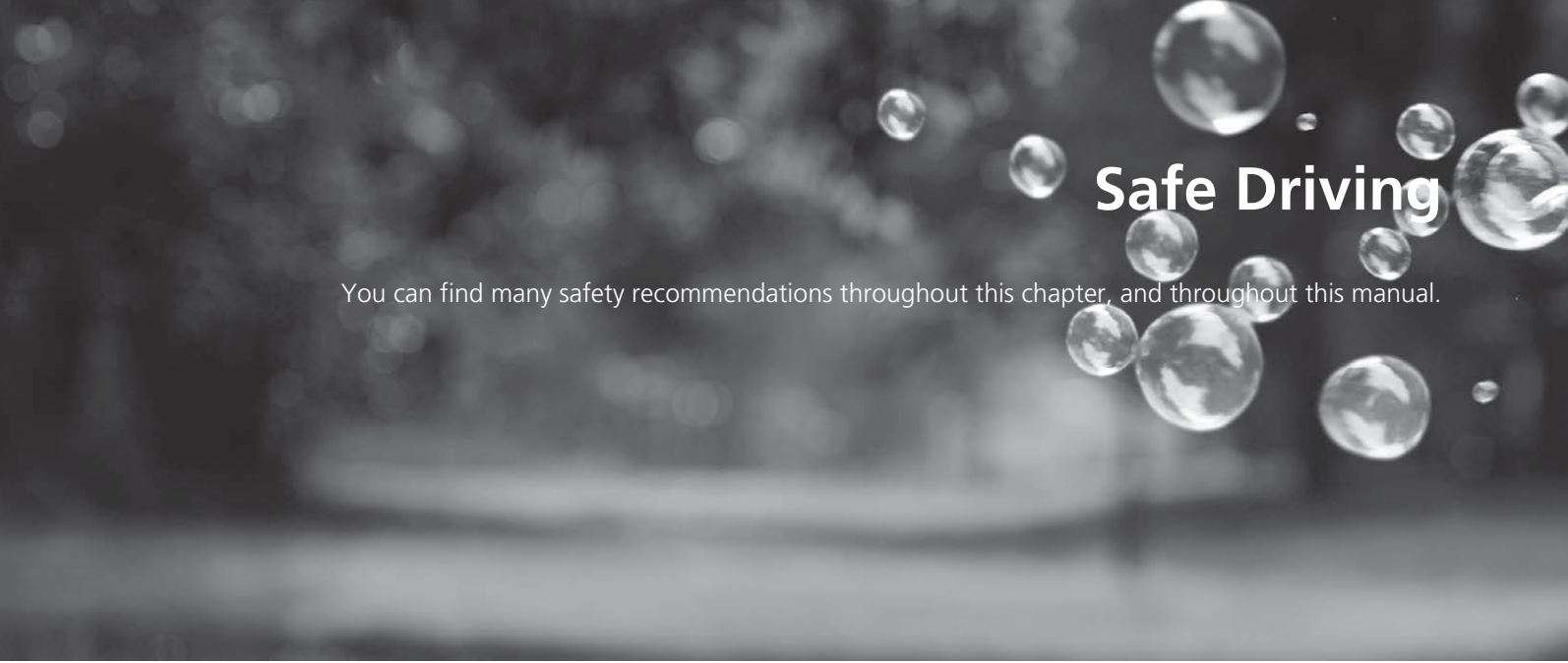
➔ **Deflation Warning System*** P. 237

Q **Depressing the accelerator pedal does not release the parking brake automatically. Why?**

A
- Fasten the driver's seat belt.
- Check if the transmission is in P or N. If so, select any other position.

Q **Why do I hear a screeching sound when I apply the brake pedal?**

A The brake pads may need to be replaced. Have your vehicle inspected by a dealer.



Safe Driving

You can find many safety recommendations throughout this chapter, and throughout this manual.

For Safe Driving
- Important Safety Precautions..... 36
- Your Vehicle's Safety Features..... 38
- Safety Checklist 39

Seat Belts
- About Your Seat Belts..... 40
- Fastening a Seat Belt..... 45
- Seat Belt Inspection..... 48
- Anchorage Points..... 49

Airbags
- Airbag System Components..... 50
- Types of Airbags 52
- Front Airbags (SRS) 52
- Side Airbags..... 55
- Side Curtain Airbags* 57
- Airbag System Indicators..... 58
- Airbag Care 59

Child Safety
- Protecting Child Passengers 60
- Safety of Infants and Small Children... 64
- Safety of Larger Children 90

Exhaust Gas Hazard
- Carbon Monoxide Gas..... 93

Safety Labels
- Label Locations..... 94

* Not available on all models

The following pages explain your vehicle's safety features and how to use them properly. The safety precautions below are ones that we consider to be among the most important.

Important Safety Precautions

■ Always wear your seat belt
A seat belt is your best protection in all types of collisions. Airbags are designed to supplement seat belts, not replace them. So even though your vehicle is equipped with airbags, make sure you and your passengers always wear your seat belts, and wear them properly.

■ Restrain all children
Children aged 12 and under should ride properly restrained in a back seat, not the front seat. Infants and small children should be restrained in a child restraint system. Larger children should use a booster seat and a lap/shoulder seat belt until they can use the belt properly without a booster seat.

■ Be aware of airbag hazards
While airbags can save lives, they can cause serious or fatal injuries to occupants who sit too close to them, or are not properly restrained. Infants, young children, and short adults are at the greatest risk. Be sure to follow all instructions and warnings in this manual.

■ Don't drink and drive
Alcohol and driving don't mix. Even one drink can reduce your ability to respond to changing conditions, and your reaction time gets worse with every additional drink. So don't drink and drive, and don't let your friends drink and drive, either.

Important Safety Precautions

Some countries prohibit the use of mobile phones other than hands-free devices by the driver while driving.

■ **Pay appropriate attention to the task of driving safely**

Engaging in mobile phone conversation or other activities that keep you from paying close attention to the road, other vehicles, and pedestrians could lead to a crash. Remember, situations can change quickly, and only you can decide when it is safe to divert some attention away from driving.

■ **Control your speed**

Excessive speed is a major factor in crash injuries and deaths. Generally, the higher the speed, the greater the risk, but serious injuries can also occur at lower speeds. Never drive faster than is safe for current conditions, regardless of the maximum speed posted.

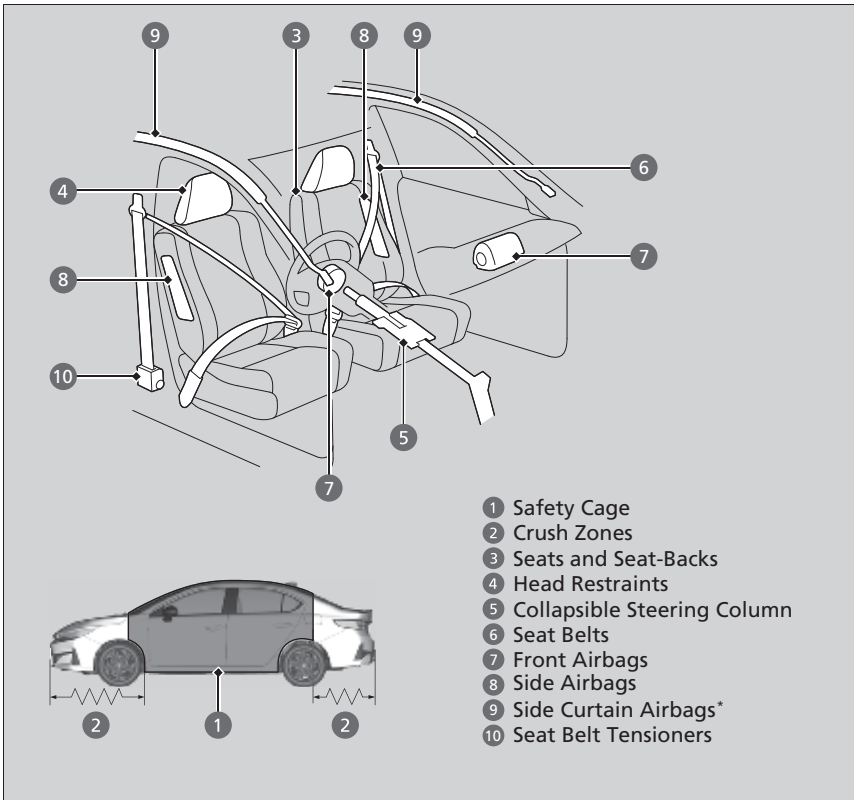
■ **Keep your vehicle in safe condition**

Having a tyre blowout or a mechanical failure can be extremely hazardous.
To reduce the possibility of such problems, check your tyre pressures and condition frequently, and perform all regularly scheduled maintenance.

■ **Do not leave children unattended in the vehicle**

Children, pets, and people needing assistance left unattended in the vehicle may be injured if they activate one or more of the vehicle controls. They may also cause the vehicle to move, resulting in a crash in which they and/or another person(s) can be injured or killed. Also, depending on the ambient temperature, the temperature of the interior may reach extreme levels, which can result in harm or death. Even if the climate control system is on, never leave them in the vehicle unattended as the climate control system can shut off at any time.

Your Vehicle's Safety Features



The following checklist will help you take an active role in protecting yourself and your passengers.

Your Vehicle's Safety Features

Your vehicle is equipped with many features that work together to help to protect you and your passengers during a crash.

Some features do not require any action on your part. These include a strong steel framework that forms a safety cage around the passenger compartment, front and rear crush zones, a collapsible steering column, and tensioners that tighten the front seat belts in a sufficient crash.

However, you and your passengers cannot take full advantage of these features unless you remain seated in the correct position and always wear your seat belts. In fact, some safety features can contribute to injuries if they are not used properly.

* Not available on all models

Safety Checklist

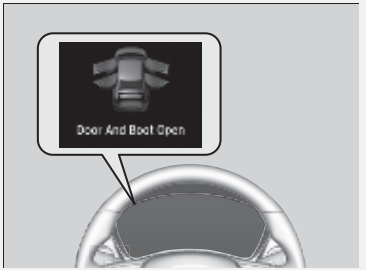
For the safety of you and your passengers, make a habit of checking these items each time before you drive.

- Adjust your seat to a position suitable for driving. Be sure the front seats are adjusted as far to the rear as possible while allowing the driver to control the vehicle. Sitting too close to a front airbag can result in serious or fatal injury in a crash.
  Seats P. 184
- Adjust head restraints to the proper position. Head restraints are most effective when the centre of the head restraint aligns with the centre of your head. Taller persons should adjust their head restraint to the highest position.
  Adjusting the Front Head Restraints Positions P. 190
- Always wear your seat belt, and make sure you wear it properly. Confirm that any passengers are properly belted as well.
  Fastening a Seat Belt P. 45
- Protect children by using seat belts or child restraint systems according to a child's age, height, and weight.
  Child Safety P. 60

Safety Checklist

If the door and/or boot open message appears on the driver information interface, a door and/or the boot is not completely closed. Close all doors and the boot tightly until the message disappears.

Driver Information Interface P. 116



About Your Seat Belts

Seat belts are the single most effective safety device because they keep you connected to the vehicle so that you can take advantage of many built-in safety features. They also help to keep you from being thrown against the inside of the vehicle, against any passengers, or out of the vehicle. When worn properly, seat belts also keep your body properly positioned in a crash so that you can take full advantage of the additional protection provided by the airbags.

In addition, seat belts help to protect you in almost every type of crash, including:
- frontal impacts
- side impacts
- rear impacts
- rollovers

About Your Seat Belts

⚠WARNING

Not wearing a seat belt properly increases the chance of serious injury or death in a crash, even though your vehicle has airbags.

Be sure you and your passengers always wear seat belts and wear them properly.

WARNING: Seat belts are designed to bear upon the bony structure of the body, and should be worn low across the front of the pelvis or the pelvis, chest and shoulders, as applicable; wearing the lap section of the belt across the abdominal area must be avoided.

WARNING: Seat belts should be adjusted as firmly as possible, consistent with comfort, to provide the protection for which they have been designed. A slack belt will greatly reduce the protection afforded to the wearer.

WARNING: Belts should not be worn with straps twisted.

WARNING: Each belt assembly must only be used by one occupant; it is dangerous to put a belt around a child being carried on the occupant's lap.

■ Lap/shoulder seat belts

All five seating positions are equipped with lap/shoulder seat belts with emergency locking retractors. In normal driving, the retractor lets you move freely while keeping some tension on the belt. During a collision or sudden stop, the retractor locks to restrain your body.

The seat belt must be properly secured when using a front-facing child restraint system.

➡ **Installing a Child Restraint System with a Lap/Shoulder Seat Belt** P. 87

■ Proper use of seat belts

Follow these guidelines for proper use:

- All occupants should sit upright, well back in the seat, and remain in that position for the duration of the trip. Slouching and leaning reduce the effectiveness of the belt and can increase the chance of serious injury in a crash.
- Never place the shoulder part of a lap/shoulder seat belt under your arm or behind your back. This could cause very serious injuries in a crash.
- Two people should never use the same seat belt. If they do, they could be very seriously injured in a crash.
- Do not put any accessories on the seat belts. Devices intended to improve comfort or reposition the shoulder part of a seat belt can reduce the protective capability and increase the chance of serious injury in a crash.

About Your Seat Belts

If you extend the seat belt too quickly, it will lock in place. If this happens, slightly retract the seat belt, then extend it slowly.

Seat belts cannot completely protect you in every crash. But in most cases, seat belts can reduce your risk of serious injury.

Most countries require you to wear seat belts. Take time to familiarise with the legal requirements of the countries in which you will drive.

Continued

■ Seat Belt Reminder



■ Front seats

The seat belt system includes an indicator on the instrument panel to remind the driver or a front passenger or both to fasten their seat belts.
If you set the power mode to ON before the driver's seat belt is fastened, the indicator will come on. If the driver does not fasten the belt, the indicator will remain on.

When the vehicle is moving, the beeper will sound and the indicator will blink for a while until the seat belt is fastened.
Then, the beeper will stop and the indicator will stay on.

Seat Belt Reminder

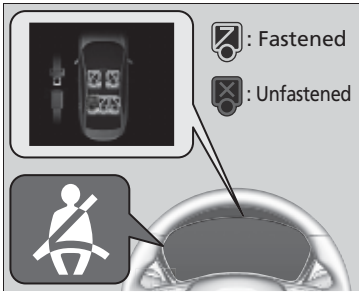
The indicator will also come on if a front passenger does not fasten their seat belt within six seconds after the power mode is set to ON.

When no one is sitting in the front passenger's seat, the indicator will not come on and the beeper will not sound.

If the indicator comes on or the beeper sounds with no one sitting in the front passenger's seat. Check if:
- There is nothing heavy placed on the front passenger seat.
- The driver's seat belt is fastened.

If the indicator does not light when the passenger is seated and is not fastened, something may be interfering with the occupant detection sensor. Check if:
- A cushion is placed on the seat.
- The front passenger is not sitting properly.

If none of these conditions exist, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.



■ Rear seats*

Your vehicle monitors rear seat belt use. The driver information interface notifies you about the status of the rear seat belts use.

The display appears when:

- Any of the rear passenger seat belts are unfastened when the power mode is set to ON.
- A rear door is opened and then closed.
- Any of the rear passengers fasten or unfasten their seat belt.

The seat belt reminder indicator blinks and the beeper sounds if any rear passenger seat belts have been unfastened while driving.

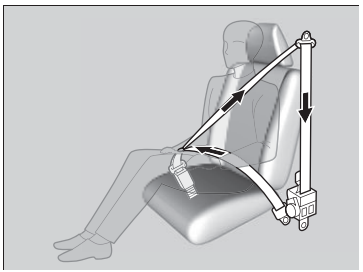
* Not available on all models

Continued

Automatic Seat Belt Tensioners

The front seats are equipped with automatic seat belt tensioners to enhance safety.

The tensioners automatically tighten the front seat belts during a moderate-to-severe frontal collision, sometimes even if the collision is not severe enough to inflate the front airbags.



Automatic Seat Belt Tensioners

The seat belt tensioners can only operate once.
If a tensioner is activated, the SRS indicator will come on. Have a dealer replace the tensioner and thoroughly inspect the seat belt system as it may not offer protection in a subsequent crash.

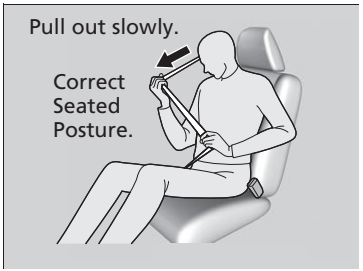
Models with side curtain airbags

During a moderate-to-severe side impact, the tensioners on both sides of the vehicle also activate.

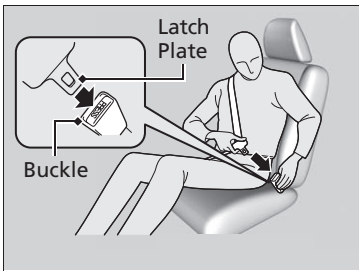
Fastening a Seat Belt

After adjusting a front seat to the proper position, and while sitting upright and well back in the seat:

➡ **Seats** P. 184



1. Pull the seat belt out slowly.



2. Insert the latch plate into the buckle, then tug on the belt to make sure the buckle is secure.

▶ Make sure that the belt is not twisted or caught on anything.

Fastening a Seat Belt

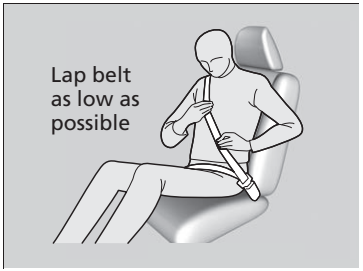
No one should sit in a seat with an inoperative seat belt or one that does not appear to be working correctly. Using a seat belt that is not working properly may not protect the occupant in a crash. Have a dealer check the belt as soon as possible.

Never insert any foreign objects into the buckle or retractor mechanism.

If the seat belt appears to be locked in a fully retracted position, firmly pull out on the shoulder belt once, then push it back in.
Then, smoothly pull it out of the retractor and fasten.
If you are unable to release the seat belt from a fully retracted position, do not allow anyone to sit in the seat, and take your vehicle to a dealer for repair.

➡ **About Your Seat Belts** P. 40
➡ **Seat Belt Inspection** P. 48

Continued



3. Position the lap part of the belt as low as possible across your hips, then pull up on the shoulder part of the belt so the lap part fits snugly. This lets your strong pelvic bones take the force of a crash and reduces the chance of internal injuries.

4. If necessary, pull up on the belt again to remove any slack, then check that the belt rests across the centre of your chest and over your shoulder. This spreads the forces of a crash over the strongest bones in your upper body.

Fastening a Seat Belt

⚠WARNING

Improperly positioning the seat belts can cause serious injury or death in a crash.

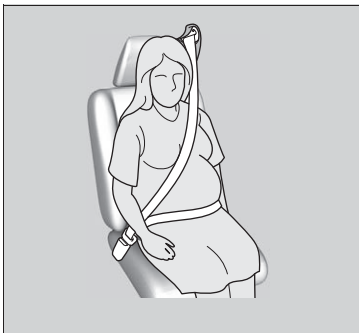
Make sure all seat belts are properly positioned before driving.

To release the belt, push the red **PRESS** button and then guide the belt by hand until it has retracted completely.

When exiting the vehicle, be sure the belt is properly stowed so that it will not get caught in the closing door.

Advice for Pregnant Women

If you are pregnant, the best way to protect yourself and your unborn child when driving or riding in a vehicle is to always wear a seat belt. When positioning the seat belt, wear the shoulder belt section across the chest, avoiding the abdomen, and keep the lap belt portion as low as possible across the hips. (See illustration.)



Advice for Pregnant Women

Each time you have a checkup, ask your doctor if it is okay for you to drive.

To reduce the risk of injuries to both you and your unborn child that can be caused by an inflating front airbag:

- When driving, sit upright and adjust the seat as far back as possible while allowing full control of the vehicle.
- When sitting in the front passenger's seat, adjust the seat as far back as possible.

Seat Belt Inspection

Regularly check the condition of your seat belts as follows:

- Pull each belt out fully, and look for frays, cuts, burns, and wear.
- Check that the latch plates and buckles work smoothly and the belts retract easily.
  ▶ If a belt does not retract easily, cleaning the belt may correct the problem. Only use a mild soap and warm water. Do not use bleach or cleaning solvents. Make sure the belt is completely dry before allowing it to retract.

Any belt that is not in good condition or working properly will not provide proper protection and should be replaced as soon as possible.
A belt that has been worn during a crash may not provide the same level of protection in a subsequent crash. Have your seat belts inspected by a dealer after any collision.

Seat Belt Inspection

⚠WARNING

Not checking or maintaining seat belts can result in serious injury or death if the seat belts do not work properly when needed.

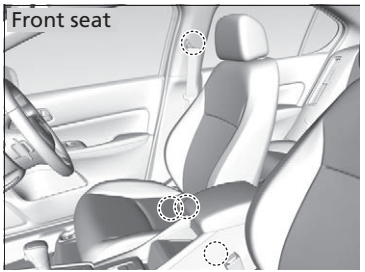
Check your seat belts regularly and have any problem corrected as soon as possible.

WARNING: No modifications or additions should be made by the user which will either prevent the seat belt adjusting devices from operating to remove slack, or prevent the seat belt assembly from being adjusted to remove slack.

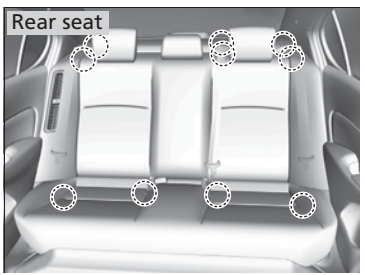
WARNING: It is essential to replace the entire assembly after it has been worn in a severe impact even if damage to the assembly is not obvious.

WARNING: Care should be taken to avoid contamination of the webbing with polishes, oils and chemicals, and particularly battery acid. Cleaning may safely be carried out using mild soap and water. The belt should be replaced if webbing becomes frayed, contaminated or damaged.

Anchorage Points



When replacing the seat belts, use the anchorage points shown in the images. The front seat has a lap/shoulder belt.



The rear seat has three lap/shoulder belts.

Airbag System Components

The front, side, and side curtain* airbags are deployed according to the direction and severity of impact. The airbag system includes:

- Two SRS (Supplemental Restraint System) front airbags. The driver's airbag is stored in the centre of the steering wheel; the front passenger's airbag is stored in the dashboard. Both are marked **SRS AIRBAG**.
- Two side airbags. One for the driver and one for the front passenger. The airbags are stored in the outer edges of the seat-backs. Both are marked **SIDE AIRBAG**.

Models with side curtain airbags

- Two side curtain airbags, one for each side of the vehicle. The airbags are stored in the ceiling, above the side windows. The front and rear pillars are marked **SIDE CURTAIN AIRBAG**.
- An electronic control unit that, when the power mode is in ON, continually monitors information about the various impact sensors, seat and buckle sensors, airbag activators, seat belt tensioners, and other vehicle information. During a crash event, the unit can record such information.
- Front seat belt tensioners.
- Impact sensors that can detect a moderate-to-severe front or side impact.
- An indicator on the instrument panel that alerts you to a possible problem with your airbag system or seat belt tensioners.

* Not available on all models

Important Facts About Your Airbags

Airbags can pose serious hazards. To do their job, airbags must inflate with tremendous force. So, while airbags help to save lives, they can cause burns, bruises, and other minor injuries, sometimes even fatal ones if occupants are not wearing their seat belts properly and sitting correctly.

What you should do: Always wear your seat belt properly and sit upright and as far back from the steering wheel as possible while allowing full control of the vehicle. A front passenger should move their seat as far back from the dashboard as possible.

Remember, however, that no safety system can prevent all injuries or deaths that can occur in a severe crash, even when seat belts are properly worn and the airbags deploy.

Do not place hard or sharp objects between yourself and a front airbag. Carrying hard or sharp objects on your lap, or driving with a pipe or other sharp object in your mouth, can result in injuries if your front airbag inflates.

Do not attach or place objects on the front airbag covers. Objects on the covers marked **SRS AIRBAG** could interfere with the proper operation of the airbags or be propelled inside the vehicle and hurt someone if the airbags inflate.

Important Facts About Your Airbags

Do not attempt to deactivate your airbags. Together, airbags and seat belts provide the best protection.

When driving, keep hands and arms out of the deployment path of the front airbag by holding each side of the steering wheel. Do not cross an arm over the airbag cover.

Types of Airbags

Your vehicle is equipped with three types of airbags:
- **Front airbags:** Airbags in front of the driver's and front passenger's seats.
- **Side airbags:** Airbags in the driver's and front passenger's seat-backs.
- **Side curtain airbags*:** Airbags above the side windows.

Each is discussed in the following pages.

Front Airbags (SRS)

The front SRS airbags inflate in a moderate-to-severe frontal collision to help to protect the head and chest of the driver and/or front passenger.

SRS (Supplemental Restraint System) indicates that the airbags are designed to supplement seat belts, not replace them. Seat belts are the occupant's primary restraint system.

■ Housing Locations

The front airbags are housed in the centre of the steering wheel for the driver, and in the dashboard for the front passenger. Both airbags are marked **SRS AIRBAG**.

Types of Airbags

The airbags can inflate whenever the power mode is in ON.

After an airbag inflates in a crash, you may see a small amount of smoke. This is from the combustion process of the inflator material and is not harmful. People with respiratory problems may experience some temporary discomfort. If this occurs, get out of the vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so.

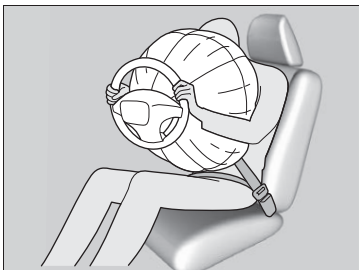
* Not available on all models

Operation

Front airbags are designed to inflate during moderate-to-severe frontal collisions. When the vehicle decelerates suddenly, the sensors send information to the control unit which signals one or both front airbags to inflate.

A frontal collision can be either head-on or angled between two vehicles, or when a vehicle crashes into a stationary object, such as a concrete wall.

How the Front Airbags Work



While your seat belt restrains your torso, the front airbag provides supplemental protection for your head and chest.

The front airbags deflate immediately so that they won't interfere with the driver's visibility or the ability to steer or operate other controls.

The total time for inflation and deflation is so fast that most occupants are not aware that the airbags deployed until they see them lying in front of them.

Continued

■ **When front airbags should not deploy**

Minor frontal crashes: Front airbags were designed to supplement seat belts and help to save lives, not to prevent minor scrapes, or even broken bones that might occur during a less than moderate-to-severe frontal crash.

Side impacts: Front airbags can provide protection when a sudden deceleration causes a driver or front passenger to move towards the front of the vehicle. Side airbags and side curtain airbags* have been specifically designed to help to reduce the severity of injuries that can occur during a moderate-to-severe side impact which can cause the driver or passenger to move towards the side of the vehicle.

Rear impacts: Head restraints and seat belts are your best protection during a rear impact. Front airbags cannot provide any significant protection and are not designed to deploy in such collisions.

Rollovers: Seat belts and side curtain airbags* offer the best protection in a rollover. Because front airbags could provide little if any protection, they are not designed to deploy during a rollover.

■ **When front airbags deploy with little or no visible damage**

Because the airbag system senses sudden deceleration, a strong impact to the vehicle framework or suspension might cause one or more of the airbags to deploy. Examples include running into a curb, the edge of a hole, or other low fixed object that causes a sudden deceleration in the vehicle chassis. Since the impact is underneath the vehicle, damage may not be readily apparent.

■ **When front airbags may not deploy, even though exterior damage appears severe**

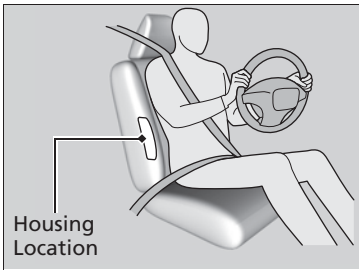
Since crushable body parts absorb crash energy during an impact, the amount of visible damage does not always indicate proper airbag operation. In fact, some collisions can result in severe damage but no airbag deployment because the airbags would not have been needed or would not have provided protection even if they had deployed.

* Not available on all models

Side Airbags

The side airbags help to protect the torso and pelvis of the driver or a front passenger during a moderate-to-severe side impact.

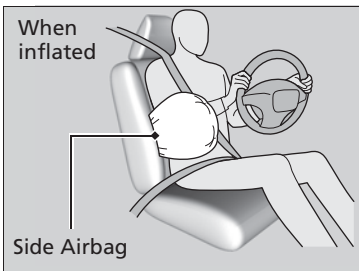
Housing Locations



The side airbags are housed in the outside edge of the driver's and passenger's seat-backs.

Both are marked **SIDE AIRBAG**.

Operation



When the sensors detect a moderate-to-severe side impact, the control unit signals the side airbag on the impact side to immediately inflate.

Side Airbags

Do not attach accessories on or near the side airbags. They can interfere with the proper operation of the airbags, or hurt someone if an airbag inflates.

Do not cover or replace the front seat-back covers without consulting a dealer.
Improperly replacing or covering front seat-back covers can prevent your side airbags from properly deploying during a side impact.

Do not let the front passenger lean sideways with their head in the deployment path of the side airbag. An inflating side airbag can strike with strong force and seriously injure the passenger.

Continued

■ When a side airbag deploys with little or no visible damage

Because the airbag system senses sudden acceleration, a strong impact to the side of the vehicle's framework can cause a side airbag to deploy. In such cases, there may be little or no damage, but the side impact sensors detected a severe enough impact to deploy the airbag.

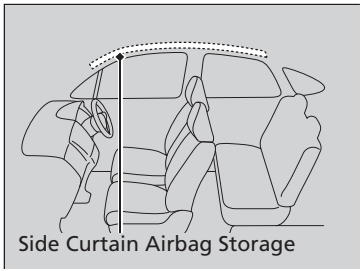
■ When a side airbag may not deploy, even though visible damage appears severe

It is possible for a side airbag not to deploy during an impact that results in apparently severe damage. This can occur when the point of impact was towards the far front or rear of the vehicle, or when the vehicle's crushable body parts absorbed most of the crash energy. In either case, the side airbag would not have been needed nor provided protection even if it had deployed.

Side Curtain Airbags*

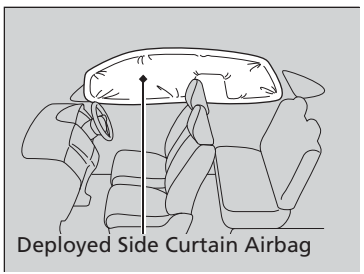
The side curtain airbags help to protect the heads of the driver and passengers in outer seating positions during a moderate-to-severe side impact.

Housing Locations


Side Curtain Airbag Storage

The side curtain airbags are located in the ceiling above the side windows on both sides of the vehicle.

Operation


Deployed Side Curtain Airbag

The side curtain airbag is designed to deploy in a moderate-to-severe side impact.

When side curtain airbags deploy in a frontal collision

One or both side curtain airbags may also inflate in a moderate-to-severe angled frontal collision.

* Not available on all models

Side Curtain Airbags*

The side curtain airbags are most effective when an occupant is wearing their seat belt properly and sitting upright, well back in their seat.

Do not attach any objects to the side windows or roof pillars as they can interfere with the proper operation of the side curtain airbags.

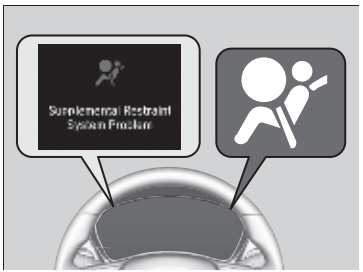
Models with coat hook

Do not put a coat hanger or hard objects on a coat hook. This could result in injuries if your side curtain airbag inflates.

Airbag System Indicators

If a problem occurs in the airbag system, the SRS indicator will come on and a message appears on the driver information interface.

■ Supplemental Restraint System (SRS) Indicator



■ When the power mode is set to ON

The indicator comes on for a few seconds, then goes off. This tells you the system is working properly.

If the indicator comes on at any other time, or does not come on at all, have the system checked by a dealer as soon as possible. If you don't, your airbags and seat belt tensioners may not work properly when they are needed.

Supplemental Restraint System (SRS) Indicator

⚠WARNING

Ignoring the SRS indicator can result in serious injury or death if the airbag systems or tensioners do not work properly.

Have your vehicle checked by a dealer as soon as possible if the SRS indicator alerts you to a possible problem.

Airbag Care

You do not need to, and should not, perform any maintenance on or replace any airbag system components yourself. However, you should have your vehicle inspected by a dealer in the following situations:

■ When the airbags have deployed

If an airbag has inflated, the control unit and other related parts must be replaced. Similarly, once an automatic seat belt tensioner has been activated, it must be replaced.

■ When the vehicle has been in a moderate-to-severe collision

Even if the airbags did not inflate, have your dealer inspect the following: front seat belt tensioners, and each seat belt that was worn during the crash.

Airbag Care

The removal of airbag components from the vehicle is prohibited.

In case of malfunction, or shutdown, or after the airbag inflation/seat belt tensioner operation, ask a qualified personnel for handling.

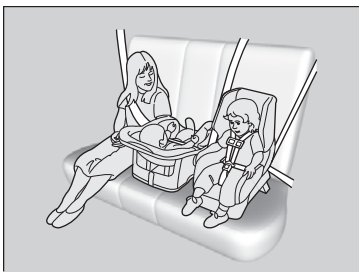
We recommend against the use of salvaged airbag system components, including the airbag, tensioners, sensors, and control unit.

Protecting Child Passengers

Each year, many children are injured or killed in vehicle crashes because they are either unrestrained or not properly restrained. In fact, vehicle crashes are the number one cause of death of children aged 12 and under.

To reduce the number of child deaths and injuries, infants and children should be properly restrained when they ride in a vehicle.

Children should sit properly restrained in a rear seat. This is because:



- An inflating front airbag can injure or kill a child sitting in the front seat.
- A child in the front seat is more likely to interfere with the driver's ability to safely control the vehicle.
- Statistics show that children of all sizes and ages are safer when they are properly restrained in a rear seat.

Protecting Child Passengers

Front Passenger's Sun Visor

⚠WARNING



NEVER use a rearward facing child restraint on a seat protected by an ACTIVE AIRBAG in front of it, DEATH or SERIOUS INJURY to the CHILD can occur.

- Never hold a child on your lap because it is impossible to protect them in the event of a collision.
- Never put a seat belt over yourself and a child. During a crash, the belt would likely press deep into the child and cause serious or fatal injuries.
- Never let two children use the same seat belt. Both children could be very seriously injured in a crash.
- Any child who is too small to wear a seat belt must be properly restrained in an approved child restraint system that is properly secured to the vehicle using the seat belt or the child restraint anchorage system.

Protecting Child Passengers

⚠WARNING

Children who are unrestrained or improperly restrained can be seriously injured or killed in a crash.

Any child too small for a seat belt should be properly restrained in an approved child restraint system. A larger child should be properly restrained with a seat belt, using a booster seat if necessary.

In many countries, the law requires all children aged 12 and under, and whose height are shorter than 150 cm be properly restrained in a rear seat.

In many countries, it is required to use an officially approved and suitable child restraint system for transporting a child on any passenger seat. Check your local legal requirement.

We recommend a child restraint system compliant with UN Regulation No. 44 or No. 129, or the regulations of the subject countries.

➔ **Selecting a Child Restraint System** P. 67

Continued

- Do not allow children to operate the doors, windows, or seat adjustments.
- Do not leave children in the vehicle unattended, especially in hot weather when the inside of the vehicle can get hot enough to kill them. They could also activate vehicle controls causing it to move unexpectedly.

Protecting Child Passengers

Malaysian models

Front Passenger's Doorjamb

⚠WARNING



Extreme Hazard!

DO NOT use a rear-facing child restraint on a seat protected by an airbag in front of it!

WARNING: Use the power window lock button to prevent children from opening the windows. Using this feature will prevent children from playing with the windows, which could expose them to hazards or distract the driver.

Opening/Closing the Power Windows P. 156

WARNING: Always take the ignition key with you whenever you leave the vehicle alone or with other occupants.

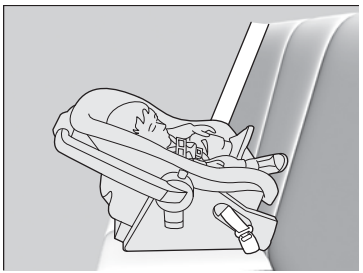
Protecting Child Passengers

To remind you of the passenger's front airbag hazard and child safety, your vehicle has the warning label on the passenger's side sun visor.
Please read and follow the instructions on this label.
Safety Labels P. 94

Safety of Infants and Small Children

■ Protecting Infants

An infant must be properly restrained in a rear-facing child restraint system until the infant reaches the child restraint system manufacturer's weight or height limit for the seat.



■ Positioning a rear-facing child restraint system

Child restraint system must be placed and secured in a rear seating position.

- ▶ We recommend that you install the child restraint system directly behind the front passenger's seat, move the seat as far forward as needed, and leave it unoccupied.
- ▶ Make sure that there is no contact between the child restraint system and the seat in front of it.
  If there is, you may wish to get a smaller rear-facing child restraint system.

Protecting Infants

⚠WARNING

Placing a rear-facing child restraint system in the front seat can result in serious injury or death if the passenger's front airbag inflates.

Always place a rear-facing child restraint system in the back seat, not the front.

When properly installed, a rear-facing child restraint system may prevent the driver or a front passenger from moving their seat all the way back, or from locking their seat-back in the desired position.

Protecting Infants

Many experts recommend use of a rear-facing child restraint system for a child up to two years old if the child's height and weight are appropriate for a rear-facing child restraint system.

Rear-facing child restraint systems should never be installed in a front-facing position.

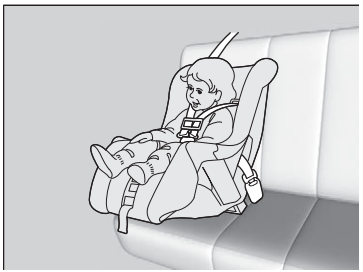
Always refer to the child restraint system manufacturer's instructions before installation.

If the passenger's front airbag inflates, it can hit the rear-facing child restraint system with great force, which can dislodge or strike the system, and seriously injure the child.

Continued

■ Protecting Smaller Children

If a child has exceeded the weight and height limitations of a rear-facing child restraint system, the child should be properly restrained in a firmly secured front-facing child restraint system until they exceed the weight and height limitations for the front-facing child restraint system.



■ Front-facing child restraint system placement

We strongly recommend placing a front-facing child restraint system in a rear seating position.

Placing a front-facing child restraint system in the front seat can be hazardous. A rear seat is the safest place for a child.

Protecting Smaller Children

⚠WARNING

Placing a front-facing child restraint system in the front seat can result in serious injury or death if the front airbag inflates.

If you must place a front-facing child restraint system in front, move the vehicle seat as far back as possible, and properly restrain the child.

Educate yourself about the laws and regulations regarding child restraint system use where you are driving, and follow the child restraint system manufacturer's instructions.

Selecting a Child Restraint System

Some child restraint systems are lower anchorage compatible. Some have a rigid-type connector, while others have a flexible-type connector. Both are equally easy to use. Some existing and previously owned child restraint systems can only be installed using the seat belt. Whichever type you choose, follow the child restraint system manufacturer's use and care instructions including recommended expiration dates as well as the instructions in this manual. Proper installation is key to maximising your child's safety.

The flexible type may not be available in your country.

In seating positions and vehicles not equipped with lower anchorages, install a child restraint system using the seat belt and a top tether for added security. This is because all child restraint systems must be secured with the seat belt when the lower anchorage system is not in use. In addition, the child restraint system manufacturer may advise that a seat belt be used to attach an ISOFIX restraint system once a child reaches a specified weight. Please read the child restraint system owner's manual for proper installation instructions.

Important consideration when selecting a child restraint system

Make sure the child restraint system meets the following three requirements:

- The child restraint system is the correct type and size for the child.
- The child restraint system is the correct type for the seating position.
- The child restraint system is compliant with safety standards. We recommend a child restraint system compliant with UN Regulation No. 44 or No. 129, or the regulations of the subject countries. Look for the approval mark on the system and the manufacturer's statement of compliance on the box.

Selecting a Child Restraint System

Installation of a lower anchorage-compatible child restraint system is simple.

Lower anchorage-compatible child restraint systems have been developed to simplify the installation process and reduce the likelihood of injuries caused by incorrect installation.

Malaysian, Thai and Indian models

We recommend a rear-facing or a front-facing Honda genuine ISOFIX child restraint system for infants or small children, respectively. Ask your dealer.

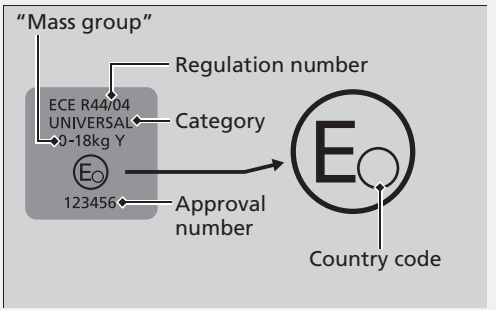
Continued

■ Child Restraint Systems Standards

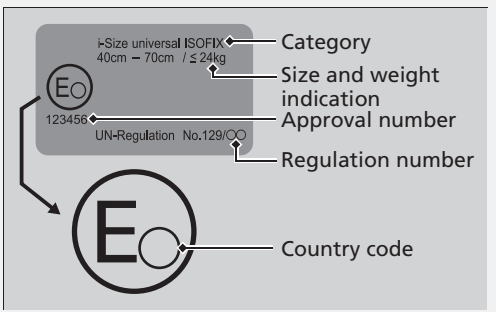
If a child restraint system (whether an i-Size/ISOFIX type or one that is fitted with a seat belt) meets the relevant UN Regulation, it will be affixed with an approval label as shown in the adjacent table. Before purchasing or using any child restraint system, make sure to check the approval label and ensure that it is compatible with your vehicle and the child, and that it complies with the relevant UN Regulation.

Selecting a Child Restraint System

Example of UN Regulation No. 44 approval label



Example of UN Regulation No. 129 approval label



Lower Anchorage-Compatible Child Restraint Systems

The two outer rear seats in your vehicle are equipped with lower anchorages. However, not all of the various types of child restraint systems are suitable for use in your vehicle. Before you purchase or use any lower anchorage-compatible (i-Size/ISOFIX) child restraint system, refer to the following tables to ensure that the restraint system is appropriate for the vehicle, the seating position, and the child's weight (mass group) and size.

Lower Anchorage-Compatible Child Restraint Systems

Mass group is specified for some child restraint systems. Make sure to check the mass group as indicated in the manufacturer's instructions as well as on the package and labels of the child restraint system.

The particular child restraint systems listed in the table are genuine Honda products. They are available from your dealer.

For correct installation, refer to the instructions manual that came with the child restraint system.

Continued

Indian Models

■ ISOFIX Child Restraint Systems

MASS Group	Size class	Fixture	Vehicle ISOFIX positions				Recommended Child Restraint Systems*1
			Front seat	2nd row			
			Passenger	L-side	R-side	Centre	
Carrycot	F	ISO/L1	—	X	X	—	
	G	ISO/L2	—	X	X	—	
Group 0 up to 10 kg	E	ISO/R1	—	IL	IL	—	
Group 0+ up to 13 kg	E	ISO/R1	—	IL	IL	—	
	D	ISO/R2	—	IL	IL	—	Honda Baby & Kids i-Size (Rearward facing)
	C	ISO/R3	—	IL	IL	—	Honda Baby & Kids i-Size (Rearward facing)
Group I 9 kg to 18 kg	D	ISO/R2	—	IL	IL	—	Honda Baby & Kids i-Size (Rearward facing)
	C	ISO/R3	—	IL	IL	—	Honda Baby & Kids i-Size (Rearward facing)
	B	ISO/F2	—	IUF, IL	IUF, IL	—	
	B1	ISO/F2X	—	IUF, IL	IUF, IL	—	Honda Baby & Kids i-Size (Forward facing)
	A	ISO/F3	—	IUF, IL	IUF, IL	—	
Group II 15 kg to 25 kg			—	X	X	—	
Group III 22 kg to 36 kg			—	X	X	—	

ISOFIX Child Restraint Systems

When purchasing a child restraint systems, make sure to check the ISOFIX size class or the fixture to ensure that the seat is compatible with your vehicle.

ISOFIX Size Class	Fixture (CRF)	Description
G	ISO/L2	Right lateral-facing (carrycot) infant seat
F	ISO/L1	Left lateral-facing (carrycot) infant seat
E	ISO/R1	Rearward-facing infant seat
D	ISO/R2	Reduced-size rearward-facing child restraint systems
C	ISO/R3	Full-size rearward-facing child restraint systems
B1	ISO/F2X	Reduced-height forward-facing child restraint systems
B	ISO/F2	Reduced-height forward-facing child restraint systems
A	ISO/F3	Full-height, forward-facing child restraint systems

IUF:	Suitable for forward facing ISOFIX child restraints system of universal category approved for use in this mass group.
IL:	Suitable for particular ISOFIX child restraint systems (CRS), including those listed in the corresponding box in the right column of the table. These ISOFIX CRS are those of the 'specific vehicle', 'restricted' or 'semiuniversal' categories.
X:	Seat position not suitable for children in this mass group.
—:	Seat position not equipped with ISOFIX anchorage.
*1:	The named Child Restraint Systems (CRS) reflect Honda's recommendations at the date of publication. You should speak to an authorised dealer for up-to-date details relating to our recommended CRSs. Other CRS may also be suitable - please consult CRS manufacturers for recommended vehicle lists.

Continued

■ **i-Size Child Restraint Systems**

	Seating position				Recommended Child Restraint Systems*1
	Front passenger	Rear L-side	Rear R-side	Rear Centre	
i-Size Child Restraint Systems	X	i-U	i-U	X	Honda Baby & Kids i-Size

i-U:	Suitable for i-Size "universal" Child Restraint Systems forward and rearward facing.
i-UF:	Suitable for forward-facing i-Size "universal" Child Restraint Systems only.
X:	Seating position not suitable for i-Size "universal" Child Restraint Systems.
*1:	The named Child Restraint Systems (CRS) reflect Honda's recommendations at the date of publication. You should speak to an authorised dealer for up to date details relating to our recommended CRSs. Other CRS may also be suitable - please consult CRS manufacturers for recommended vehicle lists.

Child Restraint Systems to be Installed with a Lap/Shoulder Seat Belt

Not all of the various types of child restraint systems are suitable for use in your vehicle. Before you purchase or use a child restraint system, refer to the following table to ensure that the child restraint system is appropriate for the vehicle, the seating position, and the child's weight (mass group) and size.

Child Restraint Systems to be Installed with a Lap/Shoulder Seat Belt

Mass group is specified for some child restraint systems. Make sure to check the mass group as indicated in the manufacturer's instructions as well as on the package and labels of the child restraint system.
The particular child restraint systems listed in the table are genuine Honda products. They are available from your dealer.
For correct installation, refer to the instructions manual that came with the child restraint system.

Continued

Indian Models

■ **Child Restraint Systems installed with Seat Belt**

MASS Group	Seat position				Recommended Child Restraint Systems*1
	Front passenger seat	2nd row			
		L-side	R-side	Centre	
Group 0 Up to 10 kg	X	U	U	U	
Group 0+ Up to 13 kg	X	U	U	U	
Group I 9 kg to 18 kg	UF*2	U	U	U	
Group II 15 kg to 25 kg	UF*2	U	U	U	
Group III 22 kg to 36 kg	UF*2	U	U	U	

U:	Suitable for 'universal' category restraints approved for use in this mass group.
UF:	Suitable for forward facing 'universal' category restraints approved for use in this mass group.
L:	Suitable for particular child restraint systems given in this list. These restraints may be of the "specific vehicle," "restricted," or "semi-universal" category.
X:	Seat position not suitable for children in this mass group.
*1:	The named Child Restraint Systems (CRS) reflect Honda's recommendations at the date of publication. You should speak to an authorised dealer for up to date details relating to our recommended CRSs. Other CRS may also be suitable - please consult CRS manufacturers for recommended vehicle lists.
*2:	Adjust the seat slide to the rearmost position and adjust the seat back to the most front lock position. If the child restraint system interferes with the head restraint and cannot be installed stably, raise the head restraint. Remove the head restraint if it is removable. If interference can be avoided by raising the head restraint, then it is not necessary to remove it. Please note that the removed head restraint should be stored in the luggage compartment so that it will not fly during sudden braking or collision. Also, if you remove the child restraint system, attach the head restraint to the original seat and make sure it is locked. However, when using the booster cushion only, do not remove the head restraint.

A size class is specified for some child restraint systems. Make sure to check the size class as indicated on the manufacturer's instructions, package, and labels of the child restraint.
For a correct installation, please refer to the Child Restraint Instruction Manual.

■ Locations for Child Restraint System Installation

Malaysian models



U	Suitable for universal restraint systems installed with vehicle safety belts.
UF	Suitable for forward facing universal restraint systems installed with vehicle safety belts.
i-Size	Suitable for i-Size and ISOFIX child restraints systems.
	Suitable for forward facing restraint systems only.
	Never use a rearward facing child restraint system.
	Seat position equipped with Top Tether anchorages.

*1: Adjust the seat slide to the rearmost position and adjust the seat back to the most front lock position.

*2: Forward facing only

*4: The head restraint must be removed when attaching a forward facing booster seat approved by UN R129. Store the removed head restraint in the luggage compartment so that it does not fly during sudden braking or collision. Also, when the booster seat is removed, attach the head restraint to the original seat again and make sure it is locked.

*5: If you can not fix the child restraint system stably, adjust the seat-back angle to be parallel with the back side of the child restraint system, still keeping it forward of the seat belt shoulder anchorage.

Child restraint systems with support legs can be installed on non i-Size seating positions. However, the centre seat is excluded.

Seat position number	Size groups Weight Stature		Seating position			
			❶	❷	❸	❹
			Front passenger[*1, *5]	2nd row		
				Left	Centre	Right
Seating position suitable for universal belted (yes/no)	Group 0	Up to 10 kg	No	Yes	No	Yes
	Group 0+	Up to 13 kg				
	Group I	9-18 kg	Yes[*2]	Yes	Yes[*2]	Yes
	Group II	15-25 kg				
	Group III	22-36 kg				
i-Size seating position (yes/no)	≤ 150 cm		No	Yes	No	Yes
Seating position suitable for recommended genuine CRS[*3]	Refer to genuine CRS list		No	Yes	No	Yes
Seating position suitable for lateral fixture (L1/L2)	—		No	No	No	No
Largest suitable rearward facing fixture (R1/R2X/R2/R3)	Group 0	Up to 10 kg	No	R3	No	R3
	Group 0+	Up to 13 kg				
	Group I	9-18 kg				
Largest suitable forward facing fixture (F2X/F2/F3)	Group I	9-18 kg	No	F3	No	F3
Largest suitable booster fixture (B2/B3)	≤ 150 cm		B3[*4]	B3	B3	B3

Continued

*1: Adjust the seat slide to the rearmost position and adjust the seat back to the most front lock position.

*2: Forward facing only

*3: The named Child Restraint Systems (CRS) reflect Honda's recommendations at the date of publication. You should speak to an authorised dealer for up to date details relating to our recommended CRSs. Other CRS may also be suitable - please consult CRS manufacturers for recommended vehicle lists.

*4: The head restraint must be removed when attaching a forward facing booster seat approved by UN R129. Store the removed head restraint in the luggage compartment so that it does not fly during sudden braking or collision. Also, when the booster seat is removed, attach the head restraint to the original seat again and make sure it is locked.

*5: If you can not fix the child restraint system stably, adjust the seat-back angle to be parallel with the back side of the child restraint system, still keeping it forward of the seat belt shoulder anchorage.

Child restraint systems with support legs can be installed on non i-Size seating positions. However, the centre seat is excluded.

Locations for Child Restraint System Installation

When purchasing a child restraint systems, make sure to check the ISOFIX size class or the fixture to ensure that the seat is compatible with your vehicle.

Fixture (CRF)	Description
ISO/L1	Left lateral-facing (carrycot) infant seat
ISO/L2	Right lateral-facing (carrycot) infant seat
ISO/R1	Rearward-facing infant seat
ISO/R2X	Reduced-size rearward-facing child restraint systems
ISO/R2	Reduced-size rearward-facing child restraint systems
ISO/R3	Full-size rearward-facing child restraint systems
ISO/F2X	Reduced-height forward-facing child restraint systems
ISO/F2	Reduced-height forward-facing child restraint systems
ISO/F3	Full-height, forward-facing child restraint systems
ISO/B2	Reduced width forward-facing booster seat
ISO/B3	Full width forward-facing booster seat

Thai models



U	Suitable for universal restraint systems installed with vehicle safety belts.
UF	Suitable for forward facing universal restraint systems installed with vehicle safety belts.
i-Size ISOFIX	Suitable for i-Size and ISOFIX child restraints systems.
	Suitable for forward facing restraint systems only.
	Never use a rearward facing child restraint system.
	Seat position equipped with Top Tether anchorages.

*1: When installing a child restraint system, adjust the seat slide to the most rear position.

*2: Adjust the front seat-back angle to its most upright position.

*3: When installing a prospective junior seat approved by UN R 129, adjust the front seat-back angle to its most upright position and remove the head restraint.

*4: If the CRS and head restraint interfere, remove the head restraint. The removed head restraint should be stored in the luggage compartment so that it does not fly during sudden braking or collision.
Also, remove the CRS and if an adult is seated, attach the head restraint to the original seat and make sure it is locked.
Refer to the head restraint page for how to install P. 190

Continued

	Size groups Weight Stature		Seating position and Seat position number			
			❶	❷	❸	❹
			Front passenger*1	2nd row		
				Left	Centre	Right
Seating position suitable for universal belted (yes/no)	Group 0	Up to 10 kg	No	Yes	No	Yes
	Group 0+	Up to 13 kg				
	Group I	9-18 kg	Yes*2, *4, *5	Yes	Yes*5	Yes
	Group II	15-25 kg				
	Group III	22-36 kg				
i-Size seating position (yes/no)	≤ 150 cm		No	Yes	No	Yes
Seating position suitable for recommended genuine CRS	Refer to genuine CRS list		No	Yes	No	Yes
Seating position suitable for lateral fixture (L1/L2)	—		No	No	No	No
Largest suitable rearward facing fixture (R1/R2X/R2/R3)	Group 0	Up to 10 kg	No	R3	No	R3
	Group 0+	Up to 13 kg				
	Group I	9-18 kg				
Largest suitable forward facing fixture (F2X/F2/F3)	Group I	9-18 kg	No	F3	No	F3
Largest suitable booster fixture (B2/B3)	≤ 150 cm		B3*3, *4	B3	B3	B3

*1: When installing a child restraint system, adjust the seat slide to the most rear position.

*2: Adjust the front seat-back angle to its most upright position.

*3: When installing a prospective junior seat approved by UN R 129, adjust the front seat-back angle to its most upright position and remove the head restraint.

*4: If the CRS and head restraint interfere, remove the head restraint. The removed head restraint should be stored in the luggage compartment so that it does not fly during sudden braking or collision.
Also, remove the CRS and if an adult is seated, attach the head restraint to the original seat and make sure it is locked.
Refer to the head restraint page for how to install P. 190

*5: Front facing only

The child restraint system with the support leg can also be installed in the front passenger seating position where i-Size child restraint system is not mountable. However, the central seat is excluded.

Locations for Child Restraint System Installation

When purchasing a child restraint systems, make sure to check the ISOFIX size class or the fixture to ensure that the seat is compatible with your vehicle.

Fixture (CRF)	Description
ISO/L1	Left lateral-facing (carrycot) infant seat
ISO/L2	Right lateral-facing (carrycot) infant seat
ISO/R1	Rearward-facing infant seat
ISO/R2X	Reduced-size rearward-facing child restraint systems
ISO/R2	Reduced-size rearward-facing child restraint systems
ISO/R3	Full-size rearward-facing child restraint systems
ISO/F2X	Reduced-height forward-facing child restraint systems
ISO/F2	Reduced-height forward-facing child restraint systems
ISO/F3	Full-height, forward-facing child restraint systems
ISO/B2	Reduced width forward-facing booster seat
ISO/B3	Full width forward-facing booster seat

Continued

■ ASEAN Genuine CRS List

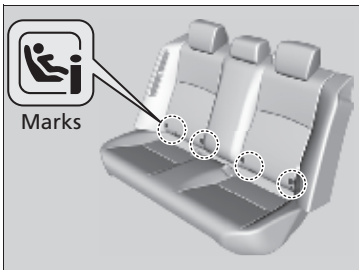
Range of application	Child Restraint System	Category
Under 100 cm	Honda Baby & Kids i-Size	i-Size Universal ISOFIX (Rearward facing)
Over 71 cm and 15 months to 100 cm	Honda Baby & Kids i-Size	i-Size Universal ISOFIX

■ Indian Genuine CRS List

Mass Group	Child Restraint System	Category
Group 0 up to 10 kg	—	—
Group 0+ up to 13 kg	Honda Baby & Kids i-Size	Semi-universal ISOFIX (Rearward facing)
Group I 9 kg to 18 kg	Honda Baby & Kids i-Size	Semi-universal ISOFIX
Group II, III 15 kg to 36 kg	—	—

Installing a Lower Anchorage-Compatible Child Restraint System

A lower anchorage-compatible child restraint system can be installed in either of the two outer rear seats. A child restraint system is attached to the lower anchorages with either the rigid or flexible type of connectors.



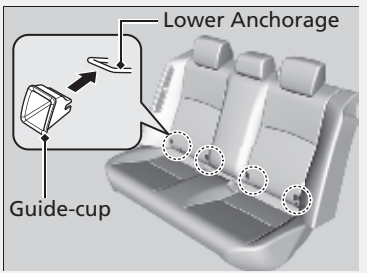
1. Locate the lower anchorages under the marks.

Installing a Lower Anchorage-Compatible Child Restraint System

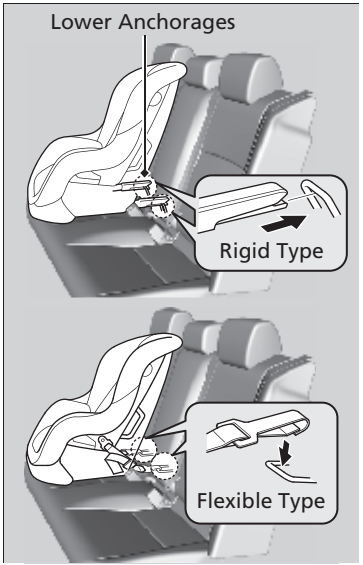
⚠WARNING

Never attach two child restraint systems to the same anchorage. In a collision, one anchorage may not be strong enough to hold two child restraint system attachments and may break, causing serious injury or death.

Some child restraint systems come with optional guide-cups, which avoid possible damage to the seat surface. Follow the manufacturer's instructions when using the guide-cups, and attach them to the lower anchorages as shown in the image.



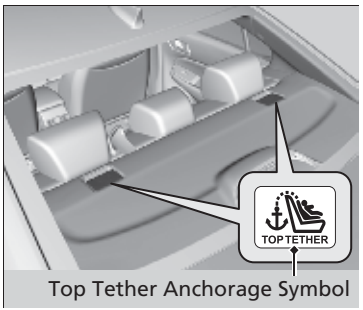
Continued



2. Place the child restraint system on the vehicle seat, then attach the child restraint system to the lower anchorages according to the instructions that came with the child restraint system.

▶ When installing the child restraint system, make sure that the lower anchorages are not obstructed by the seat belt or any other object.

▶ Install the child restraint system so that the gap between it and the seat-back is as small as possible.



Child restraint system with tether strap

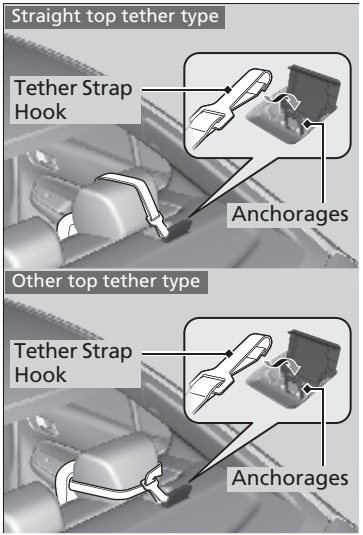
3. Open the tether anchorage cover behind the head restraint.

Installing a Lower Anchorage-Compatible Child Restraint System

WARNING: Never use a hook that does not come with a Top Tether Anchorage Symbol when securing an installed child restraint system.

For your child's safety, when using a child restraint system installed using the lower anchorage system, make sure that the child restraint system is properly secured to the vehicle. A child restraint system that is not properly secured will not adequately protect a child in a crash and may cause injury to the child or other vehicle occupants.

The flexible type may not be available in your country.



4. Straight top tether type
Route the tether strap over the top of the head restraint.
Make sure the strap is not twisted.

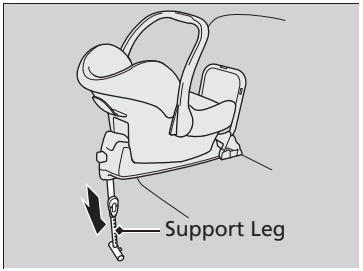
Other top tether type
Route the tether strap around the head restraint.
Make sure the strap is not twisted.

5. Secure the tether strap hook to the anchorage.

6. Tighten the tether strap as instructed by the child restraint system manufacturer.

7. Make sure the child restraint system is firmly secured by rocking it forward and back, and side to side; little movement should be felt.

Continued

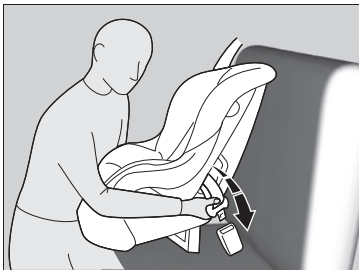


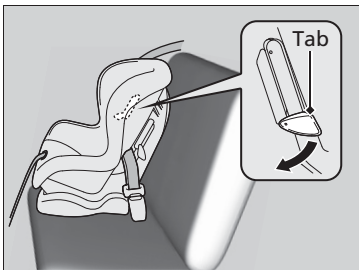
Child restraint system with support leg

3. Extend the support leg until it touches the floor as instructed by the child restraint system manufacturer.
- ▶ Confirm that the section of the floor on which the support leg rests is level. If the section is not level, the support leg will not provide adequate support.
- ▶ Make sure that there is no contact between the child restraint system and the seat in front of it.

4. Make sure the child restraint system is firmly secured by rocking it forward and back, and side to side; little movement should be felt.

Installing a Child Restraint System with a Lap/Shoulder Seat Belt



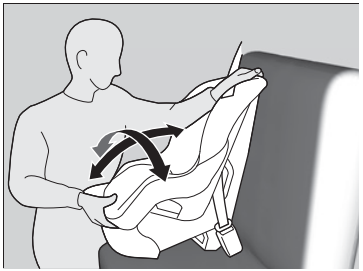


1. Place the child restraint system on the vehicle seat.
2. Route the seat belt through the child restraint system according to the child restraint system manufacturer's instructions, and insert the latch plate into the buckle.
   ▶ Insert the latch plate fully until it clicks.
3. Push down the tab. Route the shoulder part of the belt into the slit at the side of the restraint.
4. Grab the shoulder part of the belt near the buckle, and pull up to remove any slack from the lap part of the belt.
   ▶ When doing this, place your weight on the child restraint system and push it into the vehicle seat.
5. Position the belt properly and push up the tab. Make sure the belt is not twisted.
   ▶ When pushing up the tab, pull up the upper shoulder part of the belt to remove any slack from the belt.

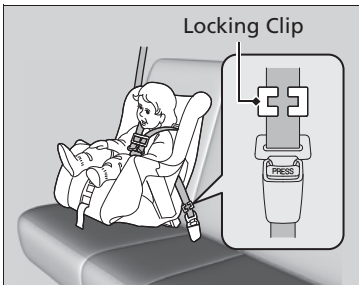
Installing a Child Restraint System with a Lap/Shoulder Seat Belt

A child restraint system that is not properly secured will not adequately protect a child in a crash and may cause injury to the child or other vehicle occupants.

Continued



6. Make sure the child restraint system is firmly secured by rocking it forward and back, and side to side; little movement should be felt.
7. Make sure any unused seat belt that a child can reach is buckled.

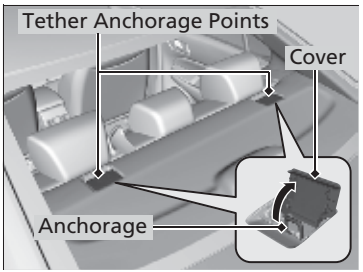


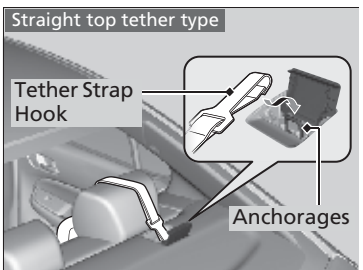
If your child restraint system does not come with a mechanism that secures the belt, install a locking clip on the seat belt.

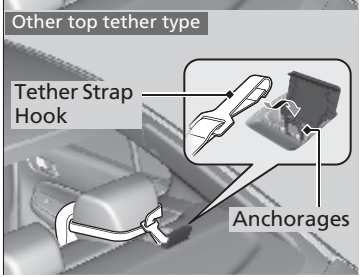
After going through the step 1 and 2, pull up the shoulder part of the belt and make sure there is no slack in the lap portion.

3. Tightly grasp the belt near the latch plate. Pinch both parts of the belt together so they do not slip through the latch plate. Unbuckle the seat belt.
4. Install the locking clip as shown in the image. Position the clip as close as possible to the latch plate.
5. Insert the latch plate into the buckle. Go to step 6 and 7.

Adding Security with a Tether







A tether anchorage point is provided behind each rear outer seating position.
If you have a child restraint system that comes with a tether but can be installed with a seat belt, the tether may be used for additional security.

1. Locate the appropriate tether anchorage point and lift the cover.
2. Straight top tether type
   Route the tether strap over the top of the head restraint. Make sure the strap is not twisted.

   Other top tether type
   Route the tether strap around the head restraint. Make sure the strap is not twisted.
3. Secure the tether strap hook to the anchorage.
4. Tighten the tether strap as instructed by the child restraint system manufacturer.

Adding Security with a Tether

WARNING: Child restraint anchorages are designed to withstand only those loads imposed by correctly fitted child restraints. Under no circumstances are they to be used for adult seat belts, harnesses or for attaching other items or equipment to the vehicle.

Always use a tether for front-facing child restraint systems whether using the seat belt or lower anchorages.

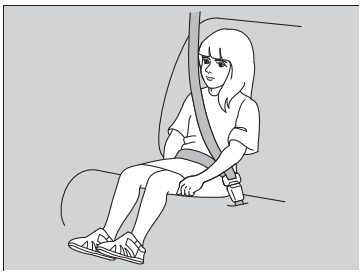
Safety of Larger Children

■ Protecting Larger Children

The following pages give instructions on how to check proper seat belt fit, what kind of booster seat to use if one is needed, and important precautions for a child who must sit in front.

■ Checking Seat Belt Fit

When a child is too big for a child restraint system, secure the child in a rear seat using the lap/shoulder seat belt. Have the child sit upright and all the way back, then answer the following questions.



■ Checklist

- Do the child's knees bend comfortably over the edge of the seat?
- Does the shoulder belt cross between the child's neck and arm?
- Is the lap part of the seat belt as low as possible, touching the child's thighs?
- Will the child be able to stay seated like this for the whole trip?

If you answer yes to all these questions, the child is ready to wear the lap/shoulder seat belt correctly. If you answer no to any question, the child needs to ride on a booster seat until the seat belt fits properly without a booster seat.

Safety of Larger Children

⚠WARNING

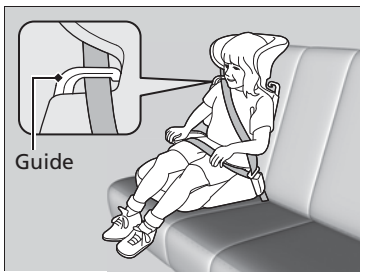
Allowing a child aged 12 or under to sit in front can result in injury or death if the passenger's front airbag inflates.

If a larger child must ride in front, move the vehicle seat as far to the rear as possible, have the child sit up properly and wear the seat belt properly, and use a booster seat if needed.

Booster Seats



If a lap/shoulder seat belt cannot be used properly, position the child in a booster seat in the rear seat. For the child's safety, check that the child meets the booster seat manufacturer's recommendations.



A backrest is available for a specific booster seat. Install the backrest to the booster seat and adjust it to the vehicle seat according to the booster seat manufacturer's instructions. Make sure the seat belt is properly routed through the guide at the shoulder of the backrest and the belt does not touch and cross the child's neck.

Booster Seats

When installing a booster seat, make sure to read the instructions that came with it, and install the seat accordingly.
There are high- and low-type booster seats. Choose a booster seat that allows the child to wear the seat belt correctly.

We recommend a booster seat with a backrest as it is easier to adjust the shoulder belt.

Continued

■ Protecting Larger Children - Final Checks

Your vehicle has a rear seat where children can be properly restrained. If you ever have to carry a group of children, and a child must ride in front:

- Make sure you read and fully understand the instructions and safety information in this manual.
- Move the front passenger seat as far back as possible.
- Have the child sit upright and well back in the seat.
- Check that the seat belt is properly positioned so that the child is secure in the seat.

■ Monitoring child passengers

We strongly recommend that you keep an eye on child passengers. Even older, more mature children sometimes need to be reminded to fasten their seat belts and sit up properly.

Carbon Monoxide Gas

The engine exhaust from this vehicle contains carbon monoxide, a colourless, odourless, and highly toxic gas. As long as you properly maintain your vehicle, carbon monoxide gas will not get into the interior.

■ **Have the exhaust system inspected for leaks whenever**
- The exhaust system is making an unusual noise.
- The exhaust system may have been damaged.
- The vehicle is raised for an oil change.

When you operate a vehicle with the boot open, airflow can pull exhaust gas into the interior and create a hazardous condition. If you must drive with the boot open, open all the windows and set the climate control system as shown below.

1. Select the fresh air mode.
2. Select the mode.
3. Set the fan speed to high.
4. Set the temperature control to a comfortable setting.

Adjust the climate control system in the same manner if you sit in your parked vehicle with the engine running.

Carbon Monoxide Gas

⚠WARNING

Carbon monoxide gas is toxic.

Breathing it can cause unconsciousness and even kill you.

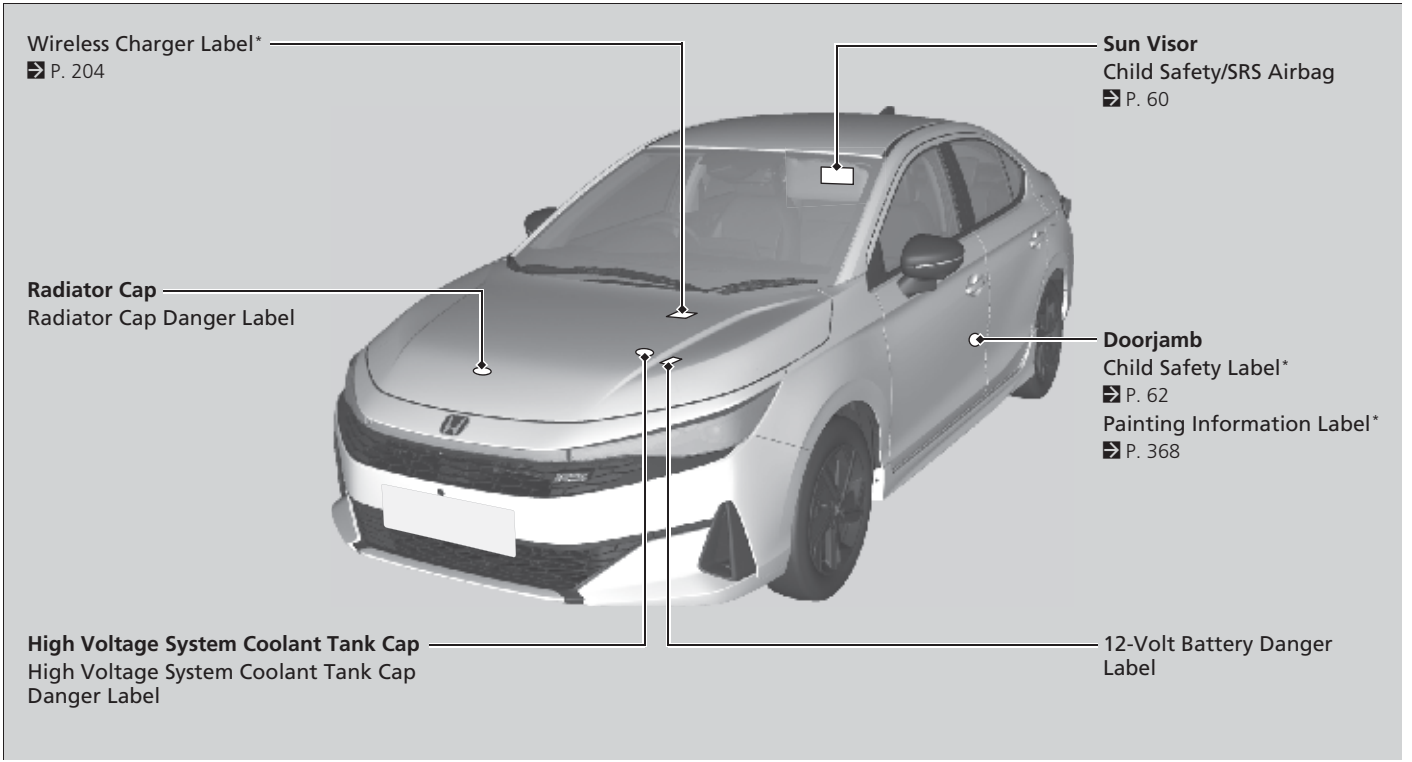
Avoid any enclosed areas or activities that expose you to carbon monoxide.

An enclosed area such as a garage can quickly fill up with carbon monoxide gas.
Do not run the engine with the garage door closed. Even when the garage door is open, drive out of the garage immediately after starting the engine.

Label Locations

These labels are in the locations shown. They warn you of potential hazards that can cause serious injury or death. Read these labels carefully.

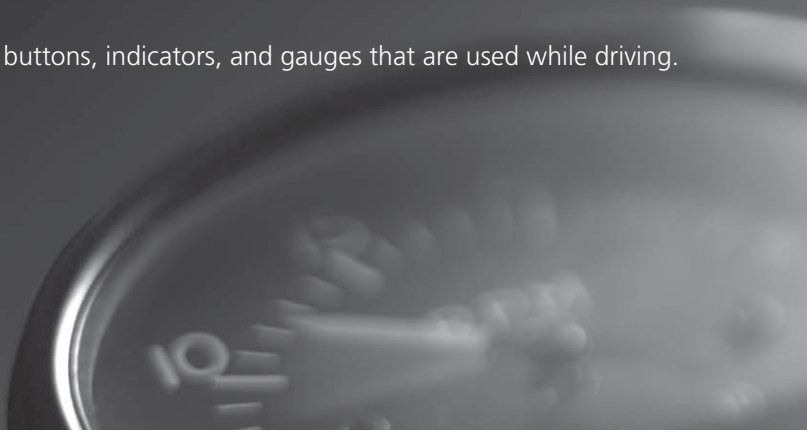
If a label comes off or becomes hard to read, contact a dealer for a replacement.



* Not available on all models

Instrument Panel

This chapter describes the buttons, indicators, and gauges that are used while driving.



Indicators 96
Gauges and Driver Information Interface 114
Gauges 114
Driver Information Interface 116

Indicators come on/blink depending on the condition of the vehicle. Messages may display on the driver information interface at the same time. Please take the appropriate action outlined in the message, such as contacting a dealer.

 *1	Parking Brake and Brake System Indicator (Red)	→ P. 98
 *1	Parking Brake and Brake System Indicator (Amber)	→ P. 100
 *1	Automatic Brake Hold System Indicator	→ P. 100
 *1	Automatic Brake Hold Indicator	→ P. 100
 *1	Malfunction Indicator Lamp	→ P. 100
 *1	12-Volt Battery Charging System Indicator	→ P. 100

	Transmission System Indicator	→ P. 101
D	Shift Position Indicator	→ P. 101
	Deceleration Paddle Selector Indicator	→ P. 101
 *1	Power System Indicator	→ P. 101
READY	**READY** Indicator	→ P. 102
 *1	**EV** Indicator	→ P. 102
	Seat Belt Reminder Indicator	→ P. 102

	Low Fuel Indicator	→ P. 102
 *1	Anti-lock Brake System (**ABS**) Indicator	→ P. 102
 *1	Supplemental Restraint System Indicator	→ P. 103
 *1	Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) System Indicator	→ P. 103
 *1	VSA **OFF** Indicator	→ P. 103
 *1	Electric Power Steering (EPS) System Indicator	→ P. 104
	Turn Signal and Hazard Warning Indicators	→ P. 104

*1: When you set the power mode to ON, these indicators come on to indicate that system checks are being performed. They go off a few seconds later or after the power system has started. If an indicator does not come on or turn off, there may be a malfunction in the corresponding system. To resolve the issue, follow the instructions in the owner's manual.

	Lights On Indicator	→ P. 104
	High-Beam Indicator	→ P. 104
 *1	Auto High-Beam Indicator	→ P. 104
	ECON Mode Indicator	→ P. 105
 *1	Low Tyre Pressure/ Deflation Warning System Indicator*	→ P. 106
 *1	Speed Alarm Indicator*	→ P. 107

	System Message Indicator	→ P. 107
	Immobilizer System Indicator	→ P. 105
	Security System Alarm Indicator	→ P. 105
 *1	Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow Indicator (Amber)	→ P. 108
	Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow Indicator (White/ Green)	→ P. 108
 *1	Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS) Indicator (Amber)	→ P. 108
	Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS) Indicator (White/Green)	→ P. 109

 *1	Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS) Indicator (Amber)	→ P. 109
	Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS) Indicator (Grey)	→ P. 109
 *1	Road Departure Mitigation Indicator (Amber)	→ P. 110
	Road Departure Mitigation System Steering Assist Auto OFF Indicator	→ P. 110
	Road Departure Mitigation Indicator (Grey)	→ P. 110
 *1	Safety Support Indicator (Amber)	→ P. 111
	Safety Support Indicator (Green/Grey)	→ P. 113

*1: When you set the power mode to ON, these indicators come on to indicate that system checks are being performed. They go off a few seconds later or after the power system has started. If an indicator does not come on or turn off, there may be a malfunction in the corresponding system. To resolve the issue, follow the instructions in the owner's manual.

* Not available on all models

Continued

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation
 (Red)	Parking Brake and Brake System Indicator (Red)	• Comes on when the parking brake is applied, and goes off when it is released.	• The beeper sounds and the indicator comes on if you drive with the parking brake applied. • Comes on for about 30 seconds when you apply the electric parking brake while the power mode is in ACCESSORY or VEHICLE OFF, then goes off. • Stays on for about 30 seconds when you set the power mode to VEHICLE OFF while the electric parking brake is applied, then goes off.
		• Comes on when the brake fluid level is low.	• **Comes on while driving** - Make sure the parking brake is released. Stop in a safe place and check the brake fluid level. ➡ **What to do when the indicator comes on while driving** P. 405

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation
 (Red)	Parking Brake and Brake System Indicator (Red)	• Comes on if there is a problem with the brake system.	• **Comes on along with the Parking Brake and Brake System Indicator (amber)** - Immediately stop in a safe place. Contact a dealer for repair. The brake pedal becomes harder to operate. Depress the pedal further than you normally do. ➡ **If the Brake System Indicator (Red) comes on or blinks at the same time when the Brake System Indicator (Amber) comes on** P. 406 • **Comes on along with the ABS indicator** - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer. ➡ **If the Brake System Indicator (Red) Comes On** P. 405 • **Blinks and the Parking Brake and Brake System Indicator (amber) comes on at the same time** - There is a problem with the electric parking brake system. The parking brake may not be set. Avoid using the parking brake and have your vehicle checked by a dealer immediately. ➡ **If the Brake System Indicator (Red) comes on or blinks at the same time when the Brake System Indicator (Amber) comes on** P. 406

Continued

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation
 (Amber)	Parking Brake and Brake System Indicator (Amber)	• Comes on if there is a problem with a system related to braking other than the conventional brake system.	• **Comes on while driving** - Avoid high speeds and sudden braking. Take the vehicle to a dealer immediately.
		• Comes on if there is a problem with the electric parking brake system and/or the automatic brake hold system.	• **Stays on constantly** - Avoid using the parking brake and have your vehicle checked by a dealer immediately.
	Automatic Brake Hold System Indicator	• Comes on when the automatic brake hold system is on.	**Automatic Brake Hold** P. 305
	Automatic Brake Hold Indicator	• Comes on when the automatic brake hold is activated.	**Automatic Brake Hold** P. 305
	Malfunction Indicator Lamp	• Comes on if there is a problem with the emissions control systems or electric vehicle system. • Blinks when a misfire in the engine's cylinders is detected.	**If the Malfunction Indicator Lamp Comes On or Blinks** P. 404
	12-Volt Battery Charging System Indicator	• Comes on when there is a problem with the charging system.	• Stop in a safe place and contact a dealer immediately. **Checking the 12-Volt Battery** P. 356 **If the 12-Volt Battery Charging System Indicator Comes On** P. 403

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation
	Transmission System Indicator	• Blinks if the transmission system has a problem.	• Have your vehicle checked by a dealer immediately. • **Do Not Drive displays on the driver information interface** - Immediately stop in a safe place and contact a dealer.
	Shift Position Indicator	• Indicates the current shift position.	➔ **Shifting** P. 227
	Deceleration Paddle Selector Indicator	• Comes on when the paddle selector is pulled. • Blinks when deceleration does not occur while pulling the paddle selector. • Comes on with **M** when shift lever in B and pulling the paddle selector.	➔ **Deceleration Paddle Selector** P. 229
	Power System Indicator	• Comes on if there is a problem with the electric vehicle system.	• **Stays on constantly** - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer immediately • **Stop Driving When Safe displays on the driver information interface** - Immediately stop in a safe place and contact a dealer.

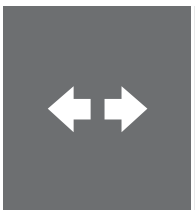
Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation
READY	**READY** Indicator	• Comes on when the vehicle is ready to drive.	➡ **Turning on the Power** P. 218
EV	**EV** Indicator	• Comes on when the vehicle is moved by the motor, and the engine is not operating.	—
	Seat Belt Reminder Indicator	• Comes on if you are not wearing a seat belt when you set the power mode to ON. • If the front passenger is not wearing a seat belt, the indicator comes on a few seconds later. Models with rear seat belt reminder • Comes on for a while if any rear passenger unfastens their seat belt while the power mode is ON. All models • Blinks and beeper sounds while driving when you or the front passenger are unfastened or any rear passenger* unfastens their seat belt.	• The beeper stops and the indicator goes off when you, the front passenger and the rear passengers* fasten their seat belts. • **Stays on after you, the front passenger and/or the rear passenger* has fastened the seat belt(s)** - A detection error may have occurred in the sensor. Have your vehicle checked by a dealer. ➡ **Seat Belt Reminder** P. 42
	Low Fuel Indicator	• Comes on when the fuel reserve is running low (approximately 5.3 Litres left).	• Refuel your vehicle as soon as possible.
		• Blinks if there is a problem with the fuel gauge.	• Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.
	Anti-lock Brake System (**ABS**) Indicator	• Comes on if there is a problem with the ABS.	• **Stays on constantly** - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer. With this indicator on, your vehicle still has normal braking ability but no anti-lock function. ➡ **Anti-lock Brake System (ABS)** P. 308

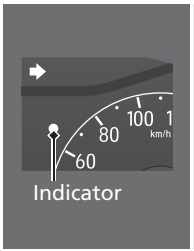
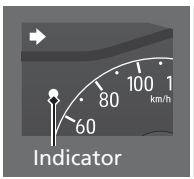
* Not available on all models

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation
	Supplemental Restraint System Indicator	• Comes on if a problem with any of the following is detected: - Supplemental Restraint System - Side airbag system - Side curtain airbag system* - Seat belt tensioner	• **Stays on constantly** - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.
	Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) System Indicator	• Blinks when VSA is active.	—
		• Comes on if there is a problem with the VSA system, hill start assist system, or agile handling assist.	• **Stays on constantly** - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer. ➡ **Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) System** P. 234 ➡ **Hill Start Assist System** P. 223 ➡ **Agile Handling Assist** P. 236
		• Comes on if the VSA system is deactivated temporarily after the 12-volt battery has been disconnected, then reconnected.	• Drive a short distance at more than 20 km/h. The indicator should go off. If it does not, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.
	Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) **OFF** Indicator	• Comes on when you partially disable VSA.	➡ **VSA On and Off** P. 235
		• Comes on if the VSA system is deactivated temporarily after the 12-volt battery has been disconnected, then reconnected.	• Drive a short distance at more than 20 km/h. The indicator should go off. If it does not, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

* Not available on all models

Continued

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation
	Electric Power Steering (EPS) System Indicator	• Comes on if there is a problem with the EPS system.	• **Stays on constantly** - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer. • **Do Not Drive displays on the driver information interface** - Immediately stop in a safe place and contact a dealer. ➡ **If the Electric Power Steering (EPS) System Indicator Comes On** P. 407
	Turn Signal and Hazard Warning Indicators	• Blinks when you operate the turn signal lever. • Blinks along with all turn signals when you press the hazard warning button.	• **Does not blink or blinks rapidly** ➡ **Replacing Light Bulbs** P. 339, 340
		• Blinks along with all turn signals when you depress the brake pedal while the high speed driving.	➡ **Emergency Stop Signal** P. 310
	Lights On Indicator	• Comes on when the position, tail, and other external lights are on.	➡ **Light Switches** P. 166
	High-Beam Indicator	• Comes on when the high beam headlights are on.	—
	Auto High-Beam Indicator	• Comes on when all the operating conditions of the auto high-beam are met.	➡ **Auto High-Beam** P. 170

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation
	Immobilizer System Indicator	• Blinks if the immobilizer system cannot recognise the key information.	• **Blinks** - You cannot start the power system. Set the power mode to VEHICLE OFF, then select the ON mode again. • **Repeatedly blinks** - The system may be malfunctioning. Have your vehicle checked by a dealer. • Do not attempt to alter this system or add other devices to it. Electrical problems can occur.
	Security System Alarm Indicator	• Blinks when the security system alarm has been set.	**Security System Alarm** P. 154
	ECON Mode Indicator	• Comes on when the ECON mode is on.	**ECON Mode** P. 232

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation
	Low Tyre Pressure/ Deflation Warning System Indicator*	• May come on briefly if the power mode is set to ON and the vehicle is not moved within 45 seconds, to indicate the initialise process is not yet complete. • Comes on and stays on when: - One or more tyres' pressures are determined to be significantly low. - The system has not been initialised.	• **Comes on while driving** - Stop in a safe place, check tyre pressures, and inflate the tyre(s) if necessary. • **Stays on after the tyres are inflated to the recommended pressures** - The system needs to be initialised. **Deflation Warning System Initialisation** P. 239
		• Blinks for about one minute, and then stays on if there is a problem with the deflation warning system, or when a compact spare tyre is temporarily installed.	• **Blinks and remains on** - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer. If the vehicle is fitted with a compact spare tyre, get your regular tyre repaired or replaced and put back on your vehicle as soon as you can.
		• Comes on if the deflation warning system is deactivated temporarily after the 12-volt battery has been disconnected, then reconnected.	• Drive a short distance at more than 20 km/h. The indicator should go off. If it does not, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

 * Not available on all models

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation
80 km/h	Speed Alarm Indicator*	• Comes on when your vehicle speed exceeds 80 km/h. A reminder tone sounds about every two minutes. • Blinks when your vehicle speed exceeds 120 km/h. A reminder tone sounds continuously.	• This indicator keeps illuminating while your vehicle speed is faster than 80 km/h. • This indicator keeps blinking while your vehicle speed is faster than 120 km/h.
	System Message Indicator	• Comes on along with a beep when a problem is detected. A system message on the driver information interface appears at the same time.	• While the indicator is on, press the (home) button, and select **Information** to see the message again. **Switching the Display** P. 116 • Refer to the Indicators information in this chapter when a system message appears on the driver information interface. Respond to the message accordingly. • The driver information interface does not return to the normal screen unless the warning is cancelled, or the left selector wheel is pressed.

* Not available on all models

Continued

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation
	Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow Indicator (Amber)	• Comes on if there is a problem with ACC with Low Speed Follow.	• **Comes on while driving** - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.
		• Comes on if the ACC with Low Speed Follow is deactivated temporarily after the 12-volt battery has been disconnected, then reconnected.	• Drive a short distance at more than 20 km/h. The indicator should go off. If it does not, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.
		• Indicator may come on temporarily when the maximum permissible weight is exceeded. • ACC with Low Speed Follow has been automatically cancelled.	• Make sure the total load is within the maximum permissible weight. ➡ **Load Limit** P. 216 • **Stays on constantly** - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.
	Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow Indicator (White/Green)	• Lights up in white when you press the button. • Lights up in green while the system is in operation.	➡ **Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow** P. 266
	Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS) Indicator (Amber)	• Comes on if there is a problem with the LKAS.	• **Stays on constantly** - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.
		• Indicator may come on temporarily when the maximum permissible weight is exceeded.	• Make sure the total load is within the maximum permissible weight. ➡ **Load Limit** P. 216 • **Stays on constantly** - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation
	Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS) Indicator (White/Green)	• Lights up in white when you press the LKAS button. • Lights up in green when the LKAS is in operation.	**Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS)** P. 284
	Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS) Indicator (Amber)	• Comes on if there is a problem with the CMBS or it cannot be used temporarily due to issues such as dirt on the windscreen near the camera.	• The Safety Support Indicator (Amber) comes on at the same time. **Safety Support Indicator (Amber)** P. 111
	Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS) Indicator (Grey)	• Comes on when the CMBS is off.	**Safety Support** P. 124

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation
	Road Departure Mitigation Indicator (Amber)	• Comes on if there is a problem with the Road Departure Mitigation System or it cannot be used temporarily due to issues such as dirt on the windscreen near the camera.	• The Safety Support Indicator (Amber) comes on at the same time. **Safety Support Indicator (Amber)** P. 111
	Road Departure Mitigation System Steering Assist Auto OFF Indicator	• Comes on when the Road Departure Mitigation System steering assist is automatically turned off.	**Road Departure Mitigation System** P. 259
	Road Departure Mitigation Indicator (Grey)	• Comes on when the Road Departure Mitigation System is off.	**Safety Support** P. 124

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation
	Safety Support Indicator (Amber)	• Comes on if there is a problem with the Road Departure Mitigation system or CMBS.	• **Stays on constantly** - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.
		• Indicator may come on temporarily when the maximum permissible weight is exceeded.	• Make sure the total load is within the maximum permissible weight. ➡ **Load Limit** P. 216 • **Stays on constantly** - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.
		• Comes on if the Road Departure Mitigation system and CMBS are deactivated temporarily after the 12-volt battery has been disconnected and then reconnected.	• Drive a short distance at more than 20 km/h. The indicator should go off. If it does not, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation
	Safety Support Indicator (Amber)	• Comes on when the Road Departure Mitigation system and/or CMBS shuts itself off.	• **Stays on** - The temperature inside the camera is too high. Use the climate control system to cool down the camera. The system activates when the temperature inside the camera cools down. ➡ **Front Wide View Camera** P. 299
			• **Stays on** - The area around the camera is blocked by dirt, mud, etc. Stop your vehicle in a safe place and wipe the debris off with a soft cloth. • Have your vehicle checked by a dealer if the indicator and message are still displayed even after you have cleaned the area around the camera. ➡ **Front Wide View Camera** P. 299 • It may come on when the ambient conditions are dark, such as when driving in a tunnel, or at night, dawn, or dusk.

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation
	Safety Support Indicator (Green/Grey)	• Lights up in green when the Road Departure Mitigation system and CMBS are on. • Lights up in green and grey when one or more of the systems above are off. • Lights up in grey when all systems above are off.	**Road Departure Mitigation System** P. 259 **Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS)** P. 245

Gauges

Gauges include the speedometer, fuel gauge, and other related indicators. They are displayed when the power mode is in ON.

■ Speedometer

Displays your driving speed in km/h.

■ Fuel Gauge

Displays the amount of fuel left in the fuel tank.

■ POWER/CHARGE Gauge

Display the status of electric motor output and High Voltage battery charging.

Fuel Gauge

NOTICE

You should refuel when the reading approaches E. Running out of fuel can cause the engine to misfire, damaging the catalytic converter.

After lightly refueling, or depending on your vehicle's condition, the actual amount of remaining fuel may differ from the fuel gauge reading.

Outside Temperature

Shows the outside temperature in Celsius.
If the outside temperature has been below 3°C at the time you set the power mode to ON, the **Outside Temperature Low** message appears on the driver information interface.

Adjusting the outside temperature display

Adjust the temperature reading by up to ±3°C if the temperature reading seems incorrect.

Clock

Shows the clock.

Odometer

Shows the total number of kilometres that your vehicle has accumulated.

Current Mode for ACC with Low Speed Follow and the LKAS

Shows the current mode for ACC with Low Speed Follow and LKAS.

➔ **Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow** P. 266
➔ **Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS)** P. 284

Outside Temperature

The temperature sensor is in the front bumper. Road heat and exhaust from another vehicle can affect the temperature reading when your vehicle speed is less than 30 km/h.

It may take several minutes for the display to be updated after the temperature reading has stabilised.

Adjusting the outside temperature display

You can adjust the temperature reading.

➔ **Settings** P. 128

Clock

You can adjust the time manually and change the clock display to show the 12 hour clock or 24 hour clock.

➔ **Clock** P. 138

Driver Information Interface

The driver information interface shows information such as the estimated travelable distance and fuel economy of the vehicle. It also displays messages such as warnings and other helpful information.

When a warning message displays, please check the message and contact a dealer to have the vehicle inspected if necessary. Please refer to the pages below if the **Engine Oil Pressure Low** or **Engine Temperature Too Hot** message is displayed.

➔ **If the Engine Oil Pressure Low Warning Appears** P. 402

➔ **Overheating** P. 400

■ Switching the Display

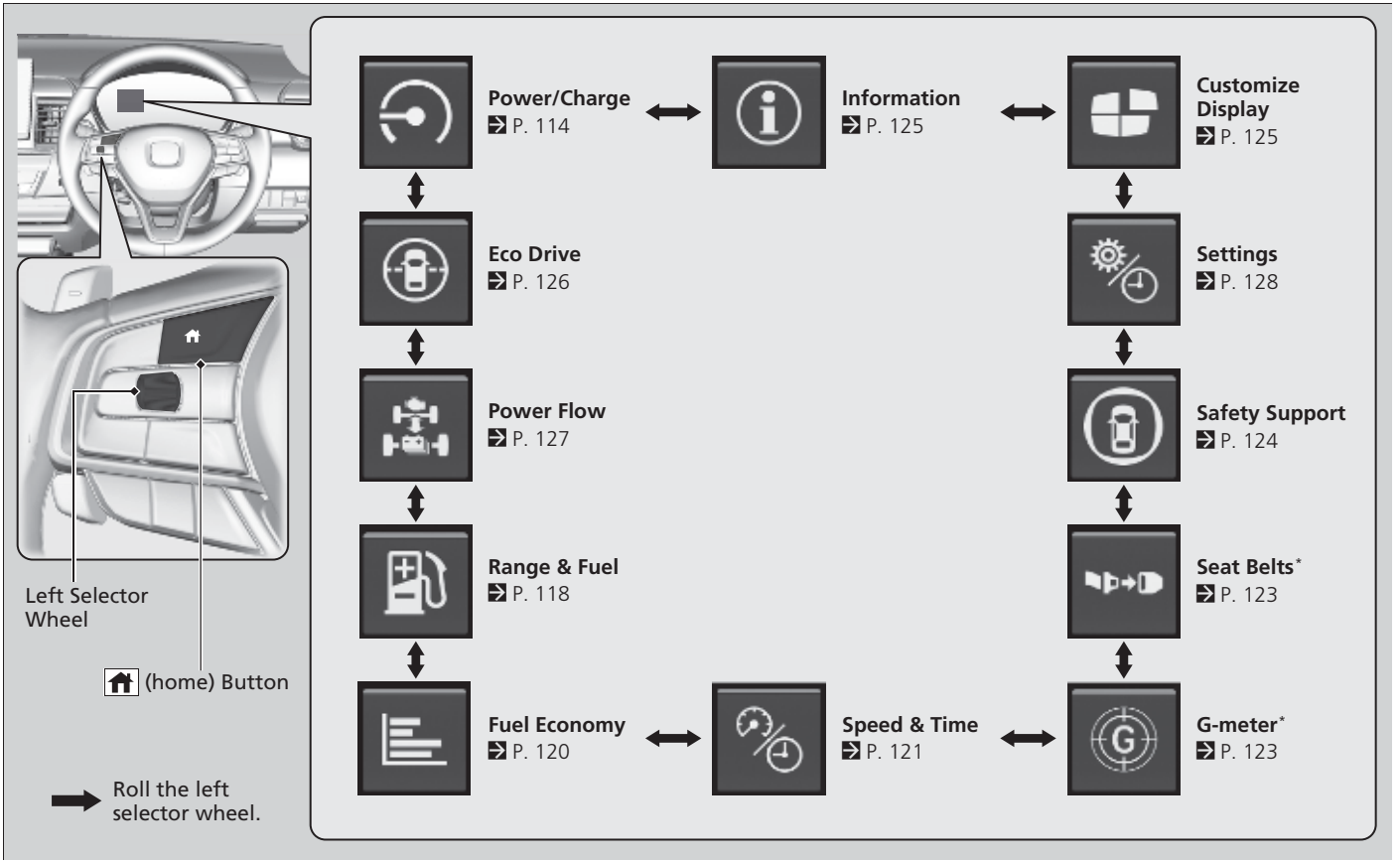
Press the (home) button, then roll the left selector wheel to scroll to the content you want to see. Press the left selector wheel to see detailed information.

Switching the Display

To go back to the home screen, press the (home) button.

You can add or remove content from the driver information interface.

➔ **Customize Display** P. 125

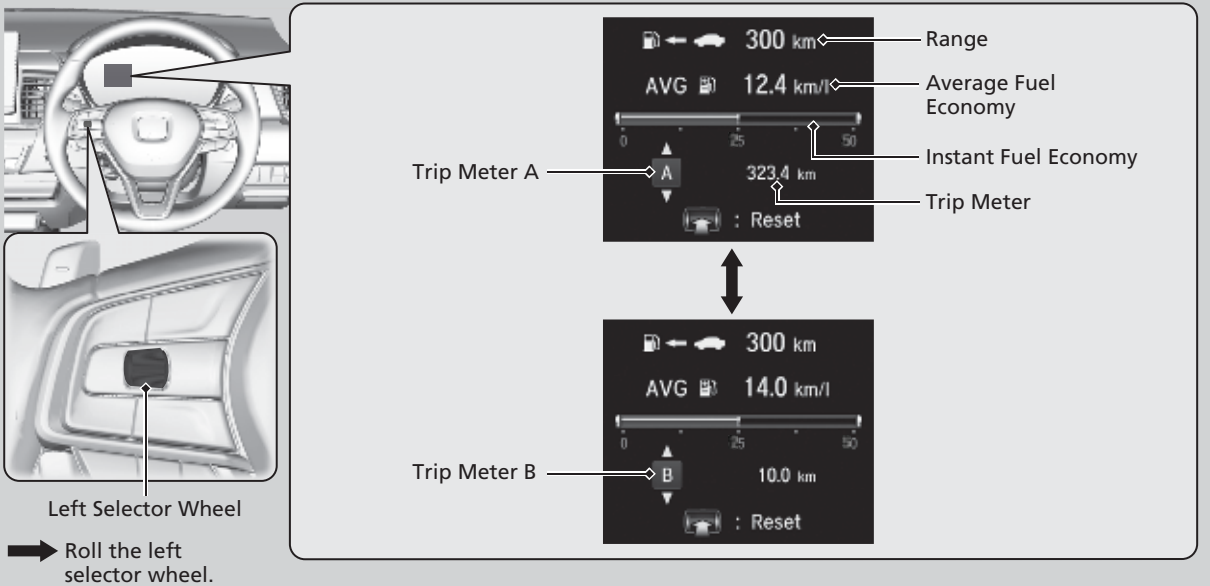


* Not available on all models

Continued

■ Range/Fuel/Trip Meter

Roll the left selector wheel to switch between trip meter A and trip meter B.



■ Trip meter
Shows the total number of kilometres driven since the last reset. Meters A and B can be used to measure two separate trips.

Resetting a trip meter
To reset the trip meter, display it, press the left selector wheel, and then select **Reset**.
▶ The trip meter is reset to **0.0**.

■ Average fuel economy
Shows the estimated average fuel economy of each trip meter in km/l.
The display is updated at set intervals. When a trip meter is reset, the average fuel economy is also reset.

■ Instant fuel economy
Shows the instant fuel economy as a bar graph in km/l.

■ Range
Shows the estimated distance you can travel on the remaining power and fuel. This estimated distance is based on the vehicle's current fuel economy.

Average fuel economy

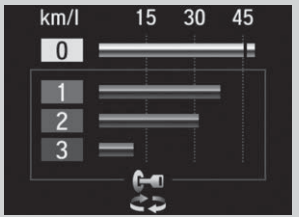
You can change when to reset the average fuel economy.
Settings P. 128

Range

The driving range displayed is only an estimate and may differ from the actual distance the vehicle can travel.

Continued

Fuel Economy

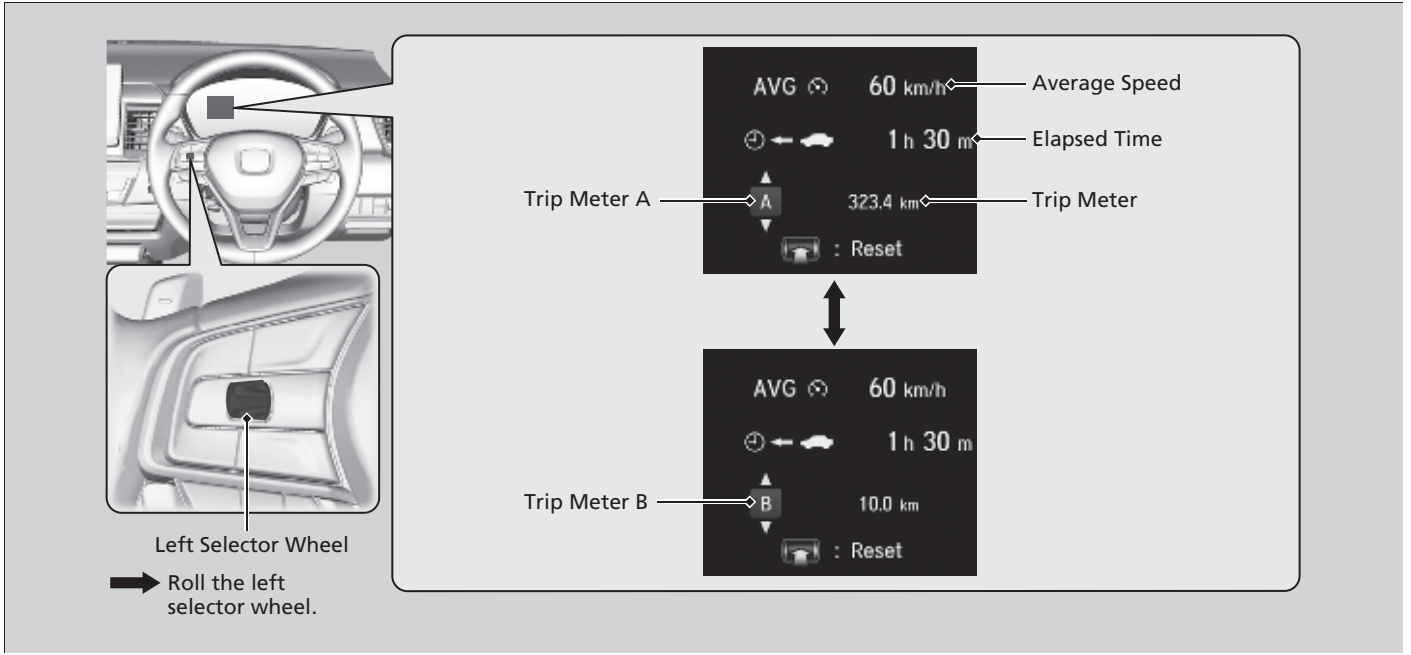


Shows the average fuel economy for the last three driving cycles (1-3), and the current driving cycle (0) in km/l.

Each time you set the power mode to ON, the display is updated, and the oldest record is deleted.

Speed/Time/Trip Meter

Roll the left selector wheel to switch between trip meter A and trip meter B.



Continued

■ Trip meter

➔ **Trip meter** P. 119

■ Elapsed Time

Shows the time elapsed since the last time Trip A or Trip B was reset.

■ Average Speed

Shows the average speed in km/h since the last time Trip A or Trip B was reset.

Elapsed Time

You can change when to reset the elapsed time.

➔ **Settings** P. 128

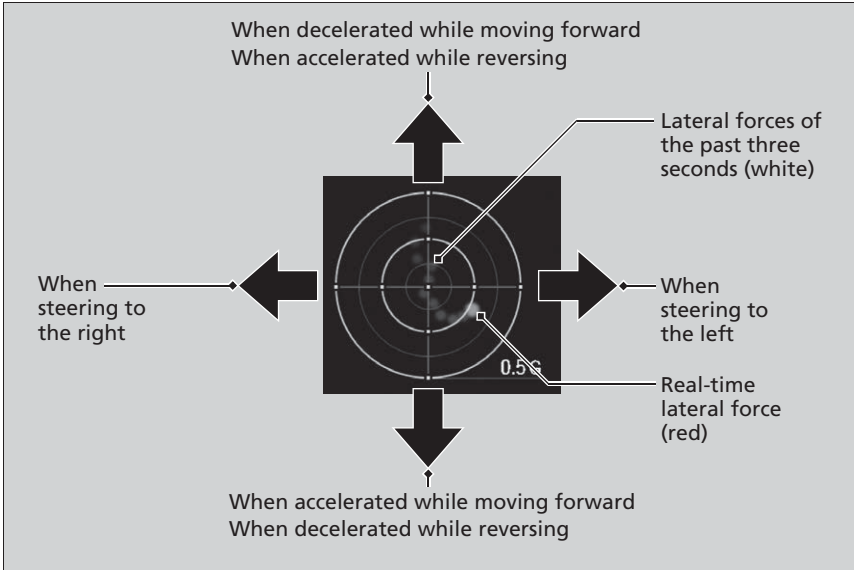
Average Speed

You can change when to reset the average speed.

➔ **Settings** P. 128

G-meter*

Displays the strength (G) and direction of the load that is applied to the vehicle during driving.



Seat Belts*

Occurs, under specified conditions, when seat belts are latched or unlatched.

Seat Belt Reminder P. 42

* Not available on all models

Continued

■ Safety Support

Indicates the status of the Road Departure Mitigation system and CMBS, such as On, Off, or Failure, by colour and letters.

The following colours indicate the status of any of the above-mentioned systems:

- Green: The system is on.
- Grey: The system is off.
- Amber: There is a problem with the system.



Safety Support

If a system is indicated by the colour amber, have your vehicle checked by a dealer immediately.

To turn each system on or off, first rotate the left selector wheel to switch displays. From the next display, you can select which system to turn on or off.

- **Road Departure Mitigation System** P. 259
- **Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS)** P. 245

You can also confirm the status of each function by the colour of the indicator.

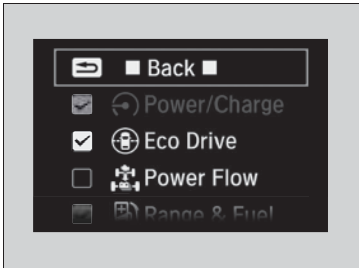
- **Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS) Indicator (Amber)** P. 109
- **Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS) Indicator (Grey)** P. 109
- **Road Departure Mitigation Indicator (Amber)** P. 110
- **Road Departure Mitigation Indicator (Grey)** P. 110
- **Road Departure Mitigation System Steering Assist Auto OFF Indicator** P. 110
- **Safety Support Indicator (Amber)** P. 111
- **Safety Support Indicator (Green/Grey)** P. 113

Customize Display

You can choose which icons to display on the home screen.



1. Roll the left selector wheel until **Customize Display** is selected, then press the left selector wheel.
2. Roll the left selector wheel.



3. Roll the left selector wheel to scroll between icons, then press the left selector wheel to check or uncheck them.

Customize Display

Icons that are grey cannot be removed from the home screen.

When you customize settings, shift to P.

Information

You can check if there are any active warning messages.

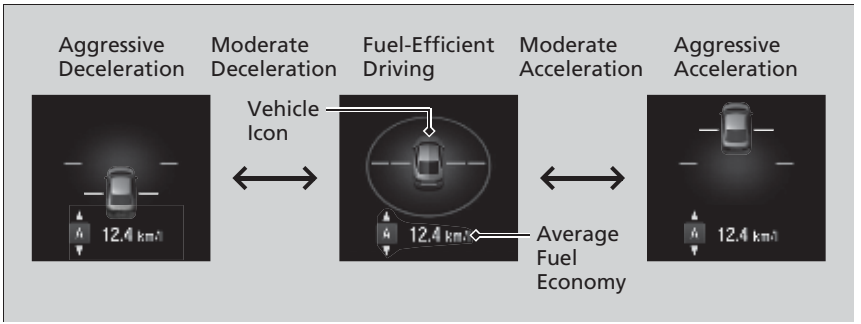
Information

If there are multiple warnings or informations, you can roll the left selector wheel to see other warnings.

Continued

■ Eco Drive Display

The vehicle icon on the display moves forward or backward while driving.
The more aggressive the acceleration is, the further the icon moves forward.
The more aggressive the deceleration is, the further the icon moves backward.
Keep the icon near the centre of the circle for better fuel economy while driving.

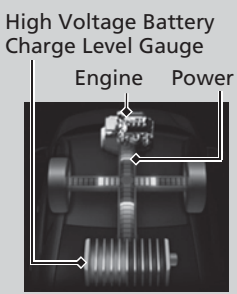


Eco Drive Display

Switch between the average fuel economy A and average fuel economy B by rolling the left selector wheel.

Power Flow/Engine Status Display/High Voltage Battery Charge Level Gauge

Displays the power flow of the motor and engine, indicating the vehicle's power source, remaining battery level, and whether the battery is being charged.




Engine ON


Engine OFF

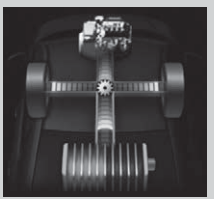
Hybrid (HV)

Power is supplied by the motor and the engine.



Electric Vehicle (EV)

Power is supplied by the motor.



Engine (Direct Drive)

Power is being supplied to charge the High Voltage battery and supply power to the wheels.



Regeneration

The motor is charging the High Voltage battery.



Power is being supplied by the engine only.



The engine is running and the motor is charging the High Voltage battery.

Continued

Power Flow/Engine Status Display/High Voltage Battery Charge Level Gauge

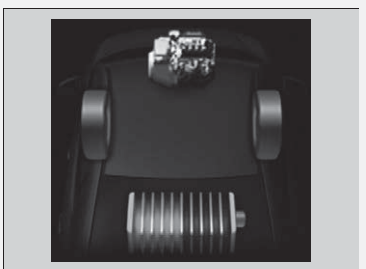
The high voltage battery charge level may decrease under the following conditions:

- When the 12-volt battery has been replaced.
- When the 12-volt battery has been disconnected.
- When the high voltage battery control system corrects its reading.

The charge level reading will be corrected automatically while driving.

Changes in the temperature of the High Voltage battery can cause the number of indicators in the battery charge level gauge to change.

While the vehicle is stationary with the engine running, the following may appear on the driver information interface.

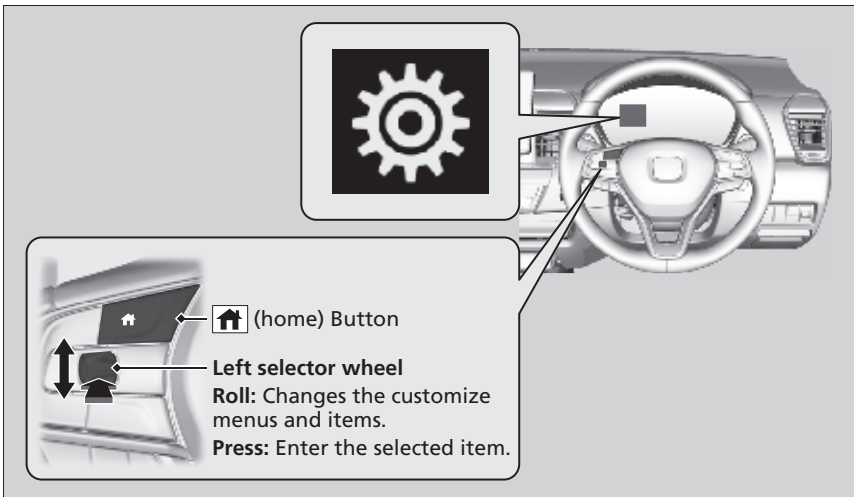


■ Settings

Use the driver information interface to customize certain features.

■ How to customize

Press the (home) button, then select the screen by rolling the left selector wheel while the power mode is in ON, the vehicle is at a complete stop, and the shift position is in P. Then, press the left selector wheel.



Settings

To customize other features, roll the left selector wheel.

List of customizable options P. 129
Example of customization settings P. 134

When you customize settings, shift to P.

■ **List of customizable options**

Setup Group	Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings
Deflation Warning System*	—	Initialises the deflation warning system.	**Initialise/Cancel**
Clock Setup	**Clock Adjustment**	Adjusts the time. ➡ **Adjusting the Clock** P. 138	—
	Clock Display	Sets time display 24 hour, 12 hour or off.	**24h/12h*1/OFF**

*1:Default Setting

* Not available on all models

Setup Group	Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings
Driver Assist System Setup	**Preceding Vehicle Proximity Warning Distance**	Changes the distance at which Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS) alerts.	**Far/Normal**[*1]**/Near**
	ACC Vehicle Ahead Detected Beep	Causes the system to beep when a vehicle is detected or when the vehicle is out of ACC with Low Speed Follow range.	**ON/OFF**[*1]
	Road Departure Mitigation Setting	Changes the setting for the Road Departure Mitigation system.	Indian, Bhutanese, Sri Lankan and Nepalese models **Early/Normal/Delayed**[*1] Except Indian, Bhutanese, Sri Lankan and Nepalese models **Early/Normal**[*1]**/Delayed/ Warning Only**
	Lane Keep Assist Beep	Causes the system to beep when the LKAS is suspended.	**ON/OFF**[*1]
	Lead Car Departure Notification System*	Changes the setting for the lead car departure notification system.	**Normal**[*1]**/Early/OFF**

*1:Default Setting

 * Not available on all models

Setup Group	Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings
Meter Setup	**Adjust Outside Temp. Display**	Adjusts the temperature reading by a few degrees.	**-3°C ~ ±0°C**[*1] **~ +3°C**
	"Trip A" Reset Timing	Changes the setting of how to reset trip meter A, average fuel economy A, average speed A, and elapsed time A.	**When Fully Refueled/When Ignition Is Turned OFF/ Manual Reset**[*1]
	"Trip B" Reset Timing	Changes the setting of how to reset trip meter B, average fuel economy B, average speed B, and elapsed time B.	**When Fully Refueled/When Ignition Is Turned OFF/ Manual Reset**[*1]
	Alarm Volume Control	Changes the alarm volume, such as buzzers, warnings, turn signal sound, and so on.	**Max/Mid**[*1]**/Min**
	Fuel Efficiency Backlight[*]	Turns the ambient meter feature on and off.	**ON**[*1]**/OFF**
	Rear Seat Reminder	Turns the Rear Seat Reminder feature on and off.	**ON**[*1]**/OFF**

*1:Default Setting

* Not available on all models

Continued

Setup Group	Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings
Keyless Access Setup	**Keyless Access Beep Volume**	Changes the beep tone that sounds when you have a keyless remote and grab a front door handle.	**High**[*1]**/Low**
	Keyless Access Beep	Causes the beeper to sound when you unlock/lock the doors.	**ON**[*1]**/OFF**
	Remote Start System ON/OFF	Turns the remote engine start feature on and off.	**ON**[*1]**/OFF**
Lighting Setup	**Auto High-Beam**	Turns the auto high-beam on and off.	**ON**[*1]**/OFF**
	Interior Light Dimmer Duration	Changes the length of time the interior lights stay on after you close the doors.	**60sec/30sec**[*1]**/15sec**
	Headlight Auto OFF Timer	Changes the length of time the exterior lights stay on after you close the driver's door.	**60sec/30sec/15sec**[*1]**/0sec**
	Instrument Illumination Sensitivity	Changes the sensitivity of the brightness of the instrument panel when the headlight switch is in the **AUTO** position.	**Max/High/Mid**[*1]**/Low/Min**
	Headlight Integration With Wipers	Changes the settings for the wiper operation when the headlights automatically come on while the headlight switch is in the **AUTO** position.	**ON**[*1]**/OFF**

*1:Default Setting

Setup Group	Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings
Door Setup	**Auto Door Lock**	Changes the setting for when the doors automatically lock.	**With Vehicle Speed**[*1]**/Shift From P/OFF**
	Auto Door Unlock	Changes the setting for when the doors automatically unlock.	**Shift To P**[*1]**/IGN OFF/OFF**
	Walk Away Lock	Changes the settings for the auto lock function when you walk away from the vehicle while carrying the keyless remote.	**ON/OFF**[*1]
	Keyless Lock Notification	LOCK/UNLOCK - The exterior lights flash. LOCK (2nd push) - The beeper sounds.	**ON**[*1]**/OFF**
	Security Relock Timer	Changes the time it takes for the doors to relock and the security system to set after you unlock the vehicle without opening any door.	**90sec/60sec/30sec**[*1]
	Auto Folding Door Mirror*	Changes how you can fold the door mirrors.	**Auto Fold With Keyless**[*1]**/ Manual Only**
Default All	—	Cancels customized changes you have made or restores them to their default setting.	**Cancel/OK**

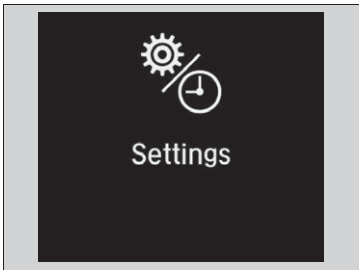
*1:Default Setting

* Not available on all models

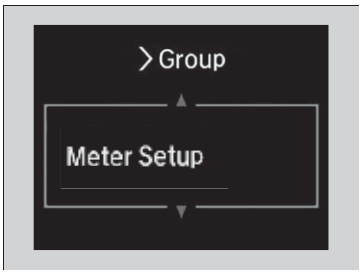
Continued

■ **Example of customization settings**

The steps for changing the **"Trip A" Reset Timing** setting to **When Fully Refueled** are shown below. The default setting for **"Trip A" Reset Timing** is **Manual Reset**.



1. Press the (home) button and roll the left selector wheel to select , then press the left selector wheel.

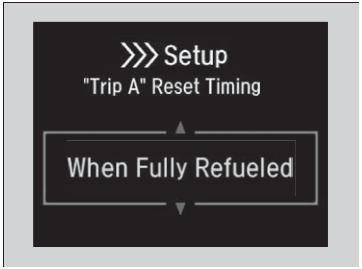


2. Roll the left selector wheel until **Meter Setup** appears on the display.

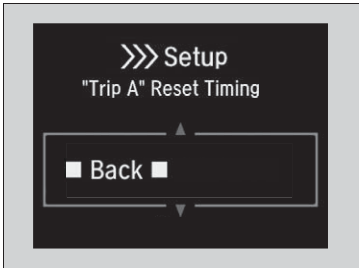
3. Press the left selector wheel.



4. Roll the left selector wheel until **"Trip A" Reset Timing** appears on the display, then press the left selector wheel.
▶ The display switches to the customization setup screen, where you can select **When Fully Refueled**, **When Ignition Is Turned OFF**, **Manual Reset**, or **Back**.



5. Roll the left selector wheel and select **When Fully Refueled**, then press the left selector wheel.
▶ The display will return to the customization menu screen.

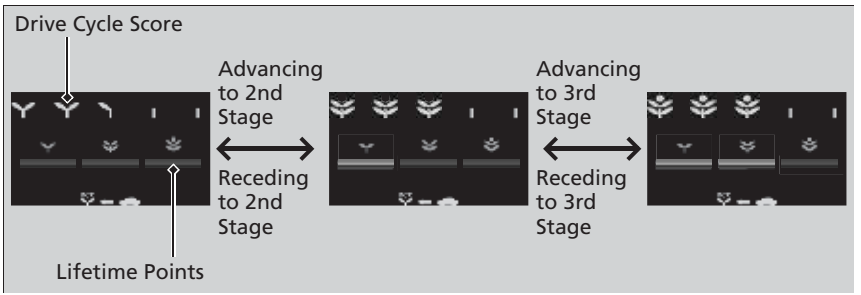


6. Roll the left selector wheel until **Back** appears on the display, then press the left selector wheel.
7. Repeat Step 6 until you return to the normal screen.

Continued

■ Drive Cycle Score/Lifetime Points

Appear for a few seconds when you set the power mode to VEHICLE OFF. Each has three stages. Depending on your driving style, the leaf icon(s) and the gauge increase or decrease to indicate that you have reached a different stage of fuel economy.



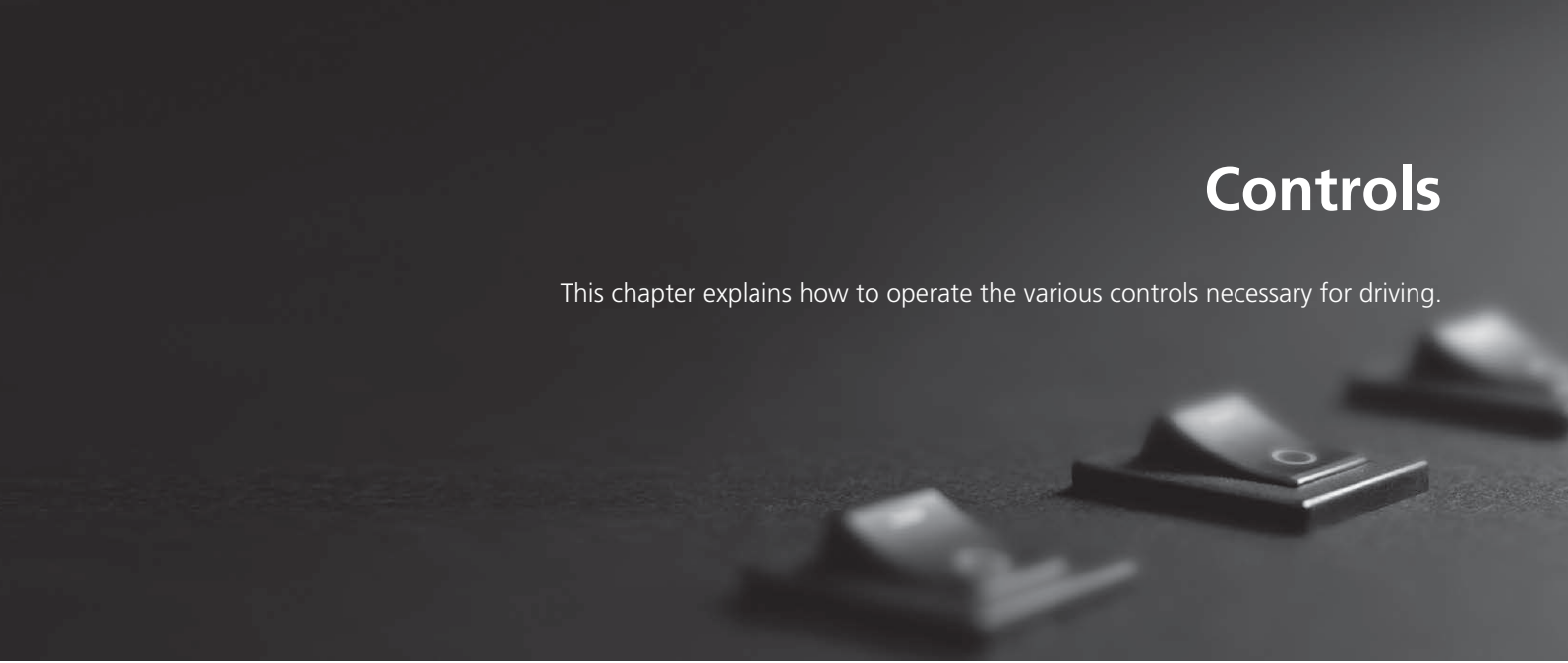
■ Resetting the Drive Cycle Score

1. Make sure the shift position is in P. Turn the power mode to ON.
2. If ECON mode is on, press the **ECON** button to turn it off.
3. Turn the power mode to VEHICLE OFF.
4. Turn the power mode to ON again.
▶ Make sure to complete steps from 4 through 6 within 30 seconds.
5. Depress the brake pedal twice.
6. Press the **ECON** button twice.
▶ The colour of the ambient meter* will turn to monochrome.
7. Turn the power mode to VEHICLE OFF.

 * Not available on all models

Controls

This chapter explains how to operate the various controls necessary for driving.



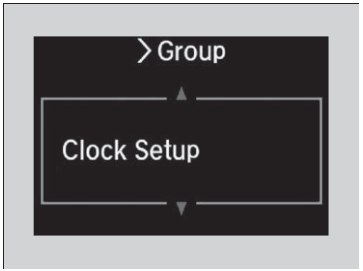
Clock 138
Locking and Unlocking the Doors
Key 140
Locking/Unlocking the Doors from the Outside 142
Locking/Unlocking the Doors from the Inside 149
Childproof Door Locks 150
Auto Door Locking/Unlocking 151
Opening and Closing the Boot 152
Security System
Immobilizer System 154
Security System Alarm 154
Windows 156
Sunroof* 160
Operating the Switches Around the Steering Wheel
POWER Button 162
Turn Signals 165
Light Switches 166
Headlight Adjuster 169
Auto High-Beam 170
Daytime Running Lights 175
Wipers and Washers 176
Brightness Control 178
Rear Demister Button 179
Adjusting the Steering Wheel 180
Mirrors
Interior Rearview Mirror 181
Power Door Mirrors 182
Seats
Front Seats 184
Armrest 192
Interior Convenience Items 193
Climate Control System
Using Automatic Climate Control 207
Automatic Climate Control Sensors ... 210

* Not available on all models

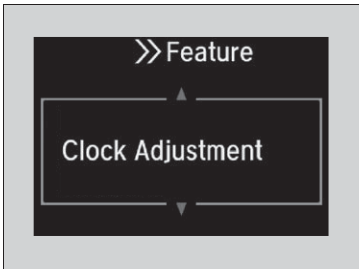
Adjusting the Clock

You can adjust the time in the clock display when the power mode is in ON.

■ Adjusting the Time



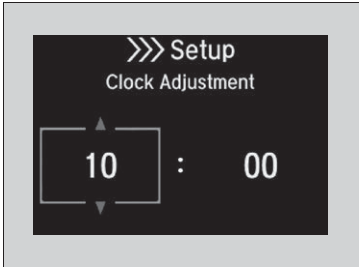
1. Select the **Settings** screen.
   Settings P. 128
2. Roll the left selector wheel to select **Clock Setup**, then push the left selector wheel.



3. Roll the left selector wheel until **Clock Adjustment** appears on the display.
4. Push the left selector wheel.

Adjusting the Clock

You can customize the clock display to show the 12 hour clock or 24 hour clock.
Settings P. 128



5. Roll the left selector wheel to change hour, then push the left selector wheel.
6. Roll the left selector wheel to change minute, then push the left selector wheel.
7. Press the button to return to the normal screen.

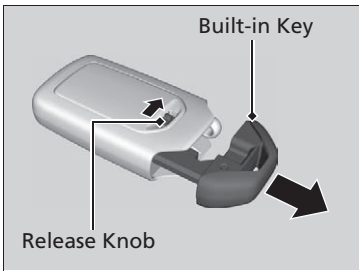
Key

This vehicle comes with the following key:



Use the key to turn on and off the power system, lock and unlock all the doors, and open the boot.

Built-in Key



The built-in key can be used to lock/unlock the doors when the keyless remote battery becomes weak and the power door lock/unlock operation is disabled.
To remove the built-in key, slide the release knob and then pull out the key. To reinstall the built-in key, push the built-in key into the keyless remote until it clicks.

Key

All the keys have an immobilizer system. The immobilizer system helps to protect against vehicle theft.

Immobilizer System P. 154

Follow the advice below to prevent damage to the keys:

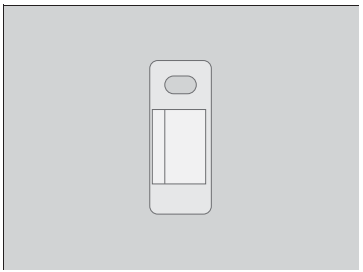
- Do not leave the keys in direct sunlight, or in locations with high temperature or high humidity.
- Do not drop the keys or set heavy objects on them.
- Keep the keys away from liquids, dust, and sand.
- Do not take the keys apart except to replace the battery.

If the circuits in the keys are damaged, the power system may not start, and the remote transmitter may not work.
If the keys do not work properly, have them inspected by a dealer.

You can remotely turn the power system on using the remote engine start.

Remote Engine Start P. 220

Key Number Tag



Contains a number that you will need if you purchase a replacement key.

Low Keyless Remote Signal Strength

The vehicle transmits radio waves to locate the keyless remote to activate the power system, lock and unlock the doors, and open the boot.

In the following cases, activating the power system, locking/unlocking the doors, or opening the boot may be inhibited or operation may be unstable:

- Strong radio waves are being transmitted by nearby equipment.
- You are carrying the keyless remote together with telecommunications equipment, laptop computers, mobile phones, or wireless devices.
- A metallic object is touching or covering the keyless remote.

Key Number Tag

Keep the key number tag separate from the key in a safe place outside of your vehicle.
If you wish to purchase an additional key, contact a dealer.

If you lose your key and you cannot activate the power system, contact a dealer.

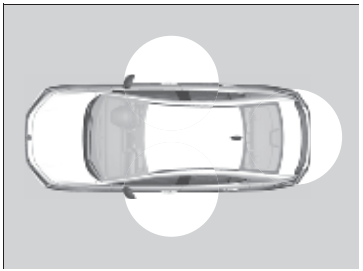
Low Keyless Remote Signal Strength

Communication between the keyless remote and the vehicle consumes the keyless remote's battery. Battery life is about two years, but this varies depending on regularity of use.
The battery is consumed whenever the keyless remote is receiving strong radio waves. Avoid placing it near electrical appliances such as televisions and personal computers.

It is possible to reduce battery consumption by turning off radio wave reception. When you hold down the lock and unlock buttons at the same time for approximately three seconds, the LED will blink twice and radio wave reception will turn off.
If you press any button on the keyless remote once, it will begin receiving radio waves again.

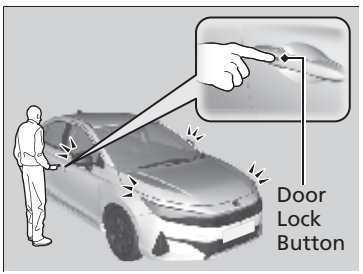
Locking/Unlocking the Doors from the Outside

■ Using the Keyless Access System



When you carry the keyless remote, you can lock/unlock the doors and open the boot.

You can lock/unlock the doors or open the boot within a radius of about 80 cm from the outside door handle.



■ Locking the doors and boot

Press the door lock button on the front door.

▶ Some exterior lights flash; the beeper sounds; all the doors and the boot lock; and the security system sets.

Locking/Unlocking the Doors from the Outside

If the interior light switch is in the door activated position, the interior light comes on when you unlock the doors.
No doors opened: The light fades out after 30 seconds.
Doors relocked with the remote: The light goes off immediately.

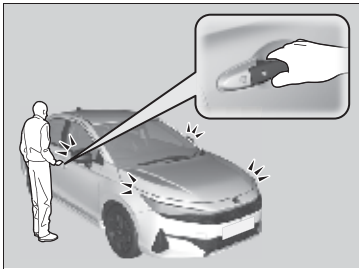
➡ **Interior Lights** P. 193

Using the Keyless Access System

If you do not open a door within 30 seconds of unlocking the vehicle, the doors will automatically relock.

You can lock or unlock doors using the keyless access system only when the power mode is in VEHICLE OFF.

- Do not leave the keyless remote in the vehicle when you get out. Carry it with you.
- Even if you are not carrying the keyless remote, you can lock/unlock the doors while someone else with the remote is within range.
- The door may be unlocked if the door handle is covered with water in heavy rain or in a carwash if the keyless remote is within range.
- If you grip a front door handle wearing gloves, the door sensor may be slow to respond or may not respond by unlocking the doors.

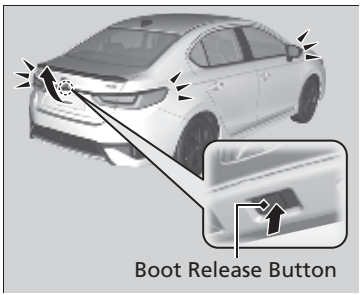


■ Unlocking the doors and boot

Grab the front door handle.

▶ All the doors and the boot unlock.

▶ Some exterior lights flash twice and the beeper sounds twice.



Press the boot release button:

▶ The boot unlocks and opens.

▶ Some exterior lights flash twice and the beeper sounds.

➡ **Using the Boot Release Button** P. 153

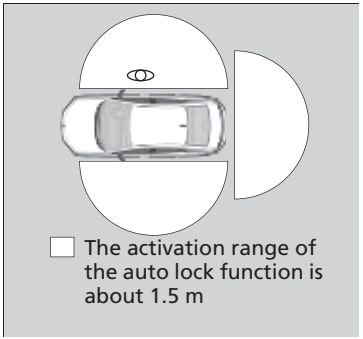
Using the Keyless Access System

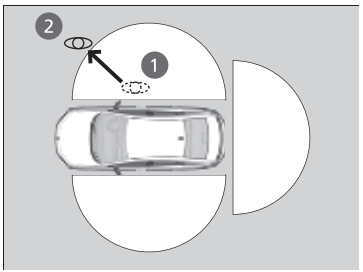
- After locking the door, you have up to 2 seconds during which you can pull the door handle to confirm whether the door is locked. If you need to unlock the door immediately after locking it, wait at least 2 seconds before gripping the handle, otherwise the door will not unlock.
- The door may not open if you pull it immediately after gripping the door handle. Grip the handle again and confirm that the door is unlocked before pulling the handle.
- Even within the 80 cm radius, you may not be able to lock/unlock the doors with the keyless remote if it is above or below the outside handle.
- The keyless remote may not operate if it is too close to the door and door glass.

The beep settings can be customized using the driver information interface.

➡ **Settings** P. 128

Continued





■ Locking the doors and boot (Walk away auto lock)

When you walk away from the vehicle with all doors closed while carrying the keyless remote, the doors will automatically lock.
The auto lock function activates when all doors are closed, and the keyless remote is within about 1.5 m radius of the outside door handle or boot release button.
Exit the vehicle while carrying the keyless remote and close the door(s).

1. While within about 1.5 m radius of the vehicle.
▶ The beeper sounds; the auto lock function will be activated.

2. Carry the keyless remote beyond about 1.5 m from the vehicle and remain outside this range for 2 or more seconds.
▶ Some exterior lights flash; the beeper sounds; all doors will then lock.

Locking the doors and boot (Walk away auto lock)

The auto lock function is set to OFF as the factory default setting. The auto lock function can be set to ON using the driver information interface.
If you set the auto lock function to ON using the driver information interface, only the remote transmitter that was used to unlock the driver's door prior to the setting change can activate auto lock.
Settings P. 128

After the auto lock function has been activated, when you stay within the locking/unlocking operation range, the indicator on the keyless remote will continue to flash until the doors are locked.

When you stay beside the vehicle within the operation range, the doors will automatically lock approximately 30 seconds after the auto lock function activating beeper sounds.

When you open a door after the auto lock function activating beeper sounds, the auto lock function will be cancelled.

Under the following circumstances, the auto lock function will not activate:
- The keyless remote is inside the vehicle.
  ▶The beeper will not sound.
- The keyless remote is taken out of its operational range before all the doors are closed.
  ▶The beeper will sound.

To temporarily deactivate the function:

1. Set the power mode to OFF.

2. Open the driver's door.

3. Using the master door lock switch, operate the lock as follows:
Lock→Unlock→Lock→Unlock.
▶ The beeper sounds, and the function is deactivated.

To restore the function (any step below):

- Set the power mode to ON.
- Lock the vehicle without using the auto lock function.
- With the keyless remote on you, move out of the auto lock function operation range.
- Open any door.

Locking the doors and boot (Walk away auto lock)

The auto lock function does not operate when any of the following conditions are met.

- The keyless remote is inside the vehicle.
- A door or the bonnet is not closed.
- The power mode is set to any mode other than OFF.
- The keyless remote is not located within a radius of about 1.5 m from the vehicle when you get out of the vehicle and close the doors.

Auto lock function operation stop beeper

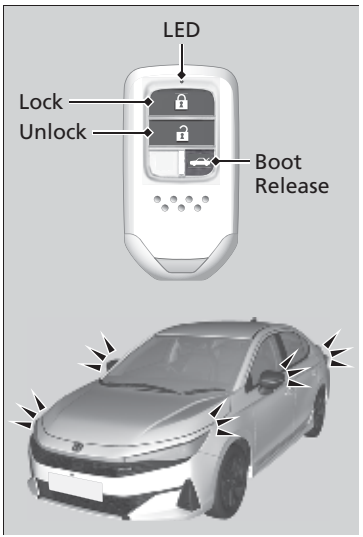
After the auto lock function has been activated, the auto lock operation stop beeper sounds for approximately two seconds in the following cases.

- The keyless remote is put inside the vehicle through a window.
- You are located too close to the vehicle.
- The keyless remote is put inside the boot.

If the warning beeper sounds, check that you are carrying the keyless remote. Then, open/close a door and confirm the auto lock activation beeper sounds once.

Continued

■ Using the Remote Transmitter



■ Locking the doors

Press the lock button.

Once:

▶ Some exterior lights flash, all the doors lock, and the security system sets.

Twice (within five seconds after the first push):

▶ The beeper sounds and verifies the security system is set.

■ Unlocking the doors

Press the unlock button.

▶ Some exterior lights flash twice, and all doors unlock.

Using the Remote Transmitter

If you do not open a door within 30 seconds of unlocking the vehicle with the remote transmitter, the doors will automatically relock.
You can change the relock timer setting.
Settings P. 128

You can lock or unlock doors using the remote transmitter only when the power mode is in VEHICLE OFF.

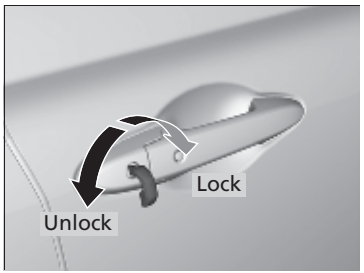
The remote transmitter uses low-power signals, so the operating range may vary depending on the surroundings.

The remote will not lock the vehicle when a door is open.

If the distance at which the remote transmitter works varies, the battery is probably low. Replace the button battery as soon as possible when this occurs. If the LED does not come on when you press a button, the battery is dead.
Replacing the Remote Battery P. 359

Locking/Unlocking the Doors Using a Key

If the lock or unlock button of the keyless remote does not work, use the key instead.



Fully insert the key and turn it.

Locking/Unlocking the Doors Using a Key

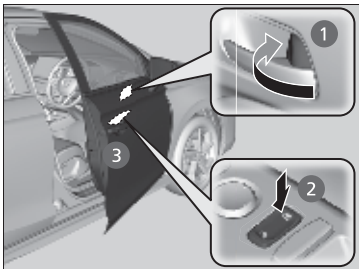
When you lock/unlock the driver's door with the key, all the other doors lock/unlock at the same time.

If you unlock a door with the built-in key while the security system is activated, the alarm will sound.

Continued

■ Locking a Door Without Using a Key

If you do not have the key on you, or if for some reason you cannot lock a door using the key, you can lock the door without it.



■ Locking the driver's door

Push the lock tab forward ❶ or push the master door lock switch in the lock direction ❷, then pull and hold the outside door handle ❸. Close the door, then release the handle.

■ Locking the passenger's doors

Push the lock tab forward and close the door.

■ Lockout prevention system

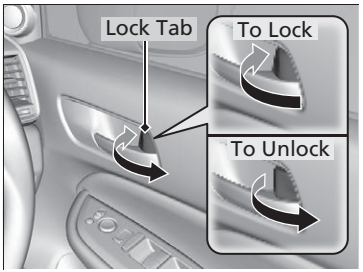
The doors cannot be locked when the keyless remote is inside the vehicle.

Locking a Door Without Using a Key

When you lock the driver's door, all the other doors lock at the same time.
Before locking a door, make sure that the key is not inside the vehicle.

Locking/Unlocking the Doors from the Inside

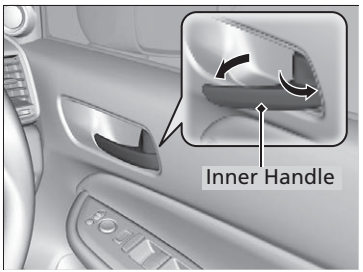
■ Using the Lock Tab



■ Locking a door
Push the lock tab forward.

■ Unlocking a door
Pull the lock tab rearward.

■ Unlocking Using the Driver's Door Inner Handle



Pull the driver's door inner handle.
▶ The door unlocks and opens in one motion.

Using the Lock Tab

When you lock/unlock the door using the lock tab on the driver's door, all the other doors lock/unlock at the same time.

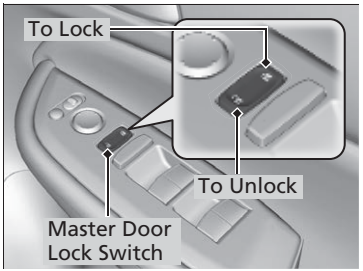
Unlocking Using the Driver's Door Inner Handle

The driver's door inner handle are designed to allow the driver to open the door in one motion. However, this feature requires that the driver never pull the door inner handle while the vehicle is in motion.

Children should always ride in a rear seat where childproof door locks are provided.
➡ **Childproof Door Locks** P. 150

Continued

■ Using the Master Door Lock Switch



Press the master door lock switch in as shown to lock or unlock all doors.

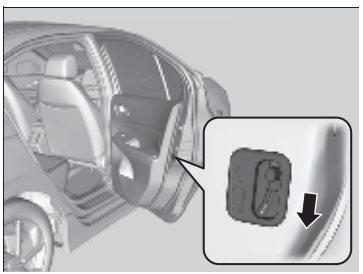
Using the Master Door Lock Switch

When you lock/unlock the driver's door using the master door lock switch, all the other doors lock/unlock at the same time.

Childproof Door Locks

The childproof door locks prevent the rear doors from being opened from the inside regardless of the position of the lock tab.

■ Setting the Childproof Door Locks



Slide the lever in the rear door to the lock position, and close the door.

■ When opening the door

Open the door using the outside door handle.

Childproof Door Locks

To open the door from the inside when the childproof door lock is on, put the lock tab in the unlock position, lower the rear window, put your hand out of the window, and pull the outside door handle.

Auto Door Locking/Unlocking

Your vehicle locks or unlocks all doors automatically when a certain condition is met.

■ Auto Door Locking

■ Drive lock mode

All doors lock when the vehicle's speed reaches about 15 km/h.

■ Auto Door Unlocking

■ Park unlock mode

All doors unlock when the transmission is put into P with the brake pedal depressed.

Auto Door Locking/Unlocking

You can turn off or change to another auto door locking/unlocking setting using the driver information interface.

Settings P. 128

Precautions for Opening/Closing the Boot

■ Opening the boot

Open the boot all the way.

▶ If it is not fully opened, the boot lid may begin to close under its own weight.

■ Closing the boot

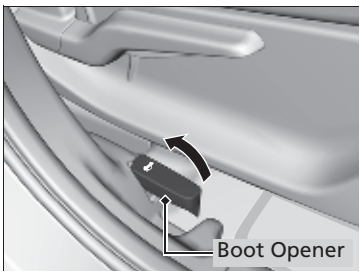
Keep the boot lid closed while driving to:

▶ Avoid possible damage.

▶ Prevent exhaust gas from leaking into the vehicle.

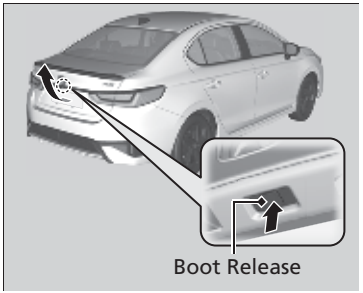
Exhaust Gas Hazard P. 93

Using the Boot Opener



Pulling the boot opener on the outside of the driver's seat unlocks and opens the boot.

Using the Boot Release Button



Push up the release button on the boot lid after the doors are unlocked.

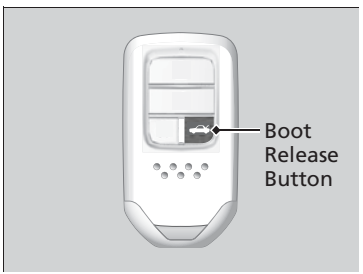
Even if the boot is locked, you can open the boot if you carry the keyless remote.

▶ Some exterior lights flash twice and the beeper sounds once.

Using the Boot Release Button

- If you forget the remote inside, the beeper will sound and the boot will not close.
- A person who is not carrying the keyless remote can unlock the boot if a person who is carrying it is within range.
- If the beeper sounds after you close the boot, move the keyless remote away from the boot and close again.
- The keyless remote may not operate if it is too close to the boot.

Using the Remote Transmitter



Press the boot release button for approximately one second to unlock and open the boot.

Using the Remote Transmitter

If the driver's door is locked, the boot will automatically lock when you close it. Otherwise, you will have to lock it manually.

Immobilizer System

This system prevents a key that has not been preregistered from starting the power system.

Pay attention to the following when pressing the **POWER** button:
- Do not allow objects that emit strong radio waves near the **POWER** button.
- Make sure the key is not covered by or touching a metal object.
- Do not bring a key from another vehicle's immobilizer system near the **POWER** button.
- Do not put the key near magnetic items. Electronic devices, such as televisions and audio systems, emit strong magnetic fields. Note that even a key chain can become magnetic.

Immobilizer System

NOTICE

Leaving the key in the vehicle can result in theft or accidental movement of the vehicle. Always take the key with you whenever you leave the vehicle unattended.

Do not alter the system or add other devices to it. Doing so may damage the system and make your vehicle inoperable.

If the system repeatedly does not recognise the coding of your key, contact a dealer. If you have lost your key and cannot start your vehicle, contact a dealer.

Security System Alarm

The security system alarm activates when the boot, bonnet, or doors are forcibly opened. The alarm does not activate if the boot or doors are opened with the remote transmitter or keyless access system.

■ When the security system alarm activates

The horn sounds intermittently, and some exterior lights flash.

Security System Alarm

Do not alter the system or add other devices to it. Doing so may damage the system and make your vehicle inoperable.

The security system alarm will continue for approximately 5 minutes before the security system deactivates.
The system will go through ten 30-second cycles, during which the horn will sound and an emergency indicator will flash.
Depending on circumstances, the security system may continue operating for more than 5 minutes.

■ To deactivate the security system alarm

Unlock the vehicle using the remote transmitter or keyless access system, or set the power mode to ON. The system, along with the horn and flashing lights, is deactivated.

■ Setting the security system alarm

The security system alarm automatically sets when the following conditions have been met:

- The power mode is set to VEHICLE OFF.
- The bonnet is closed.
- All doors are locked from outside with the key, remote transmitter, or keyless access system.

■ When the security system alarm sets

The security system alarm indicator in the instrument panel blinks and the blinking interval changes after about 15 seconds.

■ To cancel the security system alarm

The security system alarm is cancelled when the vehicle is unlocked using the remote transmitter or keyless access system, or when the power mode is set to ON. The security system alarm indicator goes off at the same time.

Security System Alarm

Do not set the security system alarm when someone is in the vehicle or a window is open. The system can accidentally activate when:

- Unlocking the door with the lock tab.
- Opening the boot with the boot opener.
- Opening the bonnet with the bonnet release.

If the 12-volt battery goes dead after you have set the security system alarm, the security alarm may sound once the 12-volt battery is recharged or replaced. If this occurs, deactivate the security system alarm by unlocking a door using the remote transmitter or keyless access system.

If you unlock a door with the built-in key while the security system is activated, the alarm will sound.

Opening/Closing the Power Windows

The power windows can be opened and closed when the power mode is in ON, using the switches on the doors.

The driver's side switches can be used to open and close all of the windows. The power window lock button on the driver side must be switched off to open and close the windows from anywhere other than the driver's seat.

When the power window lock button is pushed in, the indicator comes on and you can only operate the driver's window. Turn the power window lock button on if a child is in the vehicle.

Opening/Closing the Power Windows

⚠WARNING

Closing a power window on someone's hands or fingers can cause serious injury.

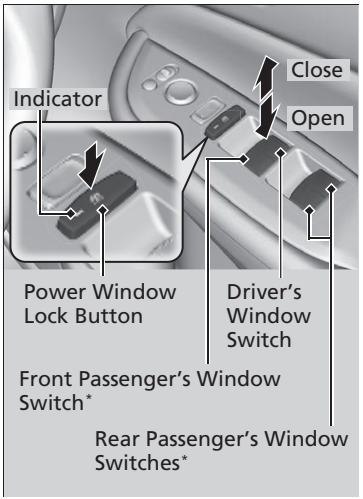
Make sure your passengers are away from the windows before closing them.

WARNING: Always take the ignition key with you whenever you leave the vehicle alone or with other occupants.

Models with power window auto-open/close function on all windows

The power windows can be operated for up to 10 minutes after you set the power mode to VEHICLE OFF. Closing driver's door cancels this function.

Opening/Closing the Windows with Auto-Open/Close Function



■ Manual operation

To open: Push the switch down lightly, and hold it until the desired position is reached.
To close: Pull the switch up lightly, and hold it until the desired position is reached.

■ Automatic operation

To open: Push the switch down firmly.
To close: Pull the switch up firmly.

The window opens or closes completely. To stop the window at any time, push or pull the switch briefly.

Opening/Closing the Power Windows

Auto Reverse

If a power window senses resistance when closing automatically, it will stop closing and reverse direction.

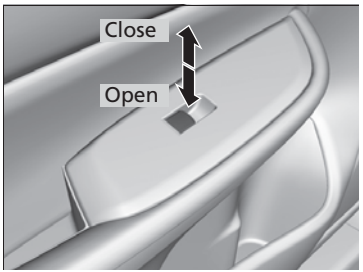
The driver's window auto reverse function is disabled when you continuously pull up the switch.

The auto reverse function stops sensing when the window is almost closed to ensure that it fully closes.

* Not available on all models

Continued

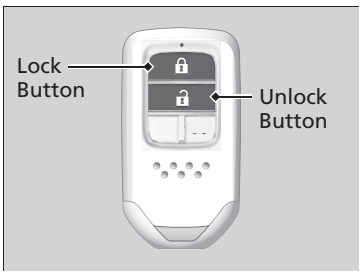
Opening/Closing Windows without Auto-Open/Close Function*



To open: Push the switch down.
To close: Pull the switch up.

Release the switch when the window reaches the desired position.

Opening/Closing the Windows with the Remote*



To open: Press the unlock button, and then within 10 seconds, press it again and hold it.
To close: Press the lock button, and then within 10 seconds, press it again and hold it.

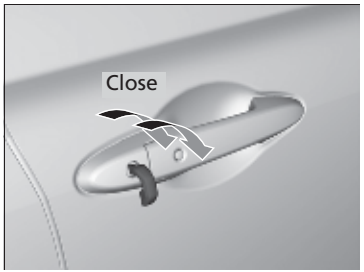
If the windows stop midway, repeat the procedure.

Opening/Closing the Windows with the Remote*

If you open/close the windows with the remote, the sunroof will open/close automatically along with them.

 * Not available on all models

Closing the Windows with the Key*



Lock the driver's door with the key. Within 10 seconds of returning the key to the central position, turn the key in the lock direction and hold it there.

Release the key to stop the windows at the desired position. If you want further adjustment, repeat the same operation.

Closing the Windows with the Key*

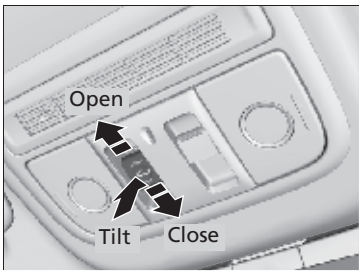
If you close the windows with the key, the sunroof will close automatically along with them.

* Not available on all models

Opening/Closing the Sunroof

You can operate the sunroof when the power mode is in ON. Use the switch in the front of the ceiling to open and close the sunroof.

■ Using the Sunroof Switch



■ Automatic operation
To open: Pull the switch back firmly.
To close: Push the switch forward firmly.

The sunroof will automatically open or close all the way. To stop the sunroof midway, touch the switch briefly.

■ Manual operation
To open: Pull the switch back lightly, and hold it until the desired position is reached.
To close: Push the switch forward lightly, and hold it until the desired position is reached.

■ Tilting the sunroof up
To tilt: Push on the centre of the sunroof switch.
To close: Push the switch forward firmly, then release.

Opening/Closing the Sunroof

⚠WARNING

Opening or closing the sunroof on someone's hands or fingers can cause serious injury.

Make sure all hands and fingers are clear of the sunroof before opening or closing it.

WARNING: Always take the ignition key with you whenever you leave the vehicle alone or with other occupants.

NOTICE
Opening the sunroof in below freezing temperature or when it is covered with snow or ice can damage the sunroof panel or motor.

Models with power window auto-open/close function on all windows
The sunroof can be operated for up to 10 minutes after you set the power mode to VEHICLE OFF. Closing driver's door cancels this function.

When resistance is detected, the auto reverse function causes the sunroof to change directions, then stop. Auto reverse stops sensing when the sunroof is almost closed to ensure that it fully closes.

 * Not available on all models

Sunroof*

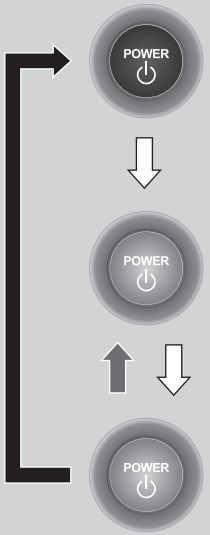
You can use the remote transmitter or the key to operate the sunroof.

Opening/Closing the Windows with the Remote* P. 158
Closing the Windows with the Key* P. 159

* Not available on all models

POWER Button

Changing the Power Mode



VEHICLE OFF (LOCK)
The button is off.
The steering wheel is locked.
The power to all electrical components is turned off.

ACCESSORY
The button blinks (in red).
Operate the audio system and other accessories in this position.

ON
The button blinks (in red).
All electrical components can be used.

Without pressing the brake pedal

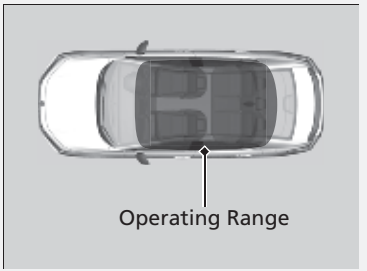
Press the button.

Press the button without the transmission in P.

Press the button with the transmission in P.

POWER Button

POWER Button Operating Range
You can start the power system when the keyless remote is inside the vehicle.



If the battery of the keyless remote is getting low, the power system may not start when you push the **POWER** button. If the power system does not start, refer to the following link.

If the Keyless Remote Battery is Weak
P. 394

The power system may also start if the keyless remote is close to the door or window, even if it is outside the vehicle.

ON mode:
The **POWER** button is on (in red), if power system is on.

Automatic Power Off

If you leave the vehicle for 30 to 60 minutes with the transmission in P and the power mode in ACCESSORY, the vehicle automatically goes into the mode similar to VEHICLE OFF (LOCK) to avoid draining the 12-volt battery.

When in this mode:
The steering wheel does not lock. You cannot lock or unlock doors with the remote transmitter or the keyless access system.

Press the **POWER** button twice to switch the mode to VEHICLE OFF (LOCK).

Power Mode Reminder

If you open the driver's door when the power mode is set to ACCESSORY, a warning beep sounds.

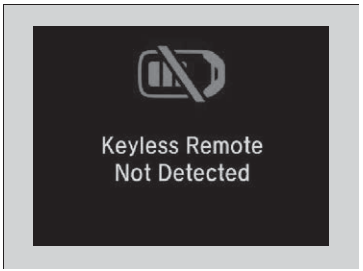
POWER Button

If the power mode does not change from VEHICLE OFF to ACCESSORY, press the **POWER** button while moving the steering wheel left and right. The steering wheel will unlock, allowing the mode to change.

Do not leave the power mode in ACCESSORY or ON when you get out.

Continued

■ Keyless Remote Reminder



When the power mode is set to any mode other than OFF and you remove the keyless remote from the vehicle and shut the door, an alarm will sound. If the alarm continues to sound, place the keyless remote in another location.

■ When the power mode is in ACCESSORY

The alarm will sound from outside the vehicle.

■ When the power mode is in ON

An alarm will sound both inside and outside the vehicle. In addition, a warning indicator will appear on the instrument panel.

Keyless Remote Reminder

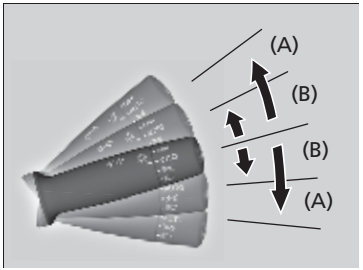
When the keyless remote is within the system's operational range, and the driver's door is closed, the warning function cancels.

If the keyless remote is taken out of the vehicle after the power system has been turned on, you can no longer change the power mode or restart the power system. Always make sure that the remote is in your vehicle when you operate the **POWER** button.

Removing the keyless remote from the vehicle through a window does not activate the warning buzzer.

Do not put the keyless remote on the dashboard or in the glove box. It may cause the warning buzzer to sound. Under some other conditions that can prevent the vehicle from locating the remote, the warning buzzer may also sound even if the remote is within the system's operational range.

Turn Signals



The turn signals can be used when the power mode is in ON.

■ **(A): Turn signal**

Push the lever up or down based on the direction you want to turn, and the turn signal will blink.

■ **(B): One-touch turn signal**

When you lightly push the lever up or down and release it, the turn signal will blink 3 times.

▶ If you lightly push the lever in the opposite direction while it is blinking, the blinking will stop.

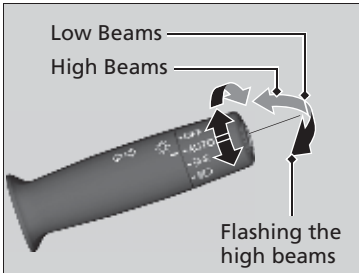
Turn Signals

The turn signal indicator on the instrument panel will blink when the external turn signal blinks.

Indicators P. 96

Light Switches

■ Manual Operation



Turns on position, rear side marker, tail, and rear licence plate lights

Turns on headlights, position, rear side marker, tail, and rear licence plate lights

Rotating the light switch turns the lights on and off, regardless of the power mode setting.

■ High beams

Push the lever forward until you hear a click.

■ Low beams

When in high beams, pull the lever back to return to low beams.

■ Flashing the high beams

Pull the lever back, and release it.

■ Lights off

Turn the lever to **OFF** either when:

- The transmission is in P.
- The parking brake is applied.

To turn the lights on again, turn the lever to OFF to cancel the lights off mode. Even if you do not cancel the lights off mode, the lights come on automatically when:

- The transmission is taken out of P and the parking brake is released.
- The vehicle starts to move.

Light Switches

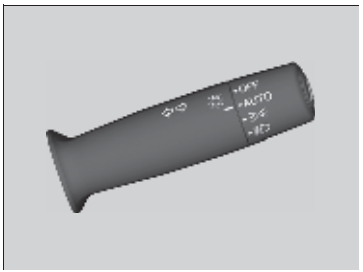
If you leave the power mode in VEHICLE OFF while the lights are on, a chime sounds when the driver's door is opened.

When the lights are on, the lights on indicator in the instrument panel will be on.

Indicators P. 96

Do not leave the lights on when the power system is off because it will cause the 12-volt battery to discharge.

Automatic Operation (automatic lighting control)



Automatic lighting control can be used when the power mode is in ON.

When the light switch is in **AUTO**, the headlights and other exterior lights will switch on and off automatically depending on the ambient brightness.

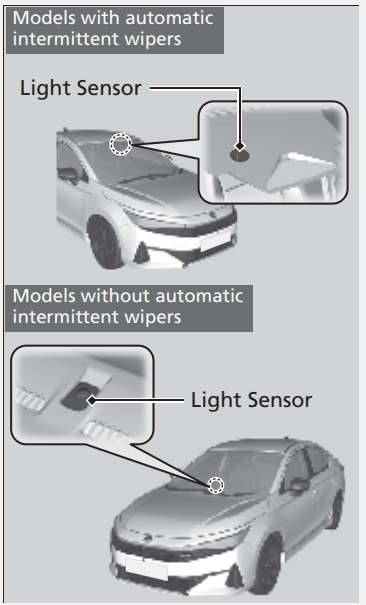
The headlights come on when you unlock a door in dark areas with the headlight switch in **AUTO**.

▶ Once you lock the door, the headlights will go off.

Automatic Operation (automatic lighting control)

We recommend that you turn on the lights manually when driving at night, in a dense fog, or in dark areas such as long tunnels or parking facilities.

The light sensor is in the location shown below. Do not cover this light sensor with anything; otherwise, the automatic lighting system may not work properly.



Continued

■ Headlight Integration with Wipers

The headlights automatically come on when the wipers are used several times within a certain number of intervals with the headlight switch in **AUTO**.
The headlights automatically go off a few minutes later if the wipers are stopped.

Headlight Integration with Wipers

This feature activates while the headlights are off in **AUTO**.
The instrument panel brightness does not change when the headlights come on.

At dark ambient light levels, the automatic lighting control feature turns on the headlights, regardless of the number of wiper sweeps.

You can turn the headlight integration with wipers function on and off.
Settings P. 128

■ Automatic Lighting Off Feature

The headlights, all other exterior lights, and the instrument panel lights turn off 15 seconds after you set the power mode to VEHICLE OFF, take the remote with you, and close the driver's door.

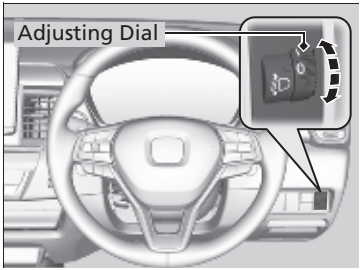
If you set the power mode to VEHICLE OFF with the headlight switch on, but do not open the door, the lights turn off after 10 minutes (3 minutes, if the switch is in the **AUTO** position).

The lights turn on again when you unlock or open the driver's door. If you unlock the door, but do not open it within 15 seconds, the lights go off. If you open the driver's door, you will hear a reminder chime alerting you that the lights are on.

Automatic Lighting Off Feature

You can change the headlight auto off timer setting.
Settings P. 128

Headlight Adjuster



You can adjust the vertical angle of the low beam headlights when the position lights are on.

Turn the adjustment dial to select an appropriate angle for the headlights.

The larger dial number indicates the lower angle.

■ To select the adjustment dial position

Refer to the below table for the appropriate dial position for your vehicle's riding and loading conditions.

Condition	Dial position
A driver A driver and a front passenger	0
Five persons in the front and rear seats	1
Five persons in the front and rear seats and luggage in the boot, within the limits of maximum permissible axle weight and maximum permissible vehicle weight	2
A driver and luggage in the boot, within the limits of maximum permissible axle weight and maximum permissible vehicle weight	3

Auto High-Beam

The front wide view camera detects the light sources ahead of the vehicle such as the lights of a preceding or oncoming vehicle, or street lights. When you are driving at night, the system automatically switches the headlights between low beam and high beam depending on the situation.

Auto High-Beam

The auto high-beam system does not always operate in every situation. This system is just for assisting the driver. Always observe your surroundings and manually switch the headlights between high beam and low beam if necessary.

The range and the distance at which the camera can recognise light sources varies depending on conditions surrounding your vehicle.

Regarding the handling of the camera mounted to the inside of the windscreen, refer to the following.

Front Wide View Camera P. 299

For the auto high-beam to work properly:

- Do not place an object that reflects light on the dashboard.
- Keep the windscreen around the camera clean. When cleaning the windscreen, be careful not to apply the windscreen cleanser to the camera lens.
- Do not attach an object, sticker, or film to the area around the camera.
- Do not touch the camera lens.

If the camera receives a strong impact, or repairing of the area near the camera is required, consult a dealer.

Auto High-Beam

Indian, Bhutanese, Sri Lankan and Nepalese models

If you move the lever from the low beam position, the auto high-beam indicator will turn off.

All models

How to turn off the Auto High-Beam System

You can change the auto high-beam system on and off.

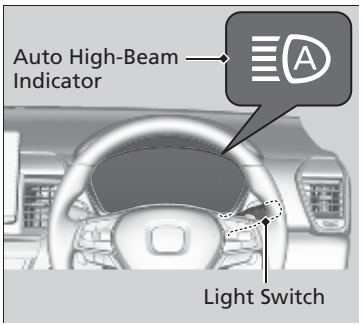
Settings P. 128

Continued

■ How to Use the Auto High-Beam

■ Activating the system

When all of the following conditions have been met, the auto high-beam indicator comes on and automatically switches between the high beam and low beam, depending on the situation.



- The power mode is in ON.
- The light switch is in **AUTO**.
- The lever is in the low beam position.
- The headlights have been automatically activated.
- It is dark outside the vehicle.

If the auto high-beam indicator does not come on even when all the conditions have been met, carry out either of the procedures below and the indicator will come on.

- Pull the lever towards you and release it.
- Turn the light switch to ≡D then turn the light switch to **AUTO**.

Indian, Bhutanese, Sri Lankan and Nepalese models

- Drive the vehicle for a while.

How to Use the Auto High-Beam

In the following cases, the auto high-beam system may not switch the headlights properly or the switching timing may be changed. If the automatic switching operation does not fit your driving habits, please switch the headlights manually.

- The brightness of the lights from a preceding or oncoming vehicle is intense or poor.
- Visibility is poor due to the weather (rain, snow, fog, windscreen frost, etc.).
- Surrounding light sources like street lights, electric billboards, and traffic lights are illuminating the road ahead.
- The brightness level of the road ahead constantly changes.
- The road is bumpy or has many curves.
- A vehicle suddenly appears in front of you, or a vehicle in front of you is not in the preceding or oncoming direction.
- Your vehicle is tilted with a heavy load in the rear.
- A traffic sign, mirror, or other reflective object ahead is reflecting strong light towards the vehicle.
- The oncoming vehicle frequently disappears under roadside trees or behind median barriers.
- The preceding or oncoming vehicle is a motorcycle, bicycle, mobility scooter, or other small vehicle.

The auto high-beam system keeps the headlight low beam on when:

- Windscreen wipers are operating at a high speed.
- The camera has detected a dense fog.

■ Automatic switching between high-beam and low-beam

When the auto-high beam indicator comes on, the headlights switch between high beam and low beam based on the following conditions.

High beam		Low beam
All of the following conditions must be met before the high beams turn on. • Your vehicle speed is 30 km/h*1/ 40 km/h*2 or more. • There are no preceding or oncoming vehicles with headlights or taillights turned on. • There are few street lights on the road ahead.		One of the following conditions must be met before the low beams turn on. • Your vehicle speed is 24 km/h or less. • There is a preceding or oncoming vehicle with headlights or taillights turned on. • There are many street lights on the road ahead.

*1: Indian, Bhutanese, Sri Lankan and Nepalese models
*2: Except Indian, Bhutanese, Sri Lankan and Nepalese models

Continued

■ Manual switching between high-beam and low-beam

Except Indian, Bhutanese, Sri Lankan and Nepalese models

If you want to manually switch the headlights between high beam and low beam, follow either of the procedures below. Note that when you do this, the auto high-beam indicator will turn off and the auto high-beam will be deactivated.

Using the lever:

Pull the lever towards you for flashing the high beams and then release it.

▶ To reactivate the auto high-beam, follow either of the procedures below and the auto high-beam indicator will come on.

- Pull the lever towards you and release it.
- Turn the light switch to  and then to **AUTO** when the lever is in the low beam position.

Using the light switch:

Turn the light switch to  .

▶ To reactivate the auto high-beam, turn the light switch to **AUTO** when the lever is in the low beam position, and the auto high-beam indicator will come on.

Indian, Bhutanese, Sri Lankan and Nepalese models

If you want to manually switch the headlights between high beam and low beam, follow the procedure below. Note that when you do this, the auto high-beam indicator will turn off and the auto high-beam will be deactivated.

Using the light switch:

Turn the light switch to  .

▶ To reactivate the auto high-beam, turn the light switch to **AUTO** when the lever is in the low beam position, and the auto high-beam indicator will come on.

Daytime Running Lights

The position/daytime running lights come on when the following conditions have been met:

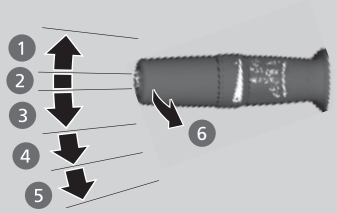
- The power mode is in ON.
- The headlight switch is in **AUTO**.

Setting the power mode to VEHICLE OFF will turn off the daytime running lights.

The daytime running lights are off once the headlight switch is turned on, or when the head light switch is in **AUTO** and it is getting darker outside.

Wipers and Washers

■ Windscreen Wipers/Washers



1. **MIST**
2. **OFF**
3. **INT**[*1]**/AUTO**[*2]
4. **LO**: Low speed wipe
5. **HI**: High speed wipe
6. Washer

The windscreen wipers and washers can be used when the power mode is in ON.

■ MIST

The wipers run at high speed until you release the lever.

■ Wiper switch (OFF, INT[*1]/AUTO[*2], LO, HI)

Move the lever up or down to change the wiper settings.

■ Washer

Sprays while you pull the lever towards you. When you release the lever for more than one second, the spray stops, the wipers sweep two or three more times to clear the windscreen, and then stop.

*1: Models with manual intermittent operation
*2: Models with automatic intermittent operation

Wipers and Washers

NOTICE

Do not use the wipers when the windscreen is dry. The windscreen will get scratched, or the rubber blades will get damaged.

NOTICE

Turn the washers off if no washer fluid comes out. The pump may get damaged.

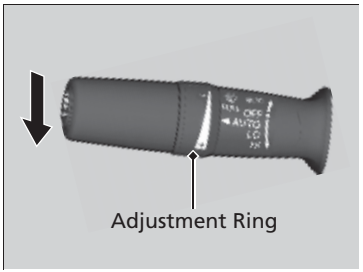
The wiper motor may stop motor operation temporarily to prevent an overload. Wiper operation will return to normal within a few minutes.

NOTICE

In cold weather, the blades may freeze to the windscreen.
Operating the wipers in this condition may damage the wipers. Use the demister to warm the windscreen, then turn the wipers on.

If the wipers stop operating due to any obstacle such as the build-up of snow, park the vehicle in a safe place.
Rotate the wiper switch to **OFF**, set the power mode to ACCESSORY or VEHICLE OFF, then remove the obstacle.

■ Automatic Intermittent Wipers*



When you push the lever down to **AUTO**, the windscreen wipers sweep once, and go into the automatic mode.

The wipers operate intermittently, at low speed, or at high speed and stop in accordance with the amount of rainfall the rainfall sensor detects.

■ AUTO sensitivity adjustment

When the wiper function is set to **AUTO**, you can adjust the sensitivity of the rainfall sensor (using the adjustment ring) so that wipers will operate in accordance with your preference.

Sensor sensitivity

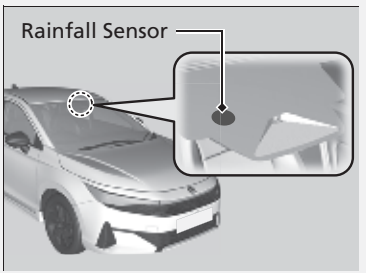


Low sensitivity

High sensitivity

Automatic Intermittent Wipers*

The rainfall sensor is in the location shown below.



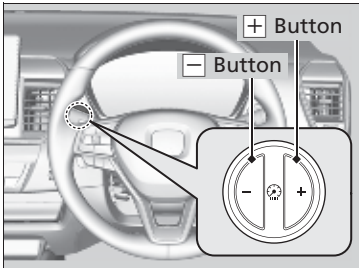
NOTICE

AUTO should always be turned **OFF** before the following situations in order to prevent severe damage to the wiper system:

- Cleaning the windscreen
- Driving through a car wash
- No rain present

* Not available on all models

Brightness Control



When the power mode is in ON, you can use the + or − button to adjust instrument panel brightness.

Brighten: Press the + button.

Dim: Press the − button.

You will hear a beep when the brightness reaches minimum or maximum. Several seconds after you have adjusted the brightness, you will be returned to the previous screen.



■ Brightness level indicator

The brightness level is shown on the display while you are adjusting it.

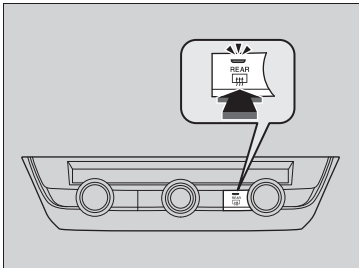
Brightness Control

The brightness of the instrument panel will be reduced when the following conditions:

- The power mode is in ON.
- The light switch is in any position other than off and it is dark outside.

The brightness can be set differently for when the exterior lights are on, and when they are off.

Rear Demister Button



Press the rear demister button to demist the rear window when the power mode is in ON.

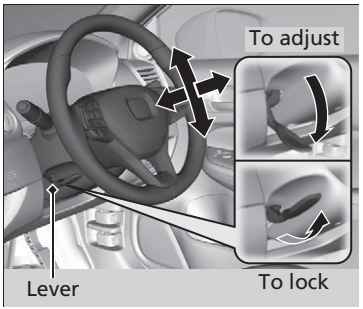
The rear demister automatically switches off after 10-30 minutes depending on the outside temperature.
However, if the outside temperature is 0°C or below, it does not automatically switch off.

Rear Demister Button

This system consumes a lot of power, so turn it off when the window has been demisted. Also, do not use the system for a long time while the power system is stopped. This may weaken the 12-volt battery, making it difficult to turn the power system on.

Adjusting the Steering Wheel

The steering wheel height and distance from your body can be adjusted so that you can comfortably grip the steering wheel in an appropriate driving posture.



1. While the vehicle is stopped, push the steering wheel adjustment lever down.
▶ The steering wheel adjustment lever is under the steering column.

2. Move the steering wheel up or down, and in or out.
▶ Make sure you can see the instrument panel gauges and indicators.

3. Pull the steering wheel adjustment lever up to lock the steering wheel in position.
▶ After adjusting the position, make sure you have securely locked the steering wheel in place by trying to move it up, down, in, and out.

Adjusting the Steering Wheel

⚠WARNING

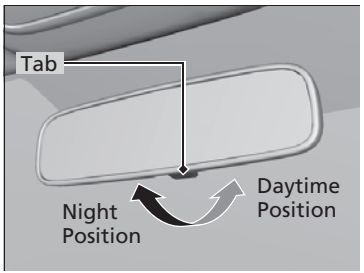
Adjusting the steering wheel position while driving may cause you to lose control of the vehicle and be seriously injured in a crash.

Adjust the steering wheel only when the vehicle is stopped.

Interior Rearview Mirror

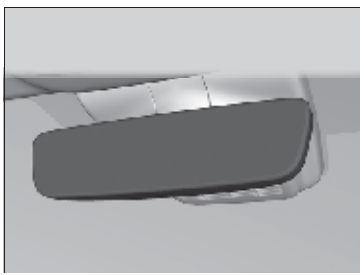
Adjust the angle of the rearview mirror when you are sitting in the correct driving position.

Rearview Mirror with Day and Night Positions*



Flip the tab to switch the position.
The night position will help to reduce the glare from headlights behind you when driving after dark.

Automatic Dimming Rearview Mirror*



When you are driving after dark, the automatic dimming rearview mirror reduces the glare from headlights behind you, based on inputs from the mirror sensor. This feature is always active.

Mirrors

Keep the inside and outside mirrors clean and adjusted for best visibility.

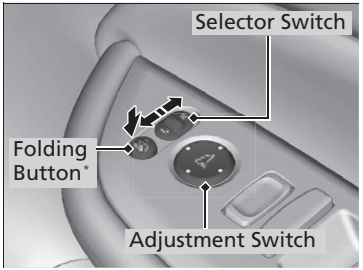
Adjust the mirrors before you start driving.
Front Seats P. 184

Automatic Dimming Rearview Mirror*

The auto dimming function cancels when the transmission is in R.

* Not available on all models

Power Door Mirrors



You can adjust the door mirrors when the power mode is in ON.

■ **Mirror position adjustment**

L/R selector switch: Select the left or right mirror. After adjusting the mirror, return the switch to the centre position.

Mirror position adjustment switch: Press the switch left, right, up, or down to move the mirror.

■ **Folding door mirrors***

Press the folding button to fold in and out the door mirrors.

 * Not available on all models

■ Automatic Folding Door Mirror Function*

■ Folding in the door mirrors

Press the lock button on the remote transmitter, or press the door lock button on the front door.

▶ The mirrors start folding in automatically.

■ Folding out the door mirrors

Unlock the driver's door using the remote transmitter or keyless access system.

▶ The mirrors start folding out automatically.

Automatic Folding Door Mirror Function*

You cannot turn the automatic folding out automatically if they have been folded in using the folding button.

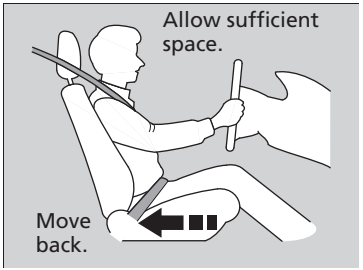
You can turn the automatic folding door mirror function on and off.

Settings P. 128

Door mirrors will not fold automatically when locking from inside the vehicle using lock tab or master door lock switch.

* Not available on all models

Front Seats



Adjust the driver's seat as far back as possible while allowing you to maintain full control of the vehicle. You should be able to sit upright, well back in the seat and be able to adequately press the pedals without leaning forward, and grip the steering wheel comfortably. The passenger's seat should be adjusted in a similar manner so that it is as far back from the front airbag in the dashboard as possible.

Seats

Always make seat adjustments before driving.

Front Seats

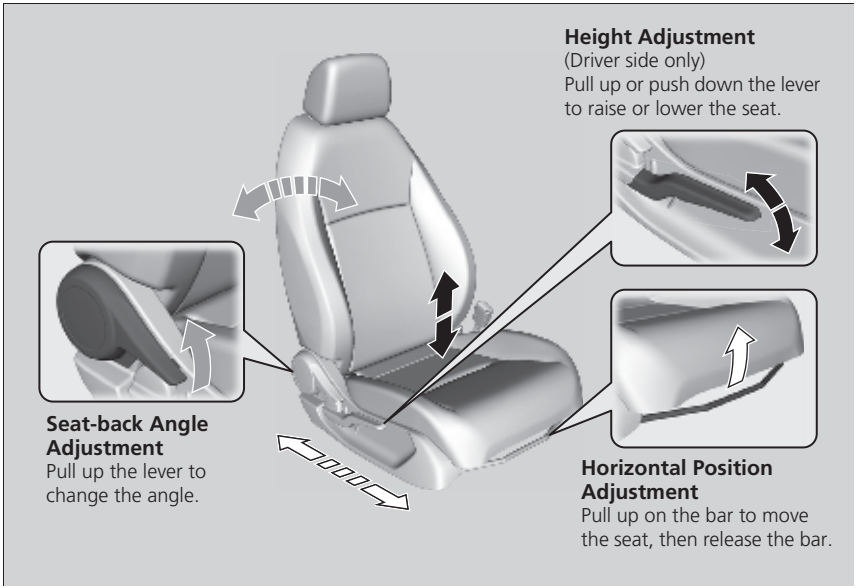
⚠WARNING

Sitting too close to a front airbag can result in serious injury or death if the front airbags inflate.

Always sit as far back from the front airbags as possible while maintaining control of the vehicle.

In addition to the seat adjustment, you can adjust the steering wheel up and down, in and out. Allow at least 25 cm between the centre of the steering wheel and the chest.

Adjusting the Seat Positions

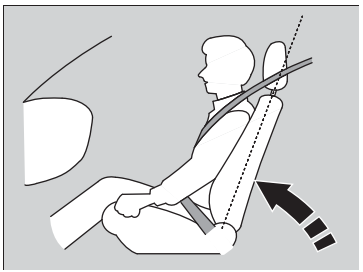


Adjusting the Seat Positions

Once a seat is adjusted correctly, rock it back and forth to make sure it is locked in position.

Continued

Adjusting the Seat-Backs



Adjust the driver's seat-back to a comfortable, upright position, leaving ample space between your chest and the airbag cover in the centre of the steering wheel.

The front seat passenger should also adjust their seat-back to a comfortable, upright position.

Reclining a seat-back so that the shoulder part of the belt no longer rests against the occupant's chest reduces the protective capability of the belt. It also increases the chance of sliding under the belt in a crash and being seriously injured. The farther a seat-back is reclined, the greater the risk of injury.

Adjusting the Seat-Backs

⚠WARNING

Reclining the seat-back too far can result in serious injury or death in a crash.

Adjust the seat-back to an upright position, and sit well back in the seat.

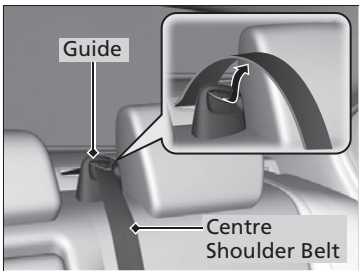
Do not put a cushion, or other object, between the seat-back and your back.

Doing so may interfere with proper seat belt or airbag operation.

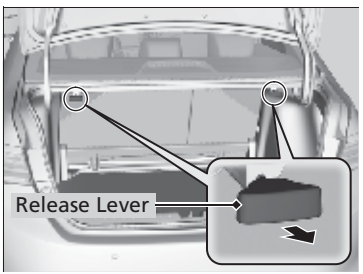
If you cannot get far enough away from the steering wheel and still reach the controls, we recommend that you investigate whether some type of adaptive equipment may help.

Rear Seats

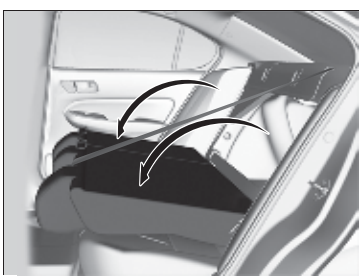
Folding Down the Rear Seats*



1. Remove the centre shoulder belt from the guide.



2. Pull the release lever in the boot to release the lock.



3. Fold the seat-back down.

* Not available on all models

Continued

Folding Down the Rear Seats*

⚠WARNING

Make sure the seat-backs are latched securely before driving.

The rear seat-backs can be folded down to accommodate bulkier items in the boot.

Never drive with the seat-back folded down and the boot lid open.

Exhaust Gas Hazard P. 93

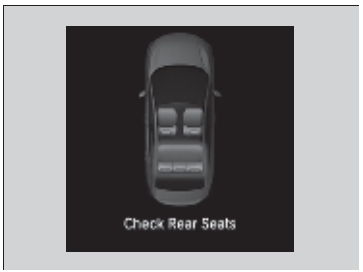
To lock the seat-back upright, push it backwards until it locks.
When returning the seat-back to its original position, push it firmly back. Also, make sure all rear shoulder belts are positioned in front of the seat-back, and the centre shoulder belt is re-positioned in the guide.

Make sure all items in the boot or items extending through the opening into the rear seats are properly secured. Loose items can fly forward if you have to brake hard.

Remove any items from the rear seat cushion and floor before you fold down the rear seat.

Rear Seat Reminder

This feature alerts you to the possible presence of passengers or items in the rear seats before you exit the vehicle. It activates when the vehicle is set to VEHICLE OFF if the rear doors were opened shortly before or after the vehicle was set to ON.



A reminder appears on the driver information interface and an alert will sound when the power mode is set to VEHICLE OFF.

Rear Seat Reminder

When the power mode is set to VEHICLE OFF, the reminder comes on briefly, then the function is deactivated.

The reminder will not work if the power mode has not been set to ON within 10 minutes of operating the rear doors.

The system does not detect passengers in the rear seats. Instead, it can detect when a rear door is opened and closed, indicating that there may be something in the rear seats.

You can turn off the notification setting.
Settings P. 128

Maintain a Proper Sitting Position

After all occupants have adjusted their seats and head restraints and put on their seat belts, it is very important that they continue to sit upright well back in their seats with their feet on the floor until the vehicle is safely parked and the power mode is off.

Sitting improperly can increase the chance of injury during a crash. For example, if an occupant slouches, lies down, turns sideways, sits forward, leans forward or sideways, or puts one or both feet up, the chance of injury during a crash is greatly increased.

In addition, an occupant who is out of position in the front seat can be seriously or fatally injured in a crash by striking interior parts of the vehicle or being struck by an inflating front airbag.

Maintain a Proper Sitting Position

⚠WARNING

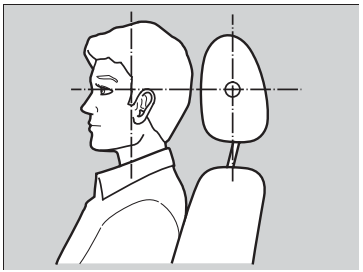
Sitting improperly or out of position can result in serious injury or death in a crash.

Always sit upright, well back in the seat, with your feet on the floor.

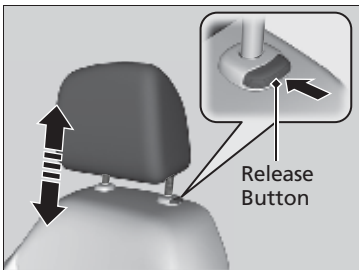
Head Restraints

Your vehicle is equipped with head restraints in all seating positions.

■ Adjusting the Front Head Restraints Positions



Head restraints are most effective for protection against whiplash and other rear-impact crash injuries when the centre of the back of the occupant's head rests against the centre of the restraint. The tops of the occupant's ears should be level with the centre height of the restraint.



To raise the head restraint:
Pull it upward.
To lower the head restraint:
Push it down while pressing the release button.

Adjusting the Front Head Restraints Positions

⚠WARNING

Improperly positioning head restraints reduces their effectiveness and increases the likelihood of serious injury in a crash.

Make sure head restraints are in place and positioned properly before driving.

In order for the head restraint system to work properly:

- Do not hang any items on the head restraints, or from the restraint legs.
- Do not place any objects between an occupant and the seat-back.
- Install each restraint in its proper location.

Removing and Reinstalling the Front Head Restraints

Head restraints can be removed for cleaning or repair.

To remove the head restraint:
Pull the restraint up as far as it will go. Then, push the release button and pull the restraint up and out.

To reinstall the head restraint:
Insert the legs back in place, then adjust the head restraint to an appropriate height while pressing the release button. Pull up on the restraint to make sure it is locked in position.

Removing and Reinstalling the Front Head Restraints

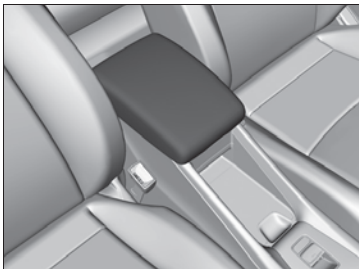
⚠WARNING

Failure to reinstall or correctly reinstall the head restraints can result in severe injury during a crash.

Always replace the head restraints before driving.

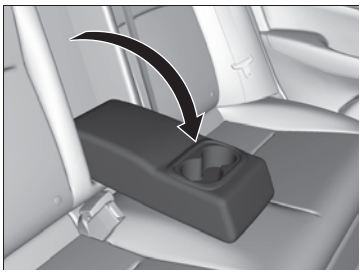
Armrest

■ Using the Front Seat Armrest



The console lid can be used as an armrest.

■ Using the Rear Seat Armrest*

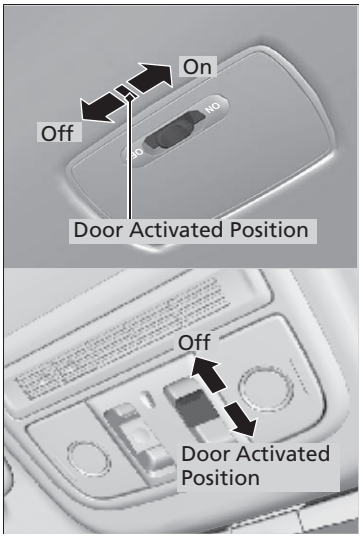


Pull down the armrest in the centre backrest.

 * Not available on all models

Interior Lights

Interior Light Switches



■ ON

The interior light comes on regardless of whether the doors are open or closed.

■ Door activated

The interior light comes on in the following situations:

- When any doors are opened.
- When the driver's door is unlocked.
- When the power mode is set to VEHICLE OFF.

■ OFF

The interior light remains off regardless of whether the doors are open or closed.

Interior Light Switches

In the door activated position, the interior light fades out and turns off about 30 seconds after the doors are closed.

The light turns off after 30 seconds in the following situations:

- When you unlock the driver's door but do not open it.
- When you set the power mode to VEHICLE OFF but do not open a door.

You can change the interior lights dimming time.

Settings P. 128

The interior light turns off immediately in the following situations:

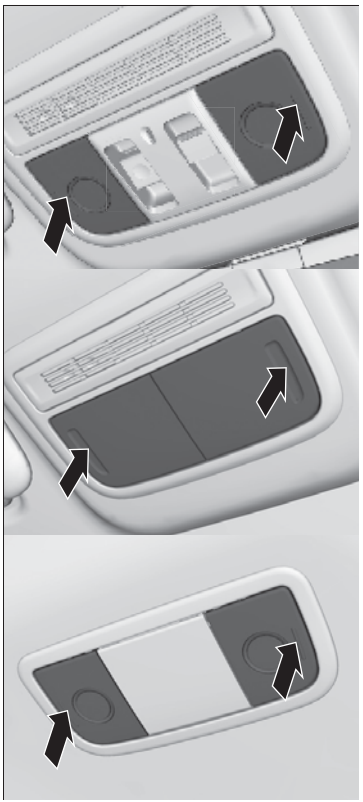
- When you lock the driver's door.
- When you close the driver's door in ACCESSORY mode.
- When you set the power mode to ON.

If you leave any of the doors open in VEHICLE OFF mode, the interior light turns off after about 15 minutes.

To avoid draining the 12-volt battery, do not leave the interior light on for an extended length of time when the power system is off.

Continued

Map Light Switches



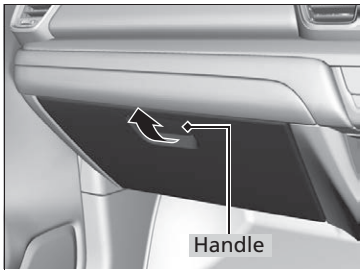
The map lights can be turned on and off by pressing the lenses.

Map Light Switches

When the front interior light switch is in the door activated position and any door is open, the map light will not go off when you press the lens.

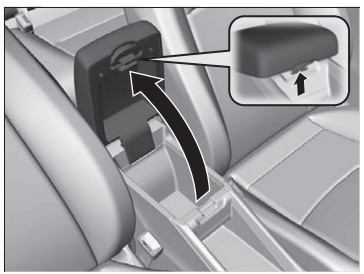
Storage Items

Glove Box



Pull the handle to open the glove box.

Console Compartment



Pull the handle to open the console compartment.

Glove Box

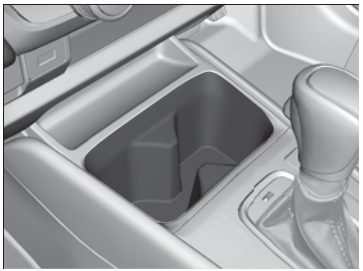
⚠WARNING

An open glove box can cause serious injury to your passenger in a crash, even if the passenger is wearing the seat belt.

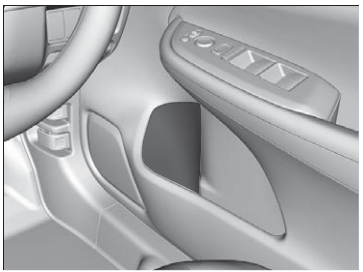
Always keep the glove box closed while driving.

Continued

■ Beverage Holders

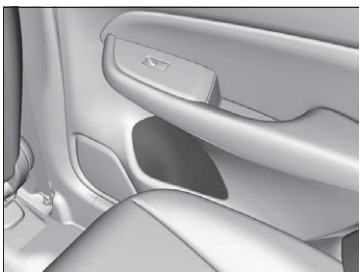


■ Front seat beverage holders



■ Front door side beverage holders

Located on both front door side pockets.



■ Rear door side beverage holders

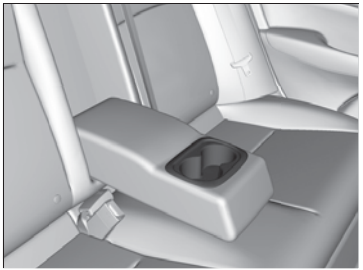
Located on both rear door side pockets.

Beverage Holders

NOTICE

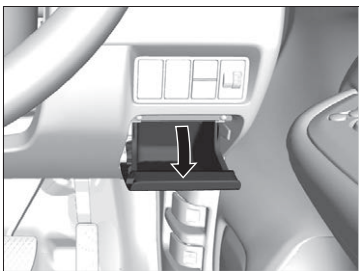
Spilled liquids can damage the upholstery, carpeting, and electrical components in the interior.

Be careful when you are using the beverage holders. Hot liquid can scald you.



■ **Rear seat beverage holders***
Fold the armrest down to use the rear seat beverage holders.

■ Driver's Side Pocket



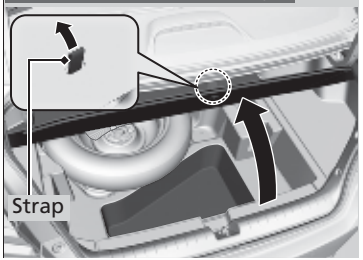
Pull the lid to open the pocket.

* Not available on all models

Continued

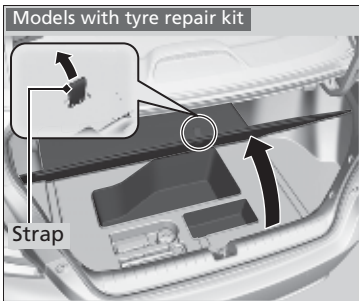
■ Under-Floor Storage Area

Models with compact spare tyre



Pull the strap and open the lid.

Models with tyre repair kit



Coat Hook*



There is a coat hook on the rear right grab handle of right side. Pull it down to use it.

Coat Hook*

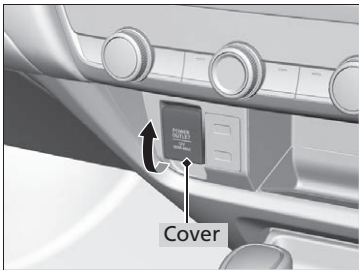
The coat hook is not designed for large or heavy items.

* Not available on all models

Other Interior Convenience Items

■ Accessory Power Socket

The accessory power socket can be used when the power mode is in ACCESSORY or ON.



■ Accessory power socket on the console panel

Open the cover to use it.

Accessory Power Socket

NOTICE

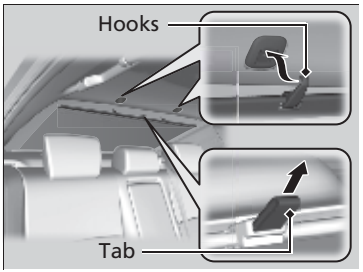
Do not insert an automotive type cigarette lighter element. This can overheat the accessory power socket.

The accessory power socket is designed to supply power for 12-volt DC accessories that are rated 180 watts or less (15 amps).

To prevent 12-volt battery drain, use the accessory power socket with the power system on.

When the accessory power socket is not in use, close the cover to prevent any small foreign objects from getting into the accessory power socket.

Rear Sunshade*



Pull the tab and roll up the sunshade all the way. Use the hooks to hang it.

Rear Sunshade*

NOTICE

Be careful not to scratch the heating elements on the rear windscreen when using the rear sunshade.

Indian Models

Do not use the sunshade while driving as it could obstruct the driver's view.

The sunshade can be used to protect the interior when parking the car in direct sunlight for a long period of time.

Check and follow your local legal requirements before using the sunshade.

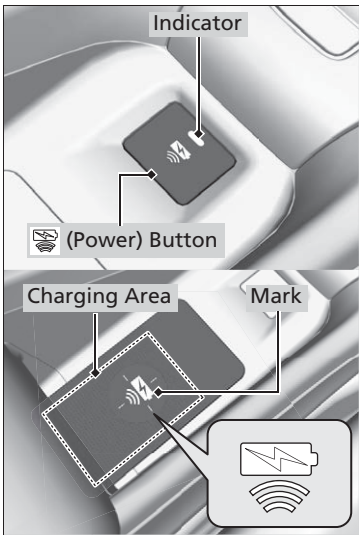
* Not available on all models

Continued

■ Wireless Charger*

To use the wireless charger, the power mode must be in ACCESSORY or ON. Charge any devices compatible with Qi wireless charging on the area indicated by the mark as follows:

Indian, Bhutanese, Sri Lankan and Nepalese models



1. To turn the system on and off, press and hold the (power) button.
▶ When the system is activated, the indicator turns on green.

2. Place the device you want to charge on the charging area.
▶ The system will automatically start charging the device and the indicator turns from green to amber.
▶ Make sure that the device is compatible with the system and placed with the chargeable side in the centre of the charging area.

3. When charging is completed, the indicator turns from amber to green.
▶ Depending on the device, the amber indicator light will stay on.

Wireless Charger*

⚠CAUTION

Metal objects between the charge pad and the device to be charged will get hot and can burn you.

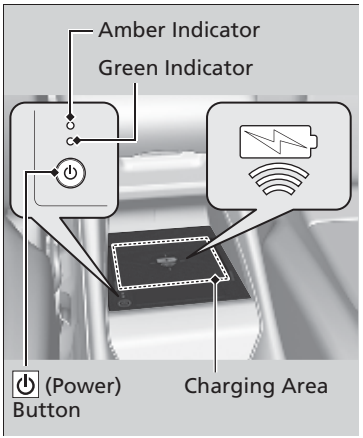
- Always remove foreign objects from the charge pad before charging the device.
- Be sure the surface is clear of dust and other debris before charging.
- Do not spill liquids (e.g., water, drinks, etc.) on the charger and the device.
- Do not use oil, grease, alcohol, benzine, or thinner for cleaning the charge pad.
- Do not cover the system with towels, clothing, or other objects while charging.
- Avoid spraying aerosols which may come in contact with the charge pad surface.

This system consumes a lot of power. Do not use the system for a long time when the power system is off. This may weaken the 12-volt battery, making it difficult to turn the power system on.

When using the wireless charger, check the user's manual that came with the compatible device you want to charge.

 * Not available on all models

Except Indian, Bhutanese, Sri Lankan and Nepalese models



1. To turn the system on and off, press and hold the (power) button.
   ▶ When the system is activated, the green indicator light comes on.
2. Place the device you want to charge on the charging area.
   ▶ The system will automatically start charging the device and the amber indicator light will come on.
   ▶ Make sure that the device is compatible with the system and placed with the chargeable side in the centre of the charging area.
3. When charging is completed, the green indicator light will come on.
   ▶ Depending on the device, the amber indicator light will stay on.

Wireless Charger*

The wireless charger can support up to 15W, but the charging rate varies based on the device and other conditions.

NOTICE

Do not place any magnetic recording media or precision machines within the charging area while charging. The data on your cards such as credit cards can be lost because of the magnetic effect. Also precision machines such as watches can be affected.

"Qi" and marks are the registered trademarks owned by Wireless Power Consortium (WPC).

Indian, Bhutanese, Sri Lankan and Nepalese models

The unit is compliant with WPC Specification Version 1.2.

In the following cases, charging may stop or not start:
- The device is already fully charged.
- The temperature of the device is extremely high while charging.
- You are at a place that emits strong electromagnetic waves or noises, such as a TV station, electric power plant, or petrol station.
- The device has a cover, case, or accessories which are not compatible with wireless charging.

A device may not charge if the size or shape of its chargeable side is not appropriate for use with the charging area.

Not all devices are compatible with the system.

During the charging phase, it is normal for the charging area and device to heat up.

* Not available on all models

Continued

■ When charging does not start

Perform one of the solutions in the following table.

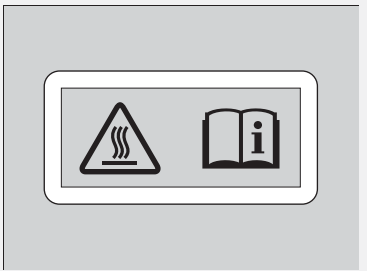
Indicator		Cause	Solution
Green & Amber	Blinking green and amber alternately*1	There is an obstacle(s) between the charging area and the device.	Remove the obstacle(s).
		The device is not within the charging area.	Pick up and reset the device to the centre of the charging area where is located.
	Blinking simultaneously*2	The temperature of the wireless charger pad increases.	Temporarily suspend charging the device. Wait for temperature to drop and attempt to charge the device again.
Amber	Blinking	The wireless charger is faulty.	Contact a dealer for repairs.

*1: Indian, Bhutanese, Sri Lankan and Nepalese models
*2: Except Indian, Bhutanese, Sri Lankan and Nepalese models

Wireless Charger*

Charging may be briefly interrupted when:
- All the doors or the boot are closed
  - to avoid interference with the proper functioning of the keyless access system.
- The position of the device is altered.

Do not charge more than one device at a time on a charging area.



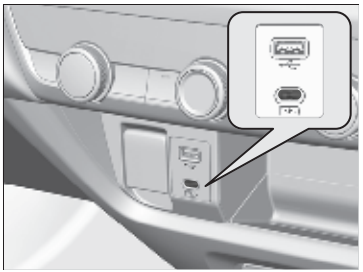
Burn risk:
Any metal objects placed between pad and device may become hot.

If the device becomes too hot and its battery protection function activates, it may charge extremely slowly or no longer charge.
The temperature at which the battery protection function activates depends on the device.

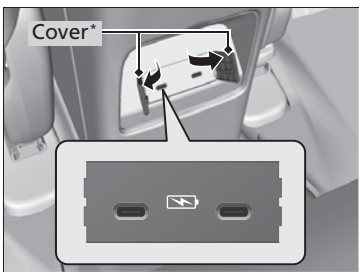
* Not available on all models

■ USB Ports for Charging*

Install the USB connector to the USB port (3.0A) for charging the device.
The USB port with ⇦ symbol is for battery charge only.



■ On the front panel*



■ Rear of the console compartment

USB Ports for Charging*

- Do not leave the device to charge in the vehicle. Direct sunlight and high temperatures may damage it.
- We recommend using an extension cable with the USB port.
- Do not connect the device to charge using a hub.
- Do not use a device such as a card reader or hard disk drive, as the device or your files may be damaged.
- We recommend backing up your data before using the device in your vehicle.

The USB port can supply up to 3.0A of power. It does not output 3.0A unless the device requests.
For amperage details, read the operating manual of the device that needs to be charged.
Set the power mode to ACCESSORY or ON first.

Under certain conditions, a device connected to the port may generate noise in the radio you are listening to.

If the USB charger becomes too hot, charging may be suspended.

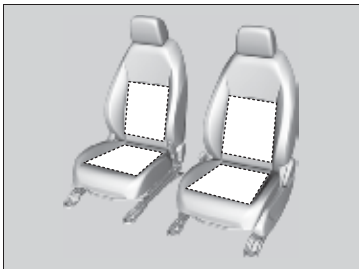
Do not insert foreign object into charging device.

Do not spill liquid (i.e. water, drinks, etc) on the device.

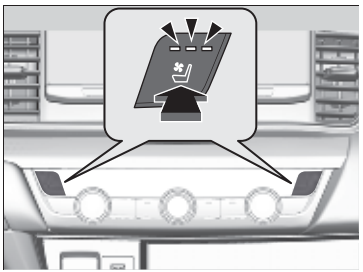
* Not available on all models

Continued

■ Front Seat Ventilation*



The seat ventilators can be used when the power mode is in ON.
The seat ventilators: Use them when you want to ventilate the surface of the seats. When used with the air conditioning, the surface of the seats will become easier to cool.



Press the seat ventilation button:
Once - The HI setting (three indicators on)
Twice - The MID setting (two indicators on)
Three times - The LO setting (one indicator on)
Four times - The OFF setting (no indicators on)

When the power mode is turned on after it is turned off, the previously selected setting is maintained.

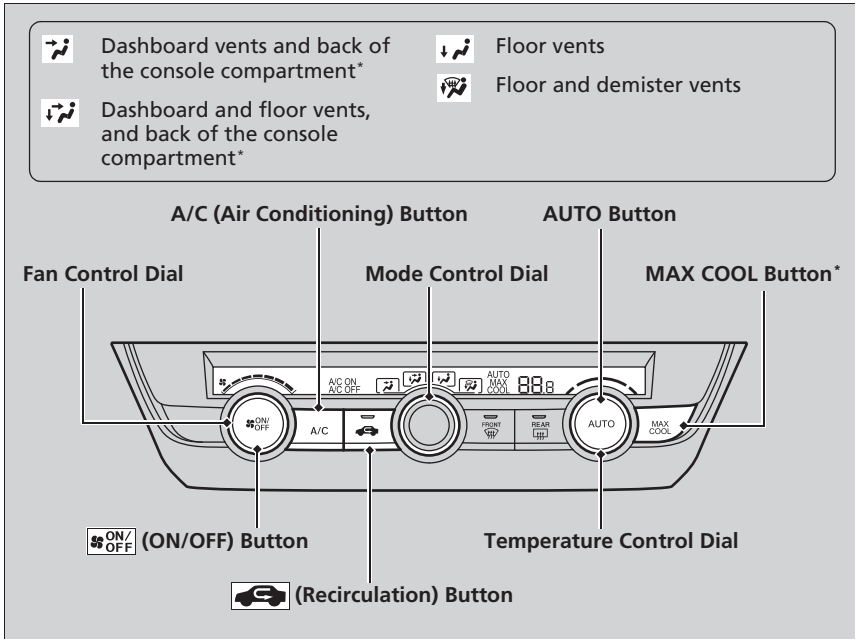
Front Seat Ventilation*

Do not use the seat ventilation even in LO when the power system is OFF. Under such conditions, the 12-volt battery may be weakened, making the power system difficult to start.

* Not available on all models

Using Automatic Climate Control

The automatic climate control system maintains the interior temperature you select. The system also selects the proper mix of heated or cooled air that raises or lowers the interior temperature to your preference as quickly as possible.



Use the system when the power system is on.

1. Press the **AUTO** button.
2. Adjust the interior temperature using the temperature control dial.
3. Press the (**ON/OFF**) button to cancel.

* Not available on all models

Continued

Using Automatic Climate Control

If any buttons are pressed while using the climate control system in auto, the function of the button that was pressed will take priority.
The **AUTO** indicator will go off, but functions unrelated to the button that was pressed will be controlled automatically.

While ECON mode is active, the climate control system may have reduced cooling performance.

Models without MAX COOL button

If the interior is very warm, you can cool it down more rapidly by partially opening the windows, turning the system on auto, and setting the temperature to low. Change the fresh air mode to recirculation mode until the temperature cools down.

Models with MAX COOL button

If the interior is very warm, you can cool it down more rapidly by partially opening the windows, press the **MAX COOL** button.

When you set the temperature to the lower or upper limit, **Lo** or **Hi** is displayed.

Pressing the (**ON/OFF**) button switches the climate control system between on and off. When turned on, the system returns to your last selection.

To prevent cold air from blowing in from outside, the fan may not start immediately when the **AUTO** button is pressed.

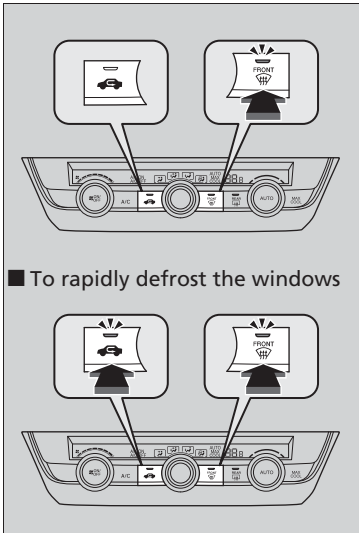
■ Switching between the recirculation and fresh air modes

Press the  (Recirculation) button and switch the mode depending on environmental conditions.
Recirculation mode (indicator on): Recirculates air from the vehicle's interior through the system.
Fresh air mode (indicator off): Maintains outside ventilation. Keep the system in fresh air mode in normal situations.

Using Automatic Climate Control

The high voltage battery level being low may reduce the climate control system performance.

Defrosting the Windscreen and Windows



■ To rapidly defrost the windows

Press the FRONT button to turn the air conditioning system on and automatically switches the system to fresh air mode.

Except Trinidad and Bangladeshi models

Press the button (indicator off) to switch to the fresh air mode.

▶ If you want to rapidly defrost the window:
Press the button (indicator on).

Press the FRONT button again to turn it off and the system will return to the previous settings.

Defrosting the Windscreen and Windows

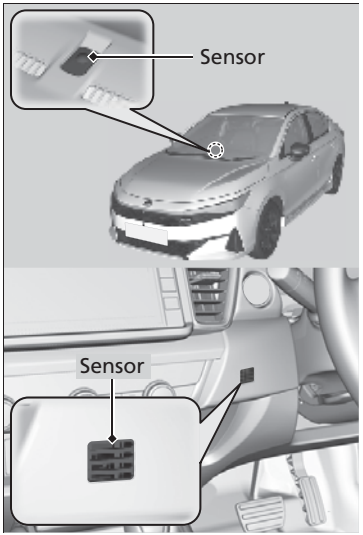
For your safety, make sure you have a clear view through all the windows before driving.

Do not set the temperature near the lower limit. When cold air hits the windscreen, the outside of the windscreen may fog up.

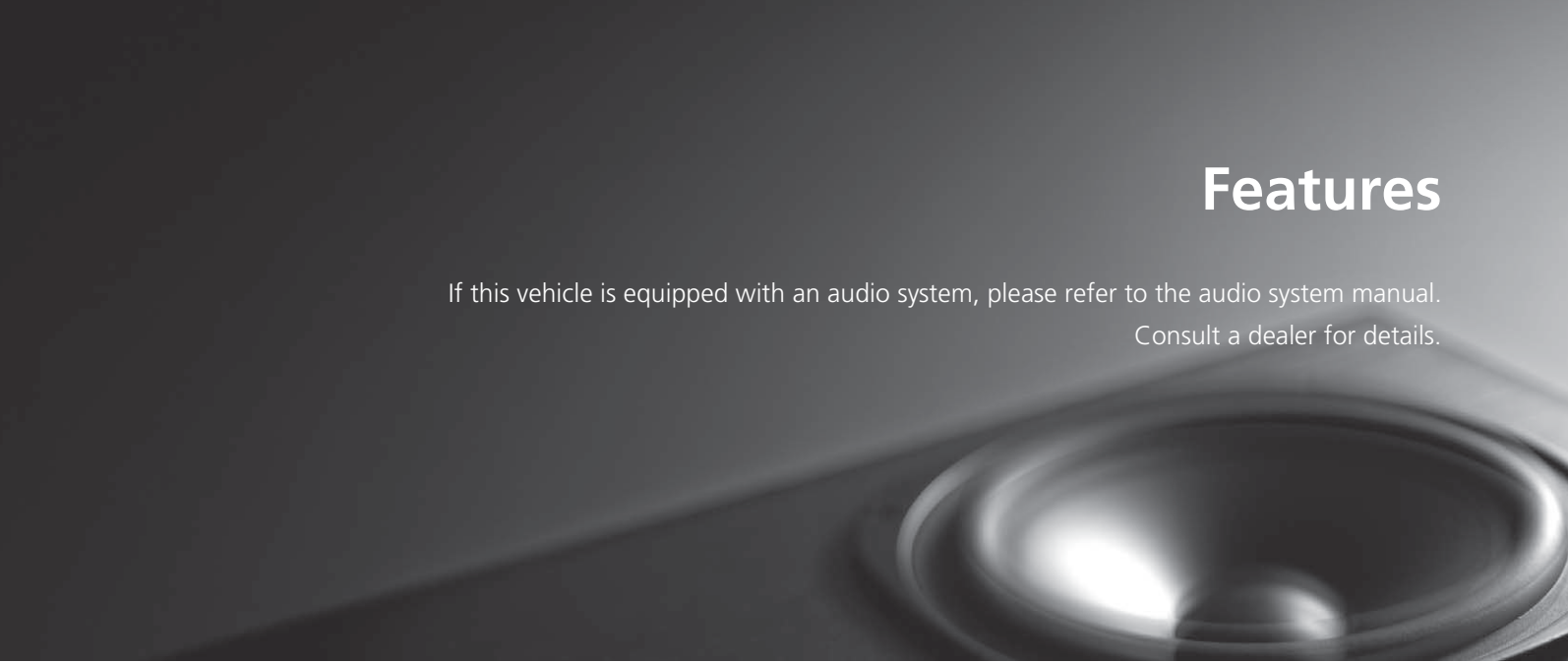
To rapidly defrost the windows

After defrosting the windows, switch over to fresh air mode. If you keep the system in recirculation mode, the windows may fog up from humidity. This impedes visibility.

Automatic Climate Control Sensors

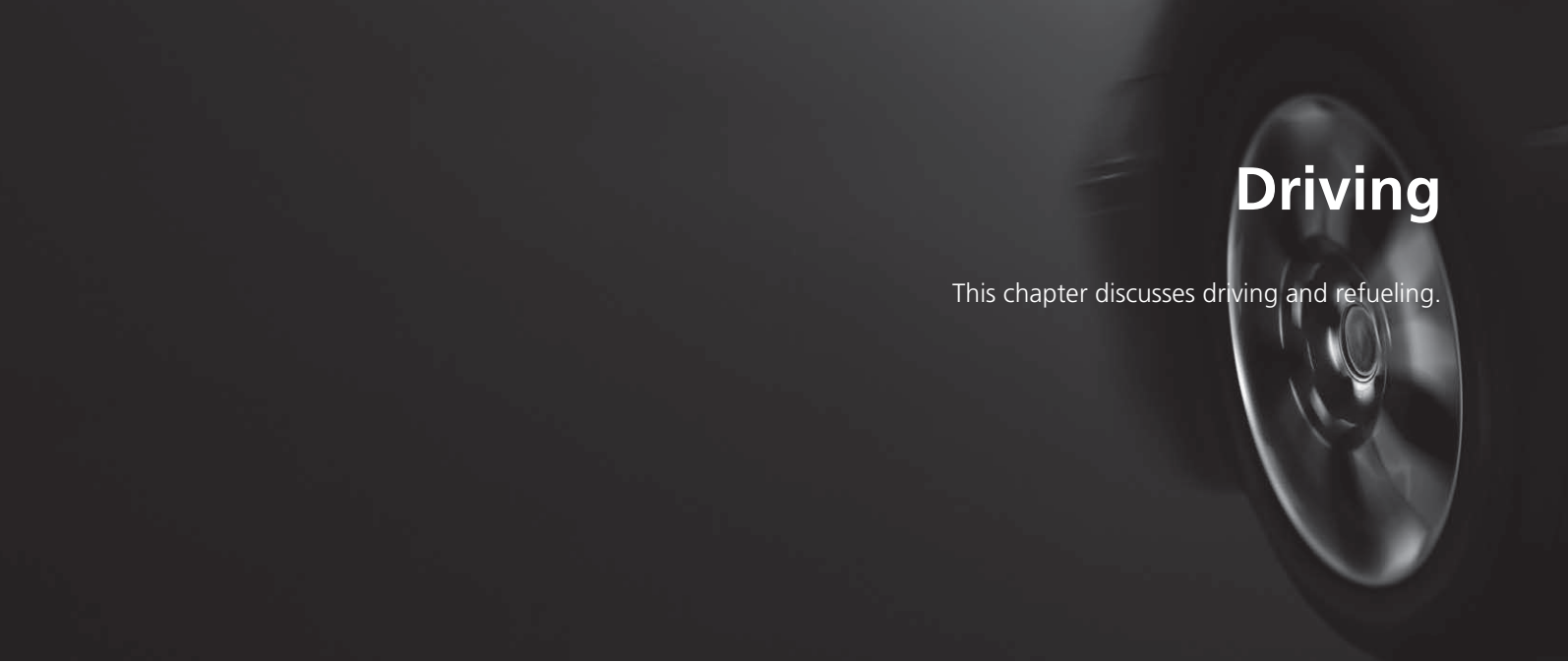


The automatic climate control system is equipped with sensors. Do not cover or spill any liquid on them.



Features

If this vehicle is equipped with an audio system, please refer to the audio system manual.
Consult a dealer for details.



Driving

This chapter discusses driving and refueling.

Before Driving
- Driving Preparation 214
- Load Limit 216

Towing a Trailer 217

When Driving
- Turning on the Power 218
- Precautions While Driving 225
- Transmission 226
- Shifting 227
- Deceleration Paddle Selector 229
- ECON Mode 232
- Acoustic Vehicle Alerting System 233
- Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) System .. 234
- Agile Handling Assist 236
- Deflation Warning System* 237
- High Voltage Battery 241

Honda SENSING 242
- Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS) 245
- Road Departure Mitigation System ... 259
- Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow 266
- Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS) .. 284
- Lead Car Departure Notification System* 295
- Front Wide View Camera 299

Braking
- Brake System 301
- Anti-lock Brake System (ABS) 308
- Brake Assist System 309
- Emergency Stop Signal 310

Parking Your Vehicle
- When Stopped 311
- Parking Sensor System* 313

Refueling
- Fuel Information 315
- How to Refuel 316

Fuel Economy and CO_2 Emissions 317

* Not available on all models

Driving Preparation

Check the following items before you start driving.

Exterior Checks

- Make sure there are no obstructions on the windows, door mirrors, exterior lights, or other parts of the vehicle.
  - ▶ Remove any frost, snow, or ice.
  - ▶ Remove any snow on the roof, as this can slip down and obstruct your field of vision while driving or fall off and impact other road users. If frozen solid, remove ice once it has softened.
  - ▶ When removing ice from around the wheels, be sure not to damage the wheel or wheel components.
- Make sure the bonnet is securely closed.
  - ▶ If the bonnet opens while driving, your front view will be blocked.
- Make sure the tyres are in good condition.
  - ▶ Check air pressures, and check for damage and excessive wear.
    ➔ **Checking and Maintaining Tyres** P. 349
- Make sure there are no people or objects behind or around the vehicle.
  - ▶ There are blind spots from the inside.

Exterior Checks

NOTICE

When doors are frozen shut, use warm water around the door edges to melt any ice. Do not try to force them open, as this can damage the rubber trim around the doors. When done, wipe dry to avoid further freezing.

Do not pour warm water into the key cylinder. You will be unable to insert the key if the water freezes in the hole.

Heat from the engine and exhaust can ignite flammable materials left under the bonnet, causing a fire. If you've parked your vehicle for an extended period, inspect and remove any debris that may have collected, such as dried grass and leaves that have fallen or have been carried in for use as a nest by a small animal. Also, check under the bonnet for leftover flammable materials after you or someone else has performed maintenance on your vehicle.

Interior Checks

- Store or secure all items on board properly.
  ▶ Carrying too much luggage, or improperly storing it, can affect your vehicle's handling, stability, stopping distance, and tyres, and make it unsafe.
  ➔ **Load Limit** P. 216
- Do not pile items higher than the seatback height.
  ▶ They can block your view and may be thrown forward in the event of sudden braking.
- Do not place anything in the front seat footwells. Make sure to secure the floor mat.
  ▶ An object or unsecured floor mat can interfere with your brake and accelerator pedal operation while driving.
- If you have any animals on board, do not let them move around in the vehicle.
  ▶ They may interfere with driving and a crash could occur.
- Securely close all doors and the boot.
  ➔ **Locking/Unlocking the Doors from the Inside** P. 149
- Adjust your seating position properly.
  ▶ Adjust the head restraint, too.
  ➔ **Seats** P. 184
  ➔ **Adjusting the Front Head Restraints Positions** P. 190
- Adjust the mirrors and steering wheel properly.
  ▶ Adjust them while sitting in the proper driving position.
  ➔ **Mirrors** P. 181
  ➔ **Adjusting the Steering Wheel** P. 180

Interior Checks

The headlight aim is set by the factory, and does not need to be adjusted. However, if you regularly carry heavy items in the boot, have the aiming readjusted at a dealer or by a qualified technician.

You can adjust the low beam headlight angle by yourself.
➔ **Headlight Adjuster** P. 169

Continued

- Be sure items placed on the floor behind the front seats cannot roll under the seats.
  ▶ They can interfere with the driver's ability to operate the pedals, the operation of the seats.
- Everyone in the vehicle must fasten their seat belt.
  ➡ **Fastening a Seat Belt** P. 45
- Make sure that the indicators in the instrument panel come on when you start the vehicle, and go off soon after.
  ▶ Always have a dealer check the vehicle if a problem is indicated.
  ➡ **Indicators** P. 96

Load Limit

When you load luggage, the total weight of the vehicle, all passengers, and luggage must not exceed the maximum permissible weight.

➡ **Specifications** P. 420

Load Limit

⚠WARNING

Overloading or improper loading can affect handling and stability and cause a crash in which you can be hurt or killed.

Follow all load limits and other loading guidelines in this manual.

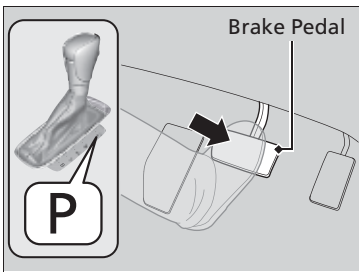
Towing a Trailer

Your vehicle is not designed to, and cannot safely, tow a trailer nor have a tow hitch installed. Do not install a tow hitch on, or tow with, your vehicle.

Turning on the Power

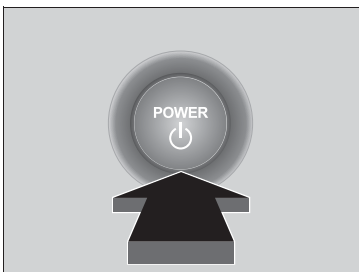


1. Make sure the parking brake is applied. The parking brake and brake system indicator (red) comes on for 30 seconds when you pull up the electric parking brake switch.



2. Check that the transmission is in P, then depress the brake pedal.

► Although it is possible to start the vehicle in N, it is safer to start it in P.



3. Without depressing the accelerator pedal, press the **POWER** button while depressing the brake pedal.

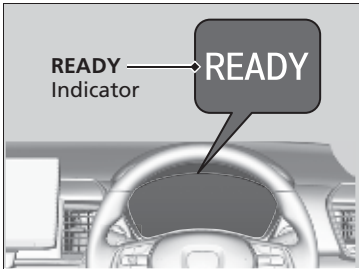
Turning on the Power

Keep your foot firmly on the brake pedal when turning on the power system.

The engine is harder to start in cold weather and in thinner air found at altitudes above 2,400 metres.

When turning on the power system in cold weather, turn off all electrical accessories such as the lights, climate control system, and rear demister in order to reduce 12-volt battery drain.

If the exhaust system sounds abnormal or you can smell exhaust gas inside the vehicle, have your vehicle checked by a dealer. There may be a problem with the engine or exhaust system.



4. Check the **READY** indicator.
- ▶ Keep depressing the brake pedal until the **READY** indicator comes on.
- ▶ The **READY** indicator comes on when the power system is on and you can start driving.
- ▶ If the outside temperature is extremely low, you cannot drive until conditions are improved. In this case, the **READY** indicator does not come on and a warning message appears on the driver information interface.

Turning on the Power

When you set the power mode to ON, you may feel the brake pedal slightly sink down.
This is normal.

Bring the keyless remote close to the **POWER** button if the battery in the keyless remote is weak.
➡ **If the Keyless Remote Battery is Weak** P. 394

Do not hold the **POWER** button to turn on the power system.
If the power system does not start, wait at least 30 seconds before trying again.

The engine may not run when the vehicle is ready for driving.
You can start driving with the **READY** indicator on.
If you press the **POWER** button while depressing the brake pedal with the **READY** indicator on, the power mode is set to VEHICLE OFF and you cannot start driving.
➡ **Indicators** P. 96

The power system may not activate if the keyless remote is subjected to strong radio waves.

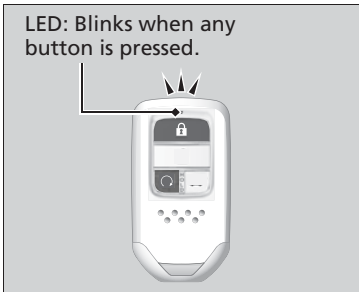
The immobilizer system protects your vehicle from theft. If an improperly coded key (or other device) is used, the power system does not activate.
➡ **Immobilizer System** P. 154

Continued

■ Remote Engine Start

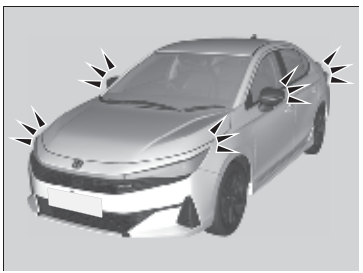
You can remotely turn the power system on using the keyless remote.

■ To turn the power system on



Press the [🔒] button, then press and hold the [⟳] button.

▶ Some exterior lights flash once.



If the power system is turned on successfully, some exterior lights flash six times.

Remote Engine Start

⚠WARNING

Engine exhaust contains toxic carbon monoxide.

Breathing carbon monoxide can kill you or cause unconsciousness.

Never use the remote engine starter when the vehicle is parked in a garage or other area with limited ventilation.

The remote engine start may violate local laws. Before using the remote engine start, check your local laws.

If there are buildings and obstacles between your vehicle and the keyless remote, the range will be reduced.
This distance may vary by external electrical interference.



If the power system is not turned on, exterior lights will not flash.

▶ Go within the range, and try again.

The power system is on for up to 10 minutes without you starting the vehicle. To extend the run time for another 10 minutes during the first run, press the [🔒] button, then press and hold the [⟳] button.

▶ Some exterior lights flash six times if a 10-minute extension request was transmitted successfully.

Remote Engine Start

The power system may not be turned on by the remote engine start if:

- You have disabled a remote engine start setting.
  ➡ **Settings** P. 128
- The power mode is not in VEHICLE OFF.
- The transmission is in a position other than [P].
- The bonnet is open, or any door or the boot is unlocked.
- You have already used the keyless remote twice to turn the power system on.
- Another registered keyless remote is in the vehicle.
- There is any antenna failure.
- The door is unlocked with the built-in key.
- The engine oil pressure is low.
- The engine coolant temperature is extremely high.
- The telematics unit malfunctions*.
- The security system alarm is not set.
- The 12-volt battery charge is too low.

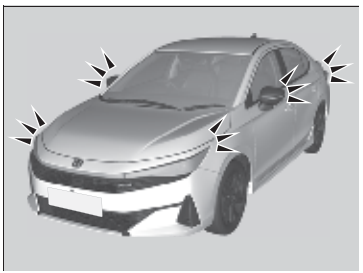
* Not available on all models

Continued

■ To turn the power system off



Press and hold the [ ] button for one second.



If the power system is turned off successfully, the exterior lights flash once.



When the keyless remote is out of the keyless access system range, the exterior lights will not flash.
The power system will not be turned off.
▶ Go within the range, and try again.

Remote Engine Start

The power system may be turned off while it is running if:

- You do not start the vehicle within 10 minutes of turning the power system on with the keyless remote.
- The power system is turned off by using the keyless remote.
- The security system alarm is not set.
- The door is unlocked with the built-in key.
- The bonnet is open, or any door, or the boot is unlocked.
- You press the shift lever release button.
- The engine coolant temperature is extremely high.
- The 12-volt battery is low.
- The engine oil pressure is low.
- The malfunction indicator lamp comes on if there is a problem with the emissions control systems.

While the power system is on, the vehicle will automatically precondition inside the vehicle.
When it is warm outside:

- The climate control system is activated in recirculation mode.

When it is cold outside:

- The demister is activated at a moderately warm temperature.
- The rear demister is activated.

Starting to Drive

When the power system is turned on using the button on the keyless remote

1. Depress and hold the brake pedal, then press the **POWER** button.

When the power system is turned on in any case

2. Keeping your right foot on the brake pedal, check that the **READY** indicator is on, then put the shift lever is in D. Select R when reversing.

3. With the parking brake applied, release the brake pedal and gently depress the accelerator pedal.

▶ Make sure the parking brake and brake system indicator (red) goes off.

Parking Brake P. 301

Hill Start Assist System

Hill start assist keeps the brake engaged briefly to help to prevent the vehicle from rolling on inclines as you move your foot from the brake pedal to the accelerator.

Put the transmission into D or B when facing uphill, or R when facing downhill, then release the brake pedal.

Starting to Drive

You can also release the parking brake by pressing the electric parking brake switch while depressing the brake pedal.
When facing downhill, you can start your vehicle more smoothly by manually releasing it with the electric parking brake switch than by releasing it with the accelerator pedal.

When the power system is turned on using the button on the keyless remote

The power system is turned off when the transmission is taken out of P before the **POWER** button is pressed. Follow the step 1 when starting to drive.

As a hybrid vehicle, the sounds and vibrations from the engine may be absent even though the vehicle is ready for driving. It also makes you fail to recognise that you can start.
Make sure to check if the **READY** indicator is on before you start to drive.

Hill Start Assist System

Hill start assist may not prevent the vehicle from rolling downhill on a very steep or slippery slope, and will not operate on small inclines.

Hill start assist will operate even when VSA is switched off.

Hill start assist is not a replacement for the parking brake.

Continued

■ Stopping the Power System

You can turn the power system off when the vehicle is completely stopped.

1. Put the transmission into P.

2. Press the **POWER** button.

Precautions While Driving

In a Fog

Visibility becomes low when it is foggy. When you drive, turn on the low beam headlights even during the daytime. Slow down, using the road line in the centre, guard rails, and the taillights of the vehicle ahead of you as your driving guide.

In a Strong Wind

If a strong side wind drifts your vehicle while driving, hold the steering wheel tight. Slowly decelerate your vehicle and keep your vehicle in the middle of the road. Be careful with wind gusts especially when your vehicle is exiting a tunnel, driving on a bridge or river bank, and driving through an open area like a quarry, and when a large lorry is passing by.

In Rain

The road is slippery when raining. Avoid hard braking, rapid acceleration, and abrupt steering and be more cautious when driving. It is likely to experience hydroplaning phenomenon if you are driving on a rutted road with puddles. Do not drive in deep water and on flooded roads. This can damage the power system or driveline, or cause electrical component failure.

Precautions While Driving

CAUTION: Do not drive on the road where water is deep. Driving through deep water will cause damage to the engine and electrical equipment and the vehicle will break down.

NOTICE

Do not operate the shift lever while pressing the accelerator pedal. You could damage the transmission.

NOTICE

If you repeatedly turn the steering wheel at an extremely low speed, or hold the steering wheel in the full left or right position for a while, the electric power steering (EPS) system heats up. The system goes into a protective mode and limits its performance. The steering wheel becomes harder and harder to operate. Once the system cools down, the EPS system is restored. Repeated operation under these conditions can eventually damage the system.

If the power mode is set to ACCESSORY while driving, the power system will shut down and all steering and brake power assist functions will stop, making it difficult to control the vehicle.

Do not select N while driving as you will lose regenerative braking (and acceleration) performance.

Continued

■ Other Precautions

If there is a strong impact with something under the vehicle, stop in a safe location. Check the underside of the vehicle for damage or any fluid leaks.

Transmission

■ Creeping

As with a conventional petrol-powered vehicle with an automatic transmission, this vehicle will creep.
Keep the brake pedal firmly depressed when stopped or ensure that brake-hold is engaged.

■ Kickdown

Quickly depressing the accelerator pedal while driving uphill may cause the vehicle to react similar to an automatic transmission vehicle, unexpectedly increasing vehicle speed. Depress the accelerator pedal carefully, especially on slippery roads and curves.

Precautions While Driving

During the first 1,000 km of operation, avoid sudden acceleration or full throttle operation so as not to damage the power system or powertrain.

Avoid hard braking for the first 300 km after purchasing your new vehicle or replacing the brake pads or rotors, to allow for proper break-in.

In Rain

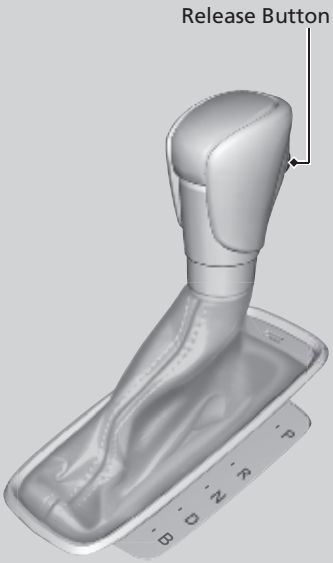
Be careful when hydroplaning phenomenon occurs. When you drive on a road covered with water at excessive speed, a layer of water builds between the tyres and the road surface. If this occurs, the vehicle cannot respond to control inputs such as steering, and braking.

Slowly decelerate when you shift down. If the road is slippery, sudden regenerative braking can cause the tyres to skid.

Shifting

Change the shift position in accordance with your driving needs.

■ Shift lever positions



P Park
Used when parking or turning the power on or off.

R Reverse
Used when reversing.

N Neutral
Transmission is not locked.

D Drive
Used:
- For normal driving.
- The deceleration paddle selector can be used temporarily.

B Drive (B)
Used:
- Used when driving down a long hill and to increase regenerative braking.
- The deceleration paddle selector can be used.

Shift lever positions

⚠WARNING

The vehicle can roll away if left unattended without confirming that Park is engaged.

A vehicle that rolls away could cause a crash resulting in serious injury or death.

Always keep your foot on the brake pedal until you have confirmed that P is shown on the shift position indicator.

While the High Voltage battery level is full, or the High Voltage battery temperature is low, regenerative braking may become less effective.

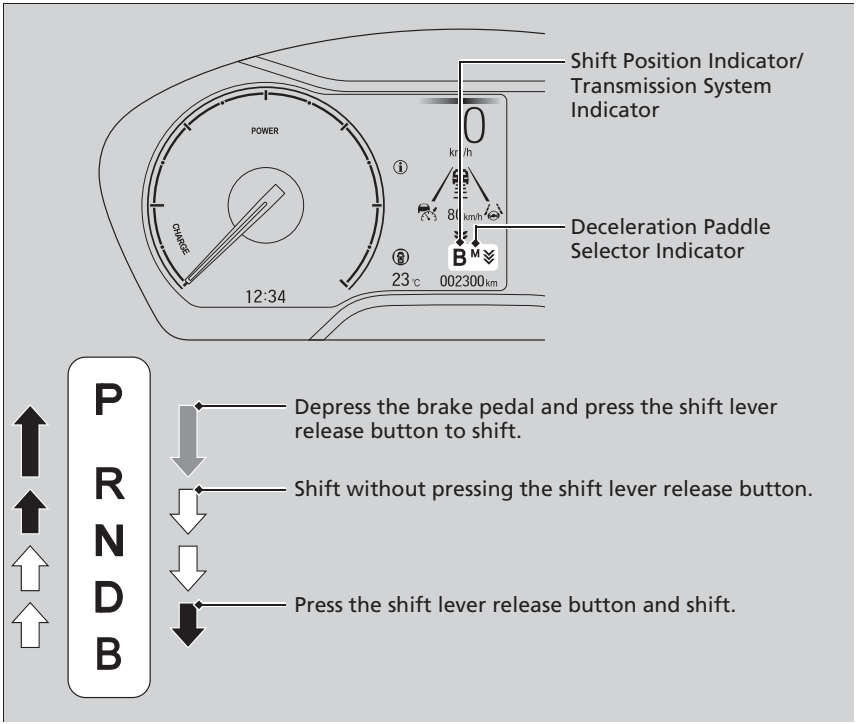
The beeper sounds and the message appears on the driver information interface when you depress the accelerator pedal with the shift position in N.

Change the transmission into D or R with the brake pedal depressed.

You cannot change the power mode from ON to VEHICLE OFF unless the shift lever is in P.

Continued

■ Shift Lever Operation



Shift Lever Operation

NOTICE

When you change D to R and vice versa, come to a complete stop and keep the brake pedal depressed. Operating the shift lever before the vehicle has come to a complete standstill can damage the transmission.

Use the shift position indicator to check the lever position before pulling away.

If the transmission system indicator blinks when driving, in any shift position, there is a problem with the transmission.
Avoid sudden acceleration and have the transmission checked by a dealer as soon as possible.

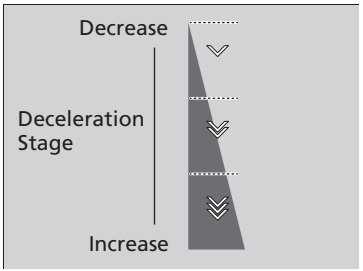
When shifting positions in extremely low temperatures (-30°C), there may be a short delay before the shift position is displayed. Always confirm you are in the correct shift position before driving.

It may not be possible to operate the shift lever if the brake pedal is applied while the shift lever release button is held down.
Depress the brake pedal first.

Deceleration Paddle Selector

When you release the accelerator pedal, you can control the rate of deceleration without releasing your hands from the steering wheel. Using the deceleration paddle selector situated on the steering wheel, you can sequentially shift through three stages of deceleration.

When descending a hill, you can use the deceleration paddle selector to help maintain the rate of deceleration, thereby allowing you to keep a safe distance between your vehicle and the vehicle ahead.



The default deceleration stage is ⩒. Each paddle selector operation makes a single stage deceleration change.

▶ The deceleration stage may not change if you pull the paddle selector pulled back.

To select the different stages of deceleration:

- Pull back the + selector (right side) to decrease the deceleration stage.
- Pull back the − selector (left side) to increase the deceleration stage.

Pull the + selector for a few seconds when you want to cancel the deceleration paddle selector.

Deceleration Paddle Selector

⚠CAUTION

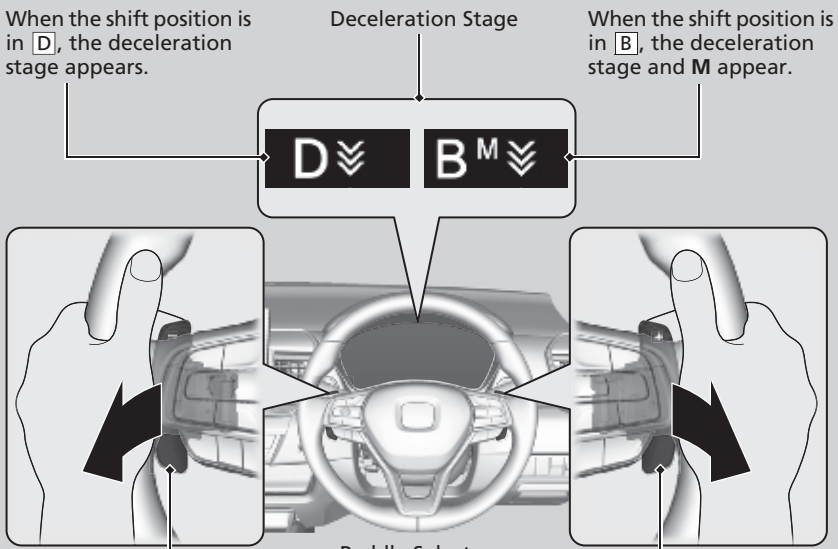
Rapidly increasing the deceleration rate by quickly shifting the deceleration paddle selector can cause the tyres to skid, resulting in a crash that could injure or kill someone.

Always maintain a reasonable rate of deceleration.

If you pull back the right and left paddle selector at the same time, the deceleration stage may not change.

Continued

When to use



Deceleration Paddle Selector

In the following situations, the stage may not change and the stage icon will blink even if you pull back the selector. The deceleration stage may decrease or cancel automatically:

- The High Voltage battery is fully charged or its temperature is too cold or too hot.
- The speed of the vehicle is beyond the deceleration range with the shift position is in D.
- Hybrid system protection is needed.
- The paddle selector is operated while your vehicle is stopped automatically by ACC with Low Speed Follow.

If either paddle selector is operated while driving, ACC with Low Speed Follow will cancel automatically.

■ **When the shift position is in** D

If you pull back the paddle selector, the rate of deceleration will change temporarily, and the stage will appear in the gauge.

When you want to cancel the deceleration paddle selector, pull the + selector (right side) for a few seconds.

The deceleration paddle selector will cancel automatically and deceleration stage in the gauge disappear when you drive with constant speed, situations of acceleration and decelerate just before stopping your vehicle.

■ **When the shift position is in** B

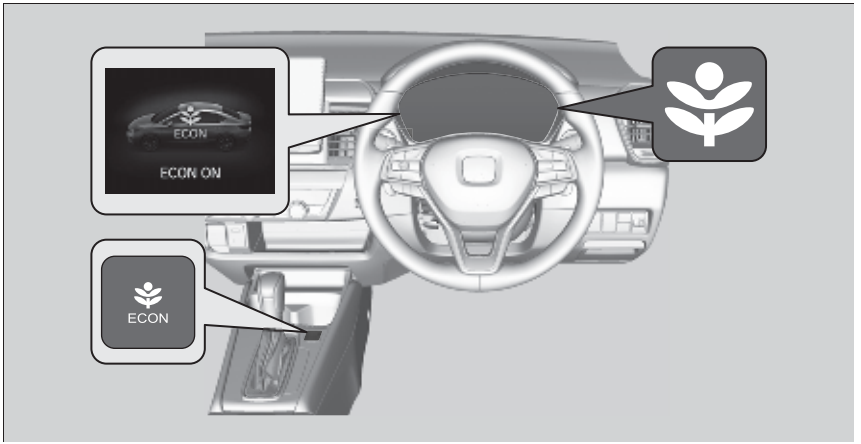
If you pull back the paddle selector, the rate of deceleration will change and the stage along with **M** will appear in the gauge. The deceleration stage is not cancel automatically while the shift position is in B.

When you want to cancel the deceleration paddle selector, move the shift position from B to D, or pull the + selector (right side) for a few seconds. When cancelled, deceleration stage in the gauge disappear.

ECON Mode

The ECON mode limits output to facilitate fuel-efficient driving.

▶ To turn the ECON mode ON and OFF, press the **ECON** button.



ECON Mode

While in ECON mode, the climate control system will be less effective and the vehicle slower to accelerate.

The mode may not be able to be changed under some driving conditions.

If there is a vehicle system failure, a message will also appear on the driver information interface, and you cannot change the mode.

Acoustic Vehicle Alerting System

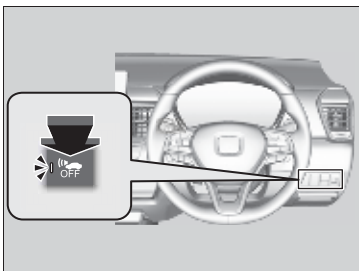
Models with Acoustic Vehicle Alerting System OFF Button

Alerts pedestrians when a vehicle is propelled solely by electricity, approaching at speeds around 20 km/h or less.

Models without Acoustic Vehicle Alerting System OFF Button

Alerts pedestrians when a vehicle is propelled solely by electricity, approaching at speeds around 25 km/h or less.

■ Acoustic Vehicle Alerting System OFF Button*



Press the button to turn the system on and off.

▶ The indicator in the button comes on when the system is off.

The system is turned on every time you turn the power system on, even if you turned it off the last time you drove the vehicle.

Acoustic Vehicle Alerting System OFF Button*

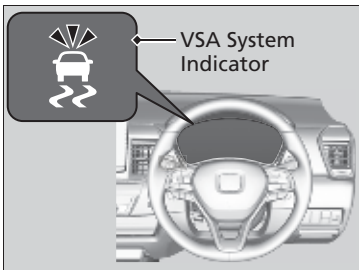
The pause function of the Acoustic Vehicle Alerting System shall not be used unless for an obvious lack of necessity to emit sound for alert in the surrounding area and that it is certain that there are no pedestrians within the short distance.

* Not available on all models

Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) System

VSA helps to stabilise the vehicle during cornering if the vehicle turns more or less than what was intended. It also assists in maintaining traction on slippery surfaces. It does so by regulating engine and motor output and selectively applying the brakes.

■ VSA Operation



When VSA activates, you may notice that the engine and motor do not respond to the accelerator. You may also notice some noise from the hydraulic brake system. You will also see the indicator blink.

Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) System

The VSA may not function properly if tyre type and size are mixed. Make sure to use the same size and type of tyre, and the air pressures as specified.

When the VSA system indicator comes on and stays on while driving, there may be a problem with the system. While this may not interfere with normal driving, have your vehicle checked by a dealer immediately.

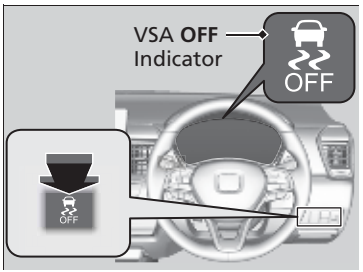
VSA cannot enhance stability in all driving situations and does not control the entire braking system. You still need to drive and corner at speeds appropriate for the conditions and always leave a sufficient margin of safety.

The main function of the VSA system is generally known as Electronic Stability Control (ESC). The system also includes a traction control function.

The Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow, vehicle stability assist (VSA) system, vehicle stability assist (VSA) **OFF**, safety support, low tyre pressure/deflation warning system*, Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS), and Road Departure Mitigation indicator may come on in amber along with a message in the driver information interface when you set the power mode to ON after reconnecting the 12-volt battery.
Drive a short distance at more than 20 km/h. Each indicator should go off. If any do not, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

* Not available on all models

VSA On and Off



This button is on the driver side control panel. To partially disable VSA functionality/features, press and hold it until you hear a beep.

Your vehicle will have normal braking and cornering ability, but traction control function will be less effective.

To restore VSA functionality/features, press the (VSA **OFF**) button until you hear a beep.

VSA is turned on every time you turn the power system on, even if you turned it off the last time you drove the vehicle.

Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) System

In certain unusual conditions when your vehicle gets stuck in shallow mud or fresh snow, it may be easier to free it with the VSA temporarily switched off.

When the (VSA **OFF**) button is pressed, the traction control function becomes less effective. This allows for the wheels to spin more freely at low speed. You should only attempt to free your vehicle with the VSA off if you are not able to free it when the VSA is on.

Immediately after freeing your vehicle, be sure to switch VSA on again. We do not recommend driving your vehicle with the VSA system switched off.

You may hear a motor sound coming from the engine compartment while system checks are being performed immediately after turning the power system on or while driving. This is normal.

Agile Handling Assist

Lightly brakes the front wheels, as needed, when you turn the steering wheel, and helps support the vehicle's stability and performance during cornering.

Agile Handling Assist

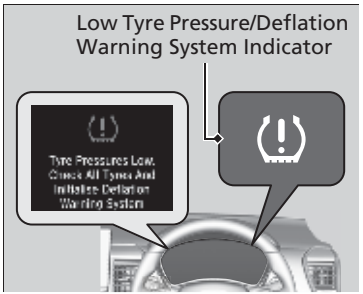
The agile handling assist cannot enhance stability in all driving situations. You still need to drive and corner at speeds appropriate for the conditions and always leave a sufficient margin of safety.

When the VSA system indicator comes on and stays on while driving, the agile handling assist does not activate.

You may hear a sound coming from the engine compartment while the agile handling assist is activated. This is normal.

Deflation Warning System*

Instead of directly measuring the pressure in each tyre, the deflation warning system on this vehicle monitors and compares the rolling radius and rotational characteristics of each wheel and tyre while you are driving to determine if one or more tyres are significantly under-inflated.



This will cause the low tyre pressure/deflation warning system indicator to come on and a message to appear on the driver information interface.

Deflation Warning System*

The system does not monitor the tyres when driving at low speed.

Conditions such as low ambient temperature and altitude change directly affect tyre pressure and can trigger the low tyre pressure/deflation warning system indicator to come on.

Tyre pressure checked and inflated in:
- Warm weather can become under-inflated in colder weather.
- Cold weather can become overinflated in warmer weather.

The low tyre pressure/deflation warning system indicator will not come on as a result of overinflation.

The deflation warning system may not function properly if tyre type and size are mixed.
Make sure to use the same size and type of tyre.
Checking and Maintaining Tyres P. 349

The low tyre pressure/deflation warning system indicator may come on with a delay or may not come on at all when:
- You rapidly accelerate, decelerate, or turn the steering wheel.
- You drive on snowy or slippery roads.
- Tyre chains are used.
- The tyre loses air pressure rapidly.

* Not available on all models

Continued

Deflation Warning System*

The low tyre pressure/deflation warning system indicator may come on under the following conditions:

- A compact spare tyre is used.
- Tyre chains are used.

The Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow, vehicle stability assist (VSA) system, vehicle stability assist (VSA) **OFF**, safety support, low tyre pressure/deflation warning system, Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS), and Road Departure Mitigation indicator may come on in amber along with a message in the driver information interface when you set the power mode to ON after reconnecting the 12-volt battery.
Drive a short distance at more than 20 km/h. Each indicator should go off. If any do not, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

 * Not available on all models

Deflation Warning System Initialisation

You must start deflation warning system initialisation every time you:
- Adjust the pressure in one or more tyres.
- Rotate the tyres.
- Replace one or more tyres.

Before initialising the deflation warning system:
- Set the cold tyre pressure in all four tyres.
  Checking Tyres P. 349

Make sure:
- The vehicle is at a complete stop.
- The shift position is in P.
- The power mode is in ON.

Deflation Warning System Initialisation

Deflation warning system cannot be initialised if a compact spare tyre is installed.

The initialisation process requires approximately 30 minutes of cumulative driving at speeds between 40–100 km/h.

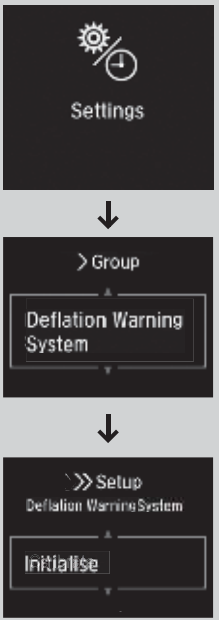
During this period, if the power mode is set to ON and the vehicle is not moved within 45 seconds, you may notice the low tyre pressure/deflation warning system indicator comes on briefly. This is normal and indicates that the initialisation process is not yet complete.

If the tyre chains are installed, remove them before initialising the deflation warning system.

If the low tyre pressure/deflation warning system indicator comes on even when the properly inflated specified regular tyres are installed, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

We recommend that the tyres be replaced with the same brand, model, and size as the originals. Ask a dealer for details.

Continued



You can initialise the system from the customized features on the driver information interface.

1. Press (home) button.
2. Roll the left selector wheel controls to select , then push the left selector wheel.
   ▶ appears on the display.
3. Roll the left selector wheel controls to select **Deflation Warning System**, then push the left selector wheel.
   ▶ The display switches to the customization setup screen, where you can select **Cancel** or **Initialise**.
4. Roll the left selector wheel controls to select **Initialise**, then push the left selector wheel.
   ▶ **Completed** screen appears, then the display returns to the customization setup screen.

- If the **Failed** message appears, repeat steps 3 – 4.
- The initialisation process finishes automatically.

High Voltage Battery

The High Voltage battery gradually discharges even if the vehicle is not in use. As a result, if your vehicle is parked for an extended period of time, the battery charge level will become low. Extended periods of time at a low state of charge will shorten battery life. To maintain the battery state of charge, drive your vehicle for more than 30 minutes at least once every three months.

Extreme high temperatures can affect the battery life. You can minimise the effects by parking the vehicle in the shade during the summer.

High Voltage Battery

Be careful not to let the High Voltage battery drain too much. If the battery level becomes close to zero, it will make it impossible to start the power system.

Assists with functions such as acceleration, braking, and steering in order to reduce the burden on the driver, as well as help to avoid or reduce the severity of collisions.

Honda SENSING has the following functions:

■ The functions that do not require switch operations to activate

- Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS) P. 245
- Road Departure Mitigation System P. 259
- Lead Car Departure Notification System* P. 295
- Auto High-Beam P. 170
- Parking Sensor System* P. 313

■ The functions that require switch operations to activate

- Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow P. 266
- Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS) P. 284

Honda SENSING

Make sure that all the tyres are of the same specified size, type, and brand, and that they are evenly worn. If you use tyres of different sizes, types, brands, or degree of wear, the system may not work properly.

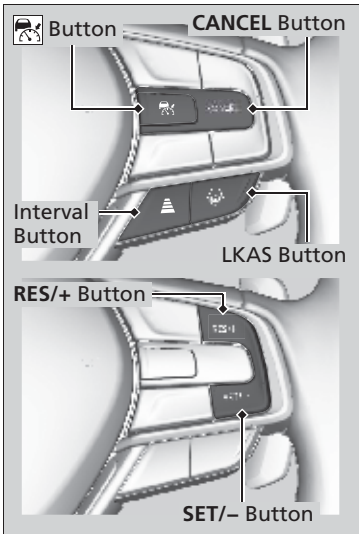
Do not modify the suspension. Altering the height of the vehicle may prevent the system from working properly.

Thai models

CAUTION: This equipment should be operated keeping the radiator at least 20 cm or more away from person's body (excluding extremities: hands, wrists, feet and ankles).
This telecommunication equipment conforms to NTC technical requirement.
This telecommunication equipment has EMF radiation conforms to NTC EMF exposure standard.

* Not available on all models

Operation Switches for the Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow/Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS)



■ Button

Press to activate standby mode for ACC with Low Speed Follow.
Or press to cancel the system.

■ LKAS Button

Press to activate standby mode for LKAS.
Or press to cancel the system.

■ RES/+ and SET/– Buttons

Press **RES/+** button to set or resume the ACC with Low Speed Follow or increase the vehicle speed.
Press **SET/–** button to set the ACC with Low Speed Follow or decrease the vehicle speed.

■ Interval Button

Press to change the ACC with Low Speed Follow following-interval.

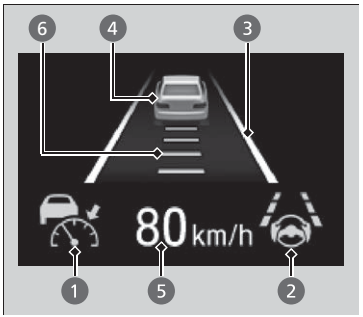
■ CANCEL Button

Press to cancel ACC with Low Speed Follow.

Continued

■ Gauge Content

You can see the current state of ACC with Low Speed Follow and LKAS.



❶ Indicates that ACC with Low Speed Follow is ready to be activated.
- Green: The system is on.
- White: The system is standby.
- Amber: There is a problem with the system.

❷ Indicates that LKAS is ready to be activated.
- Green: The system is operating.
- White: The system is standby.
- Amber: There is a problem with the system.

❸ Indicates that LKAS is activated and whether or not traffic lane lines are detected.
- Green lines: The system is operating.
- White lines: Traffic lane lines are detected.
- Amber line: Lane departure is detected.

❹ Indicates whether or not ACC with Low Speed Follow detected the vehicle ahead.

❺ Indicates that ACC with Low Speed Follow shows the set vehicle speed.
- White: Set Vehicle Speed
- Grey: Prior Set Speed

❻ Indicates that ACC with Low Speed Follow shows the set vehicle interval.

Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS)

The system can assist you when it determines there is a possibility of your vehicle colliding with a vehicle (including motorcycles) ahead from behind, an oncoming vehicle in front, a vehicle approaching from the side, a pedestrian, or someone riding a bicycle (moving bicycle). The CMBS is designed to alert you when the potential for a collision is determined, as well as assist in reducing speed, avoiding collisions, and reducing collision severity.

Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS)

Important Safety Reminder

The CMBS is designed to reduce the severity of an unavoidable collision. It does not prevent collisions nor stop the vehicle automatically. It is still your responsibility to operate the brake pedal and steering wheel appropriately according to the driving conditions.

The CMBS may not activate or may not detect a vehicle in front of your vehicle under certain conditions:

CMBS Conditions and Limitations P. 250

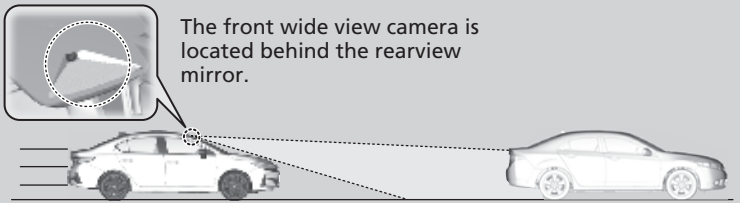
You can read about handling information for the front wide view camera equipped with this system.

Front Wide View Camera P. 299

Continued

■ How the system works

When to use



The system starts monitoring the roadway ahead when your vehicle speed is about 5 km/h or above and will search for a vehicle (including motorcycles), pedestrian, or moving bicycle in front of you.

The CMBS activates when:

- The speed difference between your vehicle and a vehicle (including motorcycles), pedestrian, or moving bicycle detected in front of you becomes about 5 km/h and over with a chance of a collision.
- Your vehicle drives at about 30 km/h or less and there is a chance of a frontal collision with a detected oncoming vehicle (including motorcycles), pedestrian, or moving bicycle when you turn right at an intersection.
- Your vehicle speed is about 100 km/h or less and the system determines there is a chance of a collision with:

- An oncoming or stationary vehicle detected in front of you.
- A pedestrian or moving bicycle detected in front of you.
- A vehicle approaching from the side in front of you.

The CMBS will be cancelled when your vehicle stops or the system determines there no longer is the potential for a collision.
The CMBS may also be cancelled when a driver operates the steering wheel and the brake or accelerator pedal to avoid a collision.

How the system works

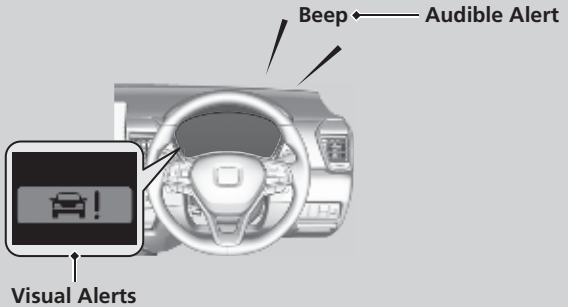
The front wide view camera in the CMBS is also designed to detect pedestrians.
However, this pedestrian detection feature may not activate or may not detect a pedestrian in front of your vehicle under certain conditions.
Refer to the ones indicating the pedestrian detection limitations from the list.

CMBS Conditions and Limitations P. 250

■ **When the system activates**

The system provides visual and audible alerts of a possible collision, and stops if the collision is avoided.

▶ Take appropriate action to prevent a collision (apply the brakes, change lanes, etc.)



You can change the distance (**Far**/**Normal**/**Near**) between vehicles at which the system's earliest collision alert will come on.

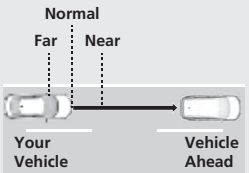
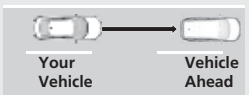
➡ **Settings** P. 128

When in **Far**, visual and audible alerts come on at a longer distance from a vehicle ahead than in **Normal** setting, and in **Near**, at a shorter distance than in **Normal**.

Continued

■ Collision Alert Stages

The system has three alert stages for a possible collision. However, depending on circumstances, the CMBS may not go through all of the stages before initiating the last stage.

Distance between vehicles		CMBS		
		The sensors detect a vehicle	Audible & Visual WARNINGS	Braking
Stage one		There is a risk of a collision with the vehicle ahead of you.	The visual alert flashes. If the distance between your vehicle and the vehicle in front of you continues to decrease, the audible alert sounds in addition to the visual alert flashing. ▶ The collision warning distance can be changed. ➡ **Settings** P. 128	—
Stage two		The risk of a collision has increased, time to respond is reduced.	Visual and audible alerts.	Lightly applied
Stage three		The CMBS determines that a collision is unavoidable.		Forcefully applied

CMBS On and Off

You can turn the system on and off using the driver information interface.

Switching the Display P. 116
Safety Support P. 124

The CMBS is turned on every time you turn the power system on, even if you turned it off the last time you drove the vehicle.

Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS)

You cannot turn the CMBS off while driving.

The CMBS may automatically shut off, and the safety support indicator (amber) and Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS) indicator (amber) will come and stay on under certain conditions.

CMBS Conditions and Limitations P. 250

The CMBS is not activated for about 15 seconds after the power system is turned on.

When the CMBS is activated, it will continue to operate even if the accelerator pedal is partially depressed. However, it will be cancelled if the accelerator pedal is fully depressed.

The Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow, vehicle stability assist (VSA) system, vehicle stability assist (VSA) **OFF**, safety support, low tyre pressure/deflation warning system*, Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS), and Road Departure Mitigation indicator may come on in amber along with a message in the driver information interface when you set the power mode to ON after reconnecting the 12-volt battery.
Drive a short distance at more than 20 km/h. Each indicator should go off. If any do not, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

* Not available on all models

Continued

■ CMBS Conditions and Limitations

In the following situations, the front wide view camera may be unable to correctly detect vehicles, pedestrians, moving bicycles, or road conditions, potentially causing the CMBS to operate improperly.

Front Wide View Camera P. 299

■ Environmental conditions

- Driving in bad weather (rain, fog, snow, etc.).
- Sudden changes between light and dark, such as the entrance or exit of a tunnel or the shadows of trees, buildings, etc.
- There is little contrast between objects and the background.
- Driving into low sunlight (e.g., at dawn or dusk).
- Strong light is reflected onto the vehicles (including motorcycles), pedestrians, moving bicycles, or road surfaces.
- Roadway objects or structures are misinterpreted as vehicles and pedestrians.
- Water is sprayed by or snow blown from a vehicle ahead.
- Driving at night or in a dark place such as a tunnel (due to low-light conditions, vehicles [including motorcycles], pedestrians, or moving bicycles may not be illuminated).

■ Roadway conditions

- Driving on a snowy or wet roadway (obscured lane marking, vehicle tracks, reflected lights, road spray, high contrast).
- Driving on curvy, winding, or undulating roads.
- The road is hilly or the vehicle is approaching the crest of a hill.
- Your vehicle is strongly shaken on uneven road surfaces.

CMBS Conditions and Limitations

Have your vehicle checked by a dealer if you find any unusual behaviour of the system (e.g., the warning message appears too frequently).

■ **Vehicle conditions**

- Tyre chains* are installed.
- Driving at night or in a dark place (e.g., a tunnel) with the headlights off.
- The front wide view camera is obstructed by dirt, fog, rain, mud, wet snow, accessories, decals, stickers, film, etc.
- There is residue on the windscreen from the windscreen wipers.
- When lighting is weak due to dirt covering the headlight lenses, or there is poor visibility in a dark place due to the headlights being improperly adjusted.
- An abnormal tyre or wheel condition (incorrect sizes, varied sizes or construction, improperly inflated, compact spare tyre*, etc.).
- The vehicle is tilted due to heavy luggage in the boot or rear seats.
- The suspension has been modified.
- Driving with the parking brake applied.
- Camera vision is blocked by drops of water from the window washer, or by the wiper blades.
- Operation of the vehicle is unstable due to a slippery road, etc.

* Not available on all models

Continued

■ **Examples of limitations on the correct detection of the front wide view camera due to the condition of the vehicle ahead of you, oncoming vehicles, vehicles approaching from the side, pedestrians, or moving bicycles**

- The distance between your vehicle and the vehicle (including motorcycles) ahead of you, oncoming vehicle, vehicle approaching from the side, pedestrian, or moving bicycle ahead of you is too short.
- The vehicle (including motorcycles) ahead of you, oncoming vehicle, vehicle approaching from the side, pedestrian, or moving bicycle suddenly cuts in front of or jumps out in front of you.
- A bicycle or sideways-facing vehicle is stopped.
- The oncoming vehicle or vehicle (including motorcycles) ahead of you is sideways or facing diagonally.
- When the vehicle (including motorcycles) ahead of you, oncoming vehicle, vehicle approaching from the side, pedestrian, or moving bicycle blends in with the background, preventing the system from recognising them.
- When several pedestrians are moving ahead of you in a group.
- When several bicycles are moving ahead of you in a group.
- When a pedestrian or moving bicycle crosses the road too quickly.
- A pedestrian or moving bicycle approaches from the opposite direction.
- The headlights of the vehicle ahead of you or oncoming vehicle are lit on one side or not lit on either side in a dark place.
- When part of a pedestrian (heads, limbs, etc.) is hidden by a carried object.
- When a pedestrian is bent over or squatting, when their hands are raised, or they are running.
- When the pedestrian is shorter than about 1 metre or taller than about 2 metres in height.
- When the pedestrian is pushing a stroller or bicycle.
- A vehicle is approaching diagonally from the side.

- A specially-shaped vehicle (such as a tank lorry or a lorry without a load) is approaching from the side.
- A vehicle approaching from the side is driving on a curve or hill.

Continued

■ **Examples of other limitations on detection or system operation**

- When the vehicle (including motorcycles) ahead of you is a small motorcycle, motorcycle with a sidecar, wheelchair, three-wheeled vehicle*, or other specially shaped vehicle.
- When a vehicle is lower in the rear than the front such as lorries that are not carrying a load, or a narrow vehicle.
- When the vehicle (including motorcycles) ahead of you, oncoming vehicle, pedestrian, or moving bicycle is not in front of the vehicle.
- The speed difference between your vehicle and the vehicle (including motorcycles) ahead of you, oncoming vehicle, pedestrian, or moving bicycle is significantly large.
- The speed difference between your vehicle and a vehicle (including motorcycles), pedestrian, or moving bicycle approaching from the side is significantly large.
- When the vehicle (including motorcycles) or moving bicycle in front of you slows suddenly.
- When the driver operates the brake pedal and steering wheel to avoid a collision.
- When you approach the vehicle (including motorcycles) ahead of you, oncoming vehicle, pedestrians, or moving bicycles while accelerating rapidly or operating the steering wheel (except when turning right at an intersection etc.)*1.
- When the moving bicycle is a child-sized bicycle, folding bicycle, three-wheeler or other bicycle with small tyres, or a long bicycle like a tandem bicycle.
- When the front wide view camera cannot correctly identify the shape of the vehicle (including motorcycles) ahead of you, oncoming vehicle, vehicle approaching from the side, pedestrian, or moving bicycle.
- When a vehicle (including motorcycles) that has an extremely high minimum ground clearance is ahead of you or approaching from the side.

*1 : When there is a possibility of a frontal collision with the oncoming vehicle while turning right, the CMBS is activated. However, it may not be activated if you suddenly turn the steering wheel.

* Not available on all models

■ **Automatic shutoff**

The CMBS may automatically shut itself off and the safety support indicator (amber) and Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS) indicator (amber) come and stay on when:

- You drive off-road or on a mountain road, or curved and winding road for an extended period.
- Driving in bad weather (rain, fog, snow, etc.).
- Driving with the parking brake applied.
- The front wide view camera temperature gets too high.
- The front wide view camera is obstructed by dirt, fog, rain, mud, wet snow, accessories, decals, stickers, film, etc.
- An abnormal tyre condition is detected (incorrect tyre size, flat tyre, etc.).

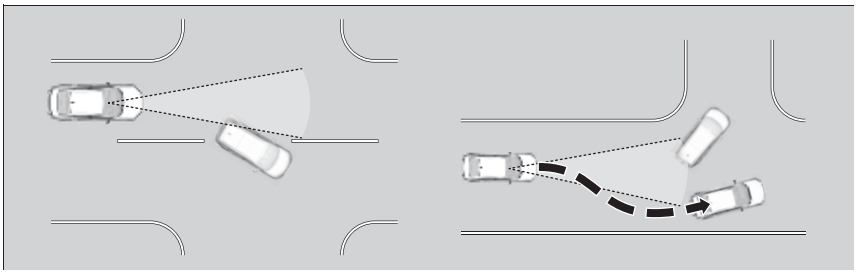
Once the conditions that caused the CMBS to shut off improve or are addressed (e.g., cleaning), the system comes back on.

Continued

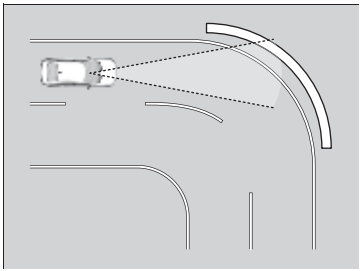
With Little Chance of a Collision

Even if there is little chance of a collision, the CMBS may activate under the following conditions.
Also, the system may activate if it detects a possibility of collision with pedestrians, moving bicycles, or vehicles.

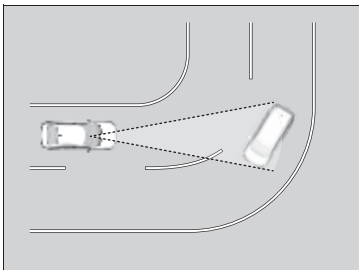
- Your vehicle approaches or passes another vehicle that is making a left or right turn.
- Your vehicle approaches another vehicle ahead of you and you change lanes to pass.



- When your vehicle approaches vehicles, pedestrians, or moving bicycles.
- When vehicles, pedestrians, or moving bicycles are passing in front of you.
- When you drive under a low structure or through a narrow gate at high speed.
- When there are traffic signs or structures such as guard rails beside the road along a curve.



- When driving through curves, your vehicle comes to a point where the oncoming vehicle is right in front of you.



- When approaching stationary vehicles or walls, such as when parking.

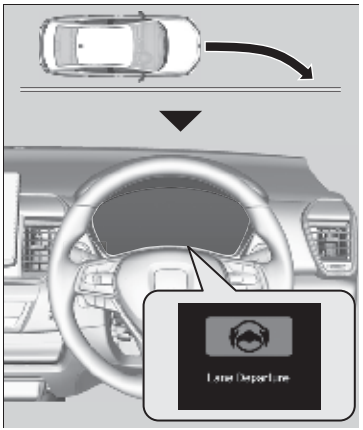
Continued

- A vehicle approaches from the side as it is driving through a curve.
- You pass by a vehicle (including motorcycles), pedestrian, or bicycle that is turning left or right.
- You pass in front of a vehicle (including motorcycles), pedestrian, or bicycle that is approaching from the side.
- A vehicle (including motorcycles), pedestrian, or bicycle turns left or right while approaching your vehicle from the side.
- You attempt to pass in front of a vehicle (including motorcycles) or bicycle while you are turning left or right.
- A vehicle (including motorcycles) or bicycle is attempting to pass in front of your vehicle while you are turning left or right.
- A vehicle (including motorcycles), pedestrian, or bicycle enters the path of your vehicle and stops in front of you.
- When you are turning left or right, a crossing pedestrian enters the path of your vehicle and stops in front of you.
- You pass close by the side of a vehicle parked on the street.

Road Departure Mitigation System

Alerts and helps to assist you when the system detects a possibility of your vehicle unintentionally crossing over detected lane markings and/or leaving the roadway altogether.

How the System Works



The front camera located behind the rearview mirror monitors left and right lane markings (in white or yellow). If your vehicle is getting too close to detected lane markings without a turn signal activated, the system, in addition to a visual alert, applies steering torque and alerts you with rapid vibrations on the steering wheel, to help you remain within the detected lane.

Settings P. 128

As a visual alert, the **Lane Departure** message appears on the driver information interface.

The system cancels assisting operations when you turn the steering wheel to avoid crossing over detected lane markings.

Road Departure Mitigation System

Important Safety Reminder

Like all assistance systems, the Road Departure Mitigation system has limitations.

Overreliance on the Road Departure Mitigation system may result in a collision. It is always your responsibility to keep the vehicle within your driving lane.

The Road Departure Mitigation system only alerts you when lane drift is detected without a turn signal in use. The Road Departure Mitigation system may not detect all lane markings or lane or roadway departures; accuracy will vary based on weather, speed and lane marker condition. It is always your responsibility to safely operate the vehicle and avoid collisions.

The Road Departure Mitigation system is not activated for about 15 seconds after the power system is turned on.

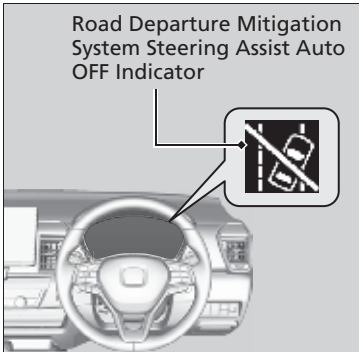
You can read about handling information for the camera equipped with this system.

Front Wide View Camera P. 299

The Road Departure Mitigation system may not work properly or may work improperly under the certain conditions:

Road Departure Mitigation System Conditions and Limitations P. 263

Continued



If the system operates several times without detecting driver response, the system beeps to alert you. After that, the Road Departure Mitigation System Steering Assist Auto OFF indicator comes on, the Road Departure Mitigation steering assist is temporarily stopped, and the system will only alert you with the warning sound.

After a few minutes, the Road Departure Mitigation System Steering Assist Auto OFF indicator goes off and the Road Departure Mitigation system is fully restored.

Road Departure Mitigation System

There are times when you may not notice Road Departure Mitigation system functions due to your operation of the vehicle, or road surface conditions.

You can change the settings for the Road Departure Mitigation system.
If LKAS is off, the message below may appear if the system has determined that there is a possibility of your vehicle crossing over detected lane markings.

Settings P. 128



How the System Activates

The system activates when all of the following conditions are met:

- The lane markings are white (yellow).
- The vehicle is on a straight or slightly curved road.
- The turn signals are off.
- The system makes a determination that the driver is not actively accelerating, braking, or steering.
- The vehicle is travelling between about 72 and 180 km/h.

How the System Activates

The Road Departure Mitigation system may automatically shut off and the safety support indicator (amber) and Road Departure Mitigation indicator (amber) come and stay on.

Indicators P. 96

The Road Departure Mitigation system function can be impacted when the vehicle is:

- Driven on the inside edge of a curve, or outside of a lane.
- Driven in a narrow lane.

Continued

■ Road Departure Mitigation System On and Off

You can turn the system on and off using the driver information interface.

Switching the Display P. 116
Safety Support P. 124

The Road Departure Mitigation system is in the previously selected on or off setting each time you turn the power system on.

Road Departure Mitigation System On and Off

Except Indian, Bhutanese, Sri Lankan and Nepalese models

When you have selected **Warning Only**, the system does not operate the steering wheel.

Settings P. 128

All models

The Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow, vehicle stability assist (VSA) system, vehicle stability assist (VSA) **OFF**, safety support, low tyre pressure/deflation warning system*, Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS), and Road Departure Mitigation indicator may come on in amber along with a message in the driver information interface when you set the power mode to ON after reconnecting the 12-volt battery.

Drive a short distance at more than 20 km/h. Each indicator should go off. If any do not, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

* Not available on all models

Road Departure Mitigation System Conditions and Limitations

The system may not properly detect lane markings and the position of your vehicle under certain conditions. Some examples of these conditions are listed below.

Environmental conditions

- There is little contrast between lane lines and the roadway surface.
- Driving in bad weather (rain, fog, snow, etc.).
- Driving on a snowy or wet roadway.
- Driving into low sunlight (e.g., at dawn or dusk).
- Shadows of adjacent objects (trees, buildings, guard rails, vehicles, etc.) are parallel to white (or yellow) lines.
- Sudden changes between light and dark, such as the entrance or exit of a tunnel or the shadows of trees, buildings, etc.
- Strong light is reflected onto the roadway.
- Driving at night or in a dark place such as a tunnel (due to low-light conditions, lane lines, the road surface, or oncoming vehicles may not be illuminated).
- The distance between your vehicle and the vehicle ahead of you is too short, and lane lines and the road surface are not visible.

Continued

■ **Roadway conditions**

- Driving on a road with temporary lane markings.
- Faint, multiple, or varied lane markings are visible on the roadway due to road repairs or deteriorated lane markings.
- The roadway has merging, split, or crossing lines, such as at an intersection or crosswalk.
- The lane markings are extremely narrow, wide, or changing.
- Part of the lane markings are hidden by an object, such as a vehicle.
- The road is hilly or the vehicle is approaching the crest of a hill.
- Your vehicle is strongly shaken on uneven road surfaces.
- When objects on the road (curb, guard rail, pylons, etc.) are recognised as white (or yellow) lines.
- Driving on rough or unpaved roads, or over bumpy surfaces.
- Driving on roads with double lane lines.
- Driving on snowy or slippery roads.
- Passing through a junction.
- The pavement is only partially visible due to snow or puddles on the road.
- Driving on unpaved or rutted roads.
- White (or yellow) lines are not recognised correctly due to road conditions such as curves, twists, or hills.

■ **Vehicle conditions**

- When lighting is weak due to dirt covering the headlight lenses, or there is poor visibility in a dark place due to the headlights being improperly adjusted.
- The front of the camera is obstructed by dirt, fog, rain, mud, wet snow, accessories, decals, stickers, film, etc.
- Driving at night or in a dark place (e.g., a tunnel) with the headlights off.
- When the driver operates the brake pedal and steering wheel.
- There is residue on the windscreen from the windscreen wipers.
- An abnormal tyre or wheel condition (incorrect sizes, varied sizes or construction, improperly inflated, compact spare tyre*, etc.).
- The vehicle is tilted due to heavy luggage in the boot or rear seats.
- Tyre chains* are installed.
- The suspension has been modified.

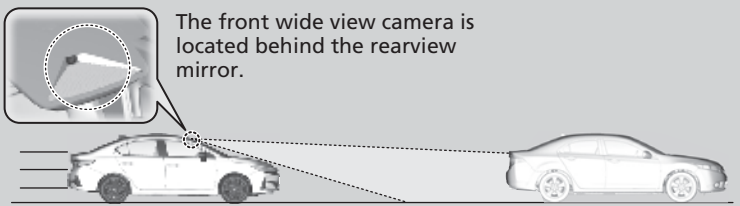
* Not available on all models

Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow

Helps to maintain a constant vehicle speed and a set following-interval behind a vehicle detected ahead of yours and, if the detected vehicle comes to a stop, can decelerate and stop your vehicle, without you having to keep your foot on the brake or the accelerator.

When ACC with Low Speed Follow slows your vehicle by applying the brakes, your vehicle's brake lights will illuminate.

When to use



■ Vehicle speed for ACC with Low Speed Follow: **A vehicle is detected ahead within ACC with Low Speed Follow range** – ACC with Low Speed Follow operates at speeds up to 180 km/h.
No vehicle is detected within ACC with Low Speed Follow range – ACC with Low Speed Follow operates at the speed of 30 km/h or above.

■ Shift position for ACC with Low Speed Follow: In D.

Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow

⚠WARNING

Improper use of ACC with Low Speed Follow can lead to a crash.

Use ACC with Low Speed Follow only when driving on motorways and in good road and weather conditions.

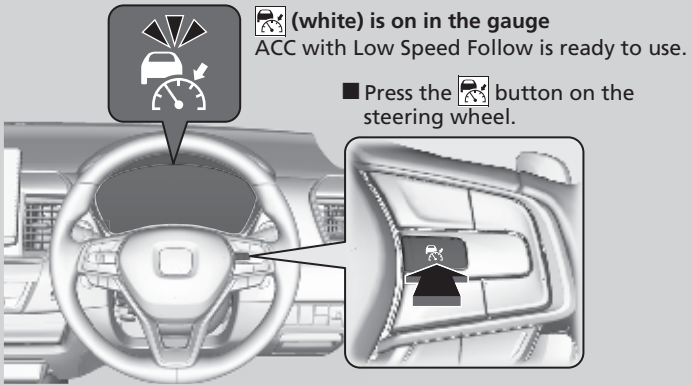
⚠WARNING

ACC with Low Speed Follow has limited braking capability and may not stop your vehicle in time to avoid a collision with a vehicle that quickly stops in front of you.

Always be prepared to apply the brake pedal if the conditions require.

■ How to activate the system

How to use



Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow

⚠WARNING

Exiting a vehicle that has been stopped while the ACC with Low Speed Follow system is operating can result in the vehicle moving without operator control.

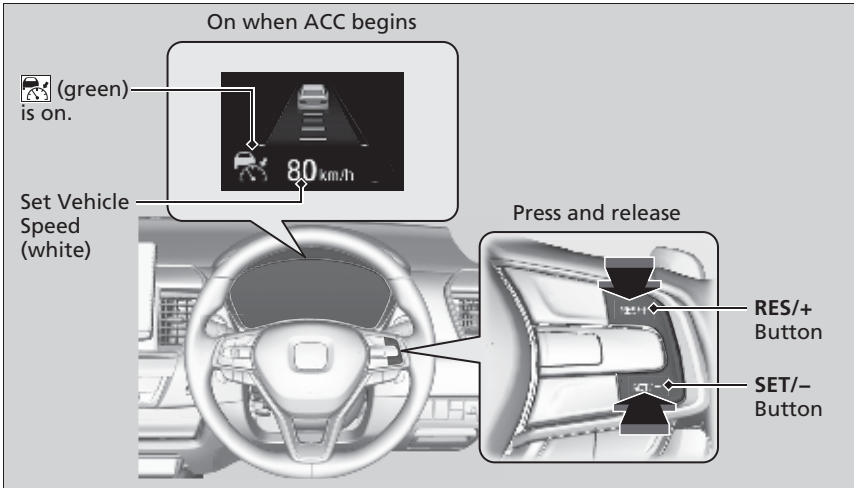
A vehicle that moves without operator control can cause a crash, resulting in serious injury or death.

Never exit a vehicle when the vehicle is stopped by ACC with Low Speed Follow.

Important Reminder
As with any system, there are limits to ACC with Low Speed Follow. Use the brake pedal whenever necessary, and always keep a safe interval between your vehicle and other vehicles.

Continued

To Set the Vehicle Speed



When driving at about 30 km/h or above: Take your foot off the pedal and press the **RES/+** or **SET/–** button when you reach the desired speed. The moment you release the **RES/+** or **SET/–** button, the set speed is fixed, and ACC with Low Speed Follow begins.

When driving slower than about 30 km/h: If the vehicle is moving and the brake pedal is not depressed, pressing the switch fixes the set speed to about 30 km/h regardless of current vehicle speed. If your vehicle is stationary, you can set the vehicle speed even with the brake pedal depressed.

To Set the Vehicle Speed

You can read about handling information for the camera equipped with this system.

Front Wide View Camera P. 299

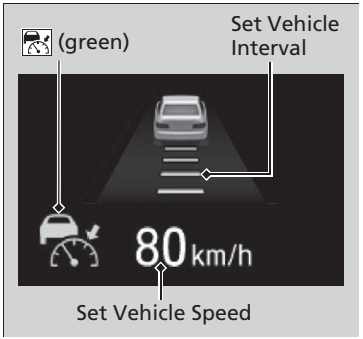
ACC with Low Speed Follow may not work properly under certain conditions.

ACC with Low Speed Follow Conditions and Limitations P. 275

When not using ACC with Low Speed Follow: Turn off adaptive cruise by pressing the button.

Do not use ACC with Low Speed Follow under the following conditions:

- On roads with frequent lane change or continuous stop and go traffic, ACC with Low Speed Follow cannot keep an appropriate distance between your vehicle and the vehicle ahead of you.
- On roads with sharp turns.
- On roads with steep downhill sections, as the set vehicle speed can be exceeded by coasting. In such cases, ACC with Low Speed Follow will not apply the brakes to maintain the set speed.
- On roads with toll collection facilities or other objects between lanes of traffic, or in parking areas, or facilities with drive through access.
- On roads with bad weather (rain, fog, snow, etc.), ACC with Low Speed Follow may not detect the distance between your vehicle and the vehicle ahead of you properly.
- On roads with slippery or icy surfaces. The wheels may spin out and your vehicle may lose the control on the condition.



When ACC with Low Speed Follow starts operating, the vehicle icon, interval bars, and set speed appear on the gauge.

To Set the Vehicle Speed

The Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow, vehicle stability assist (VSA) system, vehicle stability assist (VSA) **OFF**, safety support, low tyre pressure/deflation warning system*, Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS), and Road Departure Mitigation indicator may come on in amber along with a message in the driver information interface when you set the power mode to ON after reconnecting the 12-volt battery.
Drive a short distance at more than 20 km/h. Each indicator should go off. If any do not, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

* Not available on all models

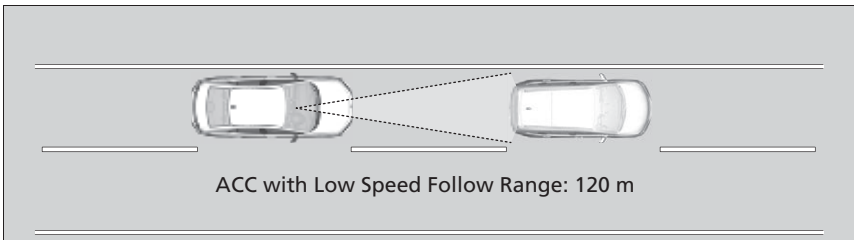
Continued

When in Operation

There is a vehicle ahead

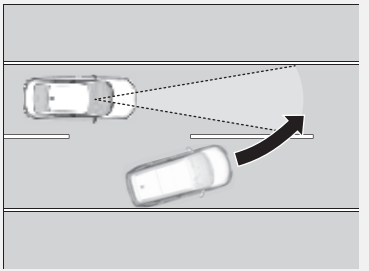
ACC with Low Speed Follow monitors if a vehicle ahead of you enters the ACC with Low Speed Follow range. If a vehicle is detected doing so, the ACC with Low Speed Follow system maintains or decelerates your vehicle's set speed in order to keep the vehicle's set following-interval from the vehicle ahead.

To Set or Change Following-interval P. 280

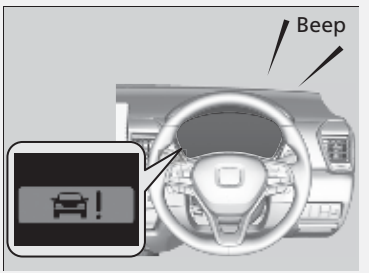


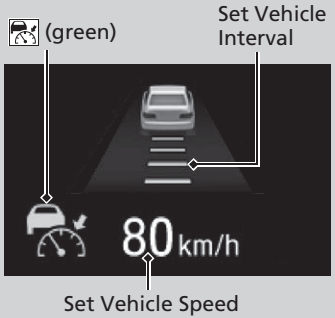
When in Operation

If the vehicle ahead of you slows down abruptly, or if another vehicle cuts in front of you, the beeper sounds and a message appears on the driver information interface.



Depress the brake pedal, and keep an appropriate interval from the vehicle ahead.





A vehicle icon appears on the gauge.

When a vehicle whose speed is slower than your set speed comes in or cuts in front of you and is detected by the camera, your vehicle starts to slow down.

Continued

■ There is no vehicle ahead



A vehicle icon with line contour appears on the gauge.

Your vehicle maintains the set speed without having to keep your foot on the brake or accelerator pedal.
If there previously was a vehicle detected ahead that kept your vehicle from travelling at the set speed, ACC with Low Speed Follow accelerates your vehicle to the set speed, and then maintains it.

■ When you depress the accelerator pedal

You can temporarily increase the vehicle speed. In this case, there is no audible or visual alert even if a vehicle is in the ACC with Low Speed Follow range.
ACC with Low Speed Follow stays on unless you cancel it. Once you release the accelerator pedal, the system resumes an appropriate speed for keeping the following-interval while a vehicle ahead is within the ACC with Low Speed Follow range.

When in Operation

Even if the interval between your vehicle and the vehicle detected ahead is short, ACC with Low Speed Follow may start accelerating your vehicle under the following circumstances:

- The vehicle ahead of you is going at almost the same speed as, or faster than, your vehicle.
- A vehicle that cuts in front of you is going faster than your vehicle, gradually increasing the interval between the vehicles.

You can also set the system to beep when a vehicle detected in front of you comes in and goes out of the ACC with Low Speed Follow detecting range.
A vehicle detect beep on and off can be selected.

Settings P. 128

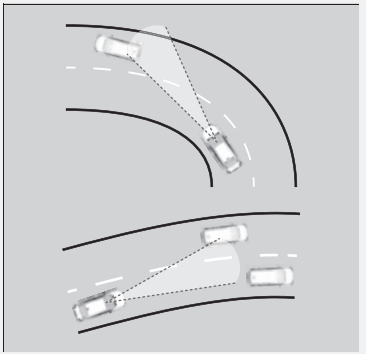
Limitations

You may need to use the brake to maintain a safe interval when using ACC with Low Speed Follow. Additionally, ACC with Low Speed Follow may not work properly under certain conditions.

ACC with Low Speed Follow Conditions and Limitations P. 275

When in Operation

- ACC with Low Speed Follow may temporarily control the interval between your vehicle and the vehicle in adjacent lane or surroundings of your vehicle depending on the road conditions (e.g., curves) or vehicle conditions (e.g., operating the steering wheel or the vehicle location in the lane).



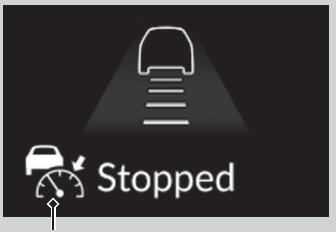
- When the vehicle ahead of you moves away, such as when entering an interchange or rest area, ACC with Low Speed Follow may continue to maintain the set following-interval for a short time.

Continued

■ A vehicle detected ahead is within ACC with Low Speed Follow range and slows to a stop



Your vehicle also stops automatically. The **Stopped** message appears on the gauge. When the vehicle ahead of you starts again, if you press the **RES/+** or **SET/–** button, or depress the accelerator pedal, ACC with Low Speed Follow will operate again within the previously set speed.



If no vehicle is ahead of you before you resume driving, depress the accelerator pedal and ACC with Low Speed Follow will operate again within the prior set speed.

■ ACC with Low Speed Follow Conditions and Limitations

The system may automatically shut off under certain conditions. Some examples of these conditions are listed below. Other conditions may reduce some of the ACC with Low Speed Follow functions.

➲ **Front Wide View Camera** P. 299

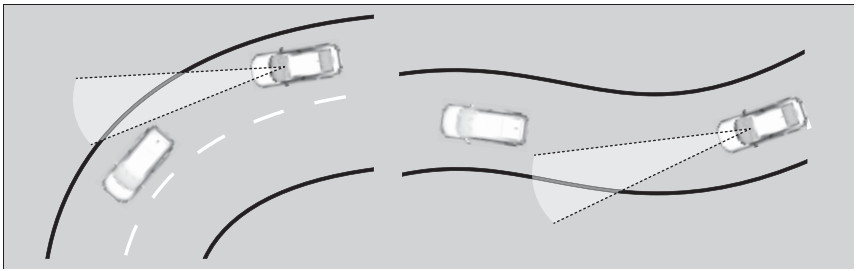
■ Environmental conditions

- Driving in bad weather (rain, fog, snow, etc.).
- Sudden changes between light and dark, such as the entrance or exit of a tunnel or the shadows of trees, buildings, etc.
- Strong light is reflected onto vehicles or road surfaces.
- Water is sprayed by or snow blown from a vehicle ahead.
- Driving at night or in a dark place such as a tunnel (due to low-light conditions, the whole vehicle may not be illuminated).
- Driving into low sunlight (e.g., at dawn or dusk).

Continued

■ Roadway conditions

- Driving on curvy, winding, undulating, or sloping roads.



- Driving on rutted roads (snowy or unpaved roads, etc.).
- Puddles or a film of water is on the road surface.
- Your vehicle is strongly shaken on uneven road surfaces.

■ Vehicle conditions

- The vehicle is tilted due to heavy luggage in the boot or rear seats.
- Tyre chains* are installed.
- The front of the camera is obstructed by dirt, fog, rain, mud, wet snow, accessories, decals, stickers, film, etc.
- Driving at night or in a dark place (e.g., a tunnel) with the headlights off.
- There is residue on the windscreen from the windscreen wipers.
- When lighting is weak due to dirt covering the headlight lenses, or there is poor visibility in a dark place due to the headlights being improperly adjusted.
- An abnormal tyre or wheel condition (incorrect sizes, varied sizes or construction, improperly inflated, compact spare tyre*, etc.).
- The suspension has been modified.

* Not available on all models

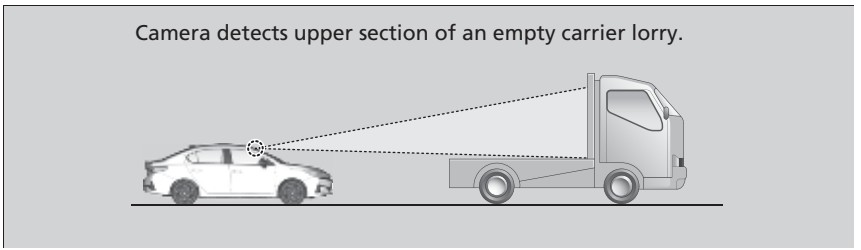
■ **Examples of conditions under which the camera may not correctly detect the vehicle ahead of you**

- A vehicle suddenly crosses in front of you.
- The interval between your vehicle and the vehicle ahead of you is too short.
- When the vehicle ahead of you blends in with the background, preventing the system from recognising it.
- When the height of a vehicle ahead of you is low.
- The headlights of the vehicle ahead of you are lit on one side or not lit on either side in a dark place.

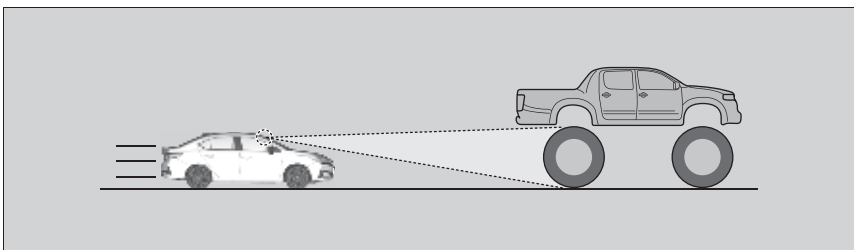
Continued

■ **Examples of conditions under which the system may not work properly**

- A vehicle ahead of you stops and the speed difference between your vehicle and the vehicle ahead of you is significantly large.
- When the vehicle ahead of you slows suddenly.
- When the vehicle ahead of you is a three-wheeled* vehicle or specially shaped vehicle.
- When a vehicle is lower in the rear than the front such as lorries that are not carrying a luggage, or a narrow vehicle.



- When your vehicle or the vehicle ahead of you is driving on the edge of the lane.
- When the vehicle ahead of you is a narrow vehicle such as a motorcycle.
- When the minimum ground clearance of a vehicle ahead of you is extremely high.

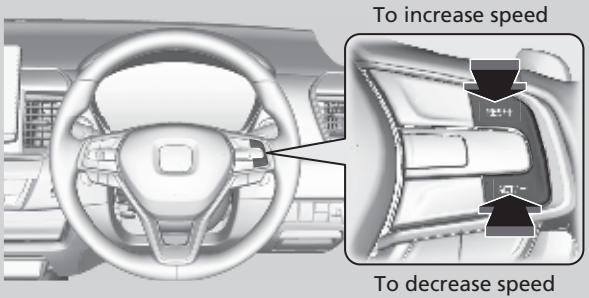


- When the camera cannot correctly identify the shape of the vehicle ahead of you.

* Not available on all models

To Adjust the Vehicle Speed

Increase or decrease the vehicle speed using the **RES/+** or **SET/–** button on the steering wheel.



- Each time you press the **RES/+** or **SET/–** button the vehicle speed is increased or decreased by about 1 km/h accordingly.
- If you press and hold the **RES/+** or **SET/–** button, the vehicle speed increases or decreases by about 10 km/h accordingly.

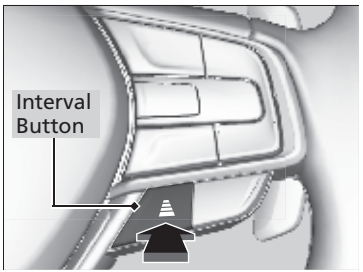
To Adjust the Vehicle Speed

If a vehicle detected ahead is going at a speed slower than your increased set speed, ACC with Low Speed Follow may not accelerate your vehicle. This is to maintain the set interval between your vehicle and the vehicle ahead.

When you depress the accelerator pedal and then push and release the **RES/+** or **SET/–** button, the current speed of the vehicle is set.

Continued

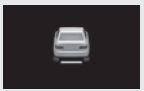
■ To Set or Change Following-interval



Press the Interval button to change the ACC with Low Speed Follow following-interval. Each time you press the button, the following-interval (the interval behind a vehicle detected ahead of you) setting cycles through extra long, long, middle, and short following-intervals.

Determine the most appropriate following-interval setting based on your specific driving conditions. Be sure to adhere to any following-interval requirements set by local regulation.

The higher your vehicle's following-speed is, the extra long, long, middle, and short or furthest following-interval becomes. See the following examples for your reference.

Following-interval		When the Set Speed is:	
		80 km/h	104 km/h
Short		26.6 metres 1.2 sec	33.7 metres 1.2 sec
Middle		34.6 metres 1.6 sec	44.9 metres 1.6 sec
Long		44.0 metres 2.0 sec	57.1 metres 2.0 sec
Extra Long		53.6 metres 2.4 sec	70.0 metres 2.4 sec

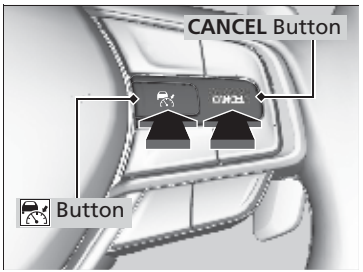
When your vehicle stops automatically because a vehicle detected ahead of you has stopped, the interval between the two vehicles will vary based on the ACC with Low Speed Follow interval setting.

To Set or Change Following-interval

The driver must in all circumstances preserve a sufficient braking interval from the vehicle which precedes it and be aware that minimum intervals or times of spacing can be provided by the provisions of the Motorway Code locally applicable and that it is the driver's responsibility to respect those laws.

Continued

To Cancel



To cancel ACC with Low Speed Follow, do any of the following:

- Press the **CANCEL** button.
  ▶ The indicator (green) on the gauge changes to the indicator (white).
- Press the button.
  ▶ indicator (green) goes off.
- Depress the brake pedal while the vehicle is moving forward.
  ▶ The indicator (green) on the gauge changes to the indicator (white).

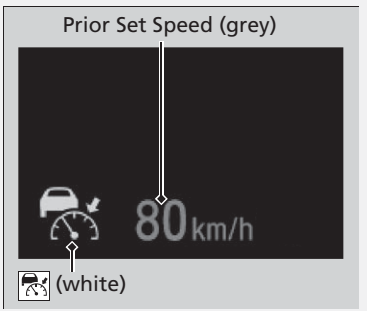
To Cancel

Resuming the prior set speed: After you have cancelled ACC with Low Speed Follow, you can activate the ACC with Low Speed Follow with the prior set speed displayed on the gauge (in grey) by pressing the **RES/+** button even if the vehicle is stopped.

When you turn the ACC with Low Speed Follow off by pressing the **CANCEL** button or depressing the brake pedal, the prior set speed is displayed on the gauge in grey.

When pressing the **RES/+** button, the ACC with Low Speed Follow is activated with displayed speed.

If the indicator (white) is displayed and you press the **RES/+** button, but no prior set speed (in grey) is displayed, the speed will be set to your vehicle's current speed.



■ Automatic cancellation

The beeper sounds and a message appears on the driver information interface when ACC with Low Speed Follow is automatically cancelled. Any of these conditions may cause the ACC with Low Speed Follow to automatically cancel:

- Bad weather (rain, fog, snow, etc.)
- The vehicle ahead of you cannot be detected.
- An abnormal tyre condition is detected, or the tyres are skidding.
- Driving on a mountainous road for extended periods, or driving off road.
- Abrupt steering wheel movement.
- When the ABS, VSA, or CMBS is activated.
- When the VSA system indicator comes on.
- When the vehicle is stopped on a very steep slope.
- Water is sprayed by or snow blown from a vehicle ahead.
- Driving into low sunlight (e.g., at dawn or dusk).
- When the detected vehicle within the ACC with Low Speed Follow range is too close to your vehicle.
- When accelerating rapidly.
- The front of the camera is obstructed by dirt, fog, rain, mud, wet snow, accessories, decals, stickers, film, etc.
- The vehicle is loaded heavy luggage in the boot or rear seats.
- When passing through a dark place, such as tunnel.
- When the parking brake and brake system indicator (amber) comes on.
- The vehicle has repeatedly applied the brakes to maintain the set speed (for example, you are descending a long slope).
- When the system doesn't detect any driving actions from the driver for a certain amount of time while the LKAS is also activated.

The ACC with Low Speed Follow automatic cancellation can be also triggered by the following causes. In these cases, the parking brake will be automatically applied.

- The driver's seat belt is unfastened when the vehicle is stationary.
- The vehicle stops for more than 10 minutes.
- The power system is turned off.

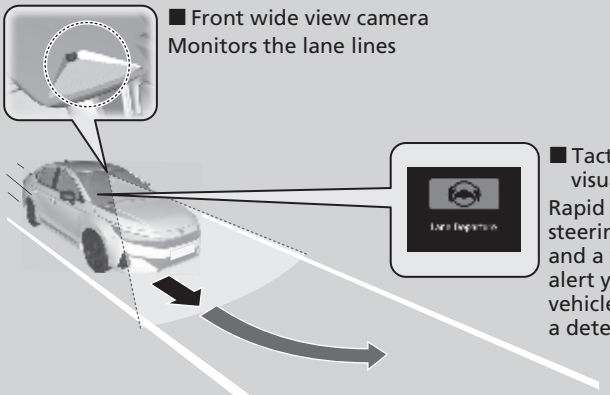
To Cancel

The set speed cannot be set or resumed when ACC with Low Speed Follow has been turned off using the button. Press the button to activate the system, then set the desired speed.

Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS)

Provides steering input to help to keep the vehicle in the middle of a detected lane and provides tactile, audible and visual alerts if the vehicle is detected drifting out of its lane.

■ Steering input assist
The system applies torque to the steering to keep the vehicle between the left and right lane lines. The applied torque becomes stronger as the vehicle gets closer to either of the lane lines.



■ Front wide view camera
Monitors the lane lines

■ Tactile, audible and visual alerts
Rapid vibrations on the steering wheel, audible and a warning display alert you that the vehicle is drifting out of a detected lane.

When you operate the turn signals to change lanes, the system is suspended, and resumes after the signals are off.
If you make a lane change without operating the turn signals, the LKAS alerts activate, and torque is applied to the steering.

Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS)

Important Safety Reminders
The LKAS is for your convenience only. It is not an autonomous driving system and always requires driver attention and control. The system does not work if you take your hands off the steering wheel or fail to steer the vehicle.

The LKAS is convenient when it is used on motorways or a dual carriage way.

Do not place objects on the instrument panel. Objects may reflect on the windscreen and prevent correct detection of the traffic lanes.

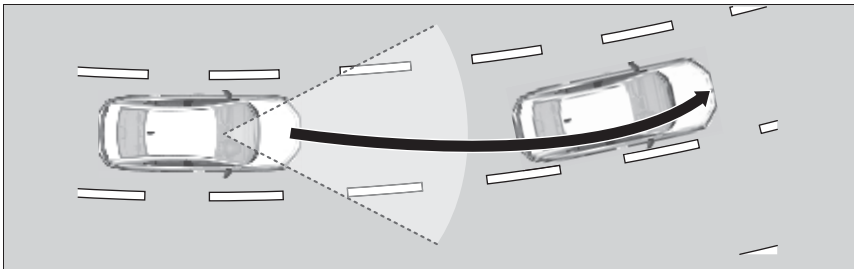
The LKAS only alerts you when lane drift is detected without a turn signal in use. The LKAS may not detect all lane markings or lane departures; accuracy will vary based on weather, speed, and lane marker condition.
It is always your responsibility to safely operate the vehicle and avoid collisions.

The LKAS may not function as designed while driving in frequent stop and go traffic, or on roads with sharp curves.

You can read about handling information for the camera equipped with this system.
Front Wide View Camera P. 299

Lane Keep Support Function

Provides assistance to keep the vehicle in the centre of the lane. When the vehicle nears a white or yellow line, steering force of the electric power steering will become stronger.



Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS)

The LKAS may not work properly or may work improperly under the certain conditions:

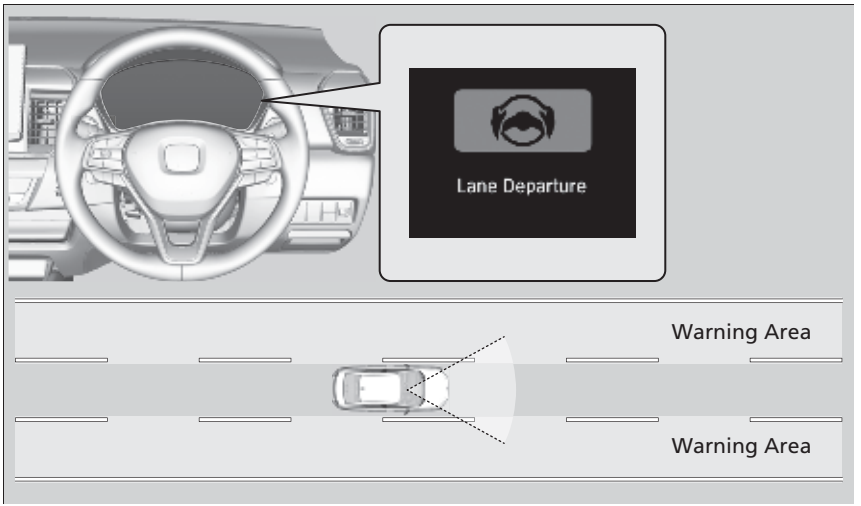
LKAS Conditions and Limitations P. 291

When it fails to detect lanes, the system will temporarily be cancelled. When a lane is detected, the system will recover automatically.

Continued

■ Lane Departure Warning Function

When the vehicle enters the warning area, the LKAS alerts you with slight steering wheel vibration, and audible and visual warnings.

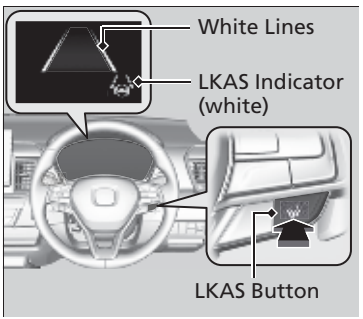


When the System can be Used

The system can be used when the following conditions are met.

- The lane in which you are driving has detectable lane markers on both sides, and your vehicle is in the centre of the lane.
- You are driving on a straight or slightly curved road.
- The turn signals are off.
- The brake pedal is not suddenly depressed.
- The vehicle is travelling between about 72 and 180 km/h.

How to activate the system



1. Press the LKAS button.
▶ LKAS indicator (white) appears on the gauge.
The system is standby.
▶ If traffic lane lines are detected, white lines appear on the gauge.

When the System can be Used

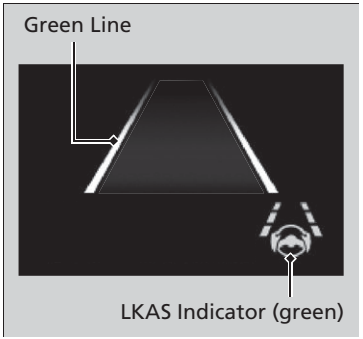
If the vehicle drifts toward either left or right lane line due to the system applying torque, turn off the LKAS and have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

Follow the points below to properly activate the system:

- Always keep the windscreen around the camera clean.
- When cleaning the windscreen, be careful not to apply windscreen cleanser to the camera lens.
- Do not touch the camera lens.
- Do not attach a sticker to the area around the camera.

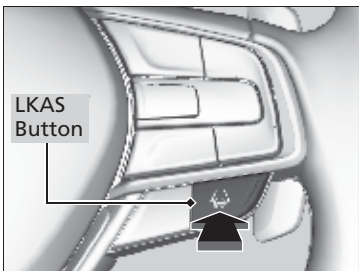
If LKAS button is pressed when the system can be used, LKAS is on without standby.

Continued



2. Keep your vehicle near the centre of the lane while driving.
▶ The LKAS indicator changes from white to green, and white lines change to green once the system starts operating after detecting the left and right lane markings.

■ To Cancel

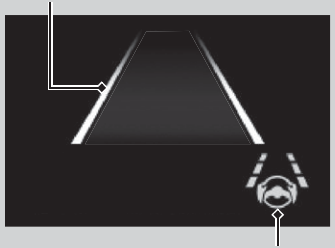


Press the LKAS button.

The LKAS is turned off every time you turn the power system off, even if you turned it on the last time you drove the vehicle.

■ The LKAS may be automatically suspended when:

When the LKAS is suspended under the following circumstances, green lines on the gauge change to white lines or disappear, and the beeper sounds (if activated).



- Decrease the vehicle speed to about 64 km/h or less.
  ▶ Increasing the vehicle speed to about 72 km/h or more resumes the LKAS.
- Your vehicle is driving to the right or the left of the lane.
- The system fails to detect lane lines.
- The steering wheel is turned quickly.
- You fail to steer the vehicle.
- Driving through a sharp curve.
- Driving at a speed in excess of approximately 185 km/h.
- The ABS or VSA system engages.
- The brake pedal is suddenly depressed.

Once these conditions no longer exist, the LKAS automatically resumes.

The LKAS may be automatically suspended when:

LKAS suspended beep on and off can be selected.
➡ **Settings** P. 128

Continued

■ The LKAS may be automatically cancelled when:

In the following cases, traffic lane lines may disappear on the gauge, the beeper may sound, and the LKAS may be automatically cancelled:

- The camera temperature gets extremely high.
- The camera behind the rearview mirror, or the area around the camera, including the windscreen, is dirty.

LKAS Conditions and Limitations

The system may not detect lane markings (in white or yellow), and LKAS may not function properly under certain conditions, including the following:

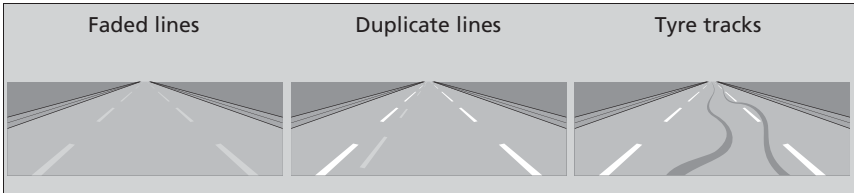
Environmental conditions

- There is little contrast between lane lines and the roadway surface.
- Driving in bad weather (rain, fog, snow, etc.).
- Driving on a snowy or wet roadway.
- Driving into low sunlight (e.g., at dawn or dusk).
- Shadows of adjacent objects (trees, buildings, guard rails, vehicles, etc.) are parallel to white (or yellow) lines.
- Sudden changes between light and dark, such as the entrance or exit of a tunnel or the shadows of trees, buildings, etc.
- Driving at night or in a dark place such as a tunnel (due to low-light conditions, lane lines or the road surface may not be illuminated).
- The distance between your vehicle and the vehicle ahead of you is too short, and lane lines and the road surface are not visible.
- Strong light is reflected onto the roadway.

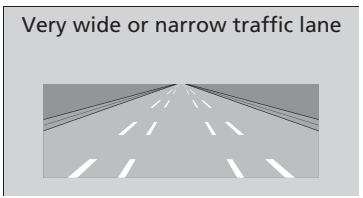
Continued

■ **Roadway conditions**

- Driving on a road with temporary lane markings.
- Faint, multiple, or varied lane markings are visible on the roadway due to road repairs or deteriorated lane markings.

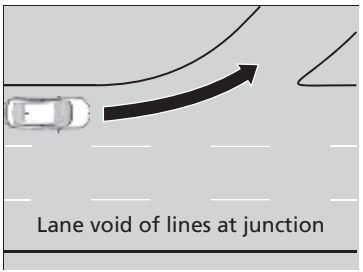


- The roadway has merging, split, or crossing lines, such as at an intersection or crosswalk.
- The lane markings are extremely narrow, wide, or changing.



- Part of the lane markings are hidden by an object, such as a vehicle.
- The road is hilly or the vehicle is approaching the crest of a hill.
- Your vehicle is strongly shaken on uneven road surfaces.
- When objects on the road (curb, guard rail, pylons, etc.) are recognised as white (or yellow) lines.
- Driving on rough or unpaved roads, or over bumpy surfaces.

- Driving on roads with double lane line.
- Driving on snowy or slippery roads.
- The pavement is only partially visible due to snow or puddles on the road.
- There is a film of water or puddles on the road surface.
- White (or yellow) lines are not recognised correctly due to road conditions such as curves, twists, or hills.
- Driving on unpaved or rutted roads.
- Passing through a junction.


Lane void of lines at junction

Continued

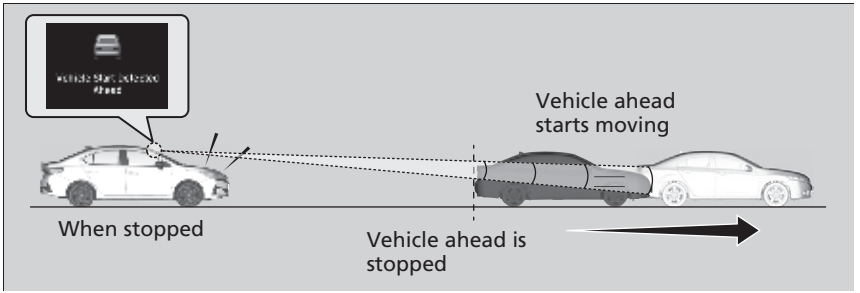
■ **Vehicle conditions**

- When lighting is weak due to dirt covering the headlight lenses, or there is poor visibility in a dark place due to the headlights being improperly adjusted.
- The front of the camera is obstructed by dirt, fog, rain, mud, wet snow, accessories, decals, stickers, film, etc.
- Driving at night or in a dark place (e.g., a tunnel) with the headlights off.
- There is residue on the windscreen from the windscreen wipers.
- An abnormal tyre or wheel condition (incorrect sizes, varied sizes or construction, improperly inflated, compact spare tyre*, etc.).
- The vehicle is tilted due to a heavy luggage in the boot or rear seats.
- The suspension has been modified.
- Tyre chains* are installed.

 * Not available on all models

Lead Car Departure Notification System*

Informs you with visual and audible alerts when your vehicle is stopped even though the vehicle ahead of you has started moving.



How the system works

The system detects a stopped vehicle in front of you, on the condition that the vehicles are within 10 m of each other and both vehicles have been stopped for a period of time. When the detected vehicle moves but yours does not, the system will activate.

When the shift position is in D or B

The system will work when the brake pedal is depressed, the brake hold function of the automatic brake hold system is in operation, or the vehicle is stopped by ACC with Low Speed Follow.

Lead Car Departure Notification System*

⚠WARNING

Lead Car Departure Notification System is an supplemental system that provides driving assistance. It is not a system that informs you if it is safe to start driving.

Improper use of this system may lead to a collision.

Always visually confirm the safety of your surroundings before driving the vehicle and maintain a safe following-interval when driving.

You can read about handling information for the camera equipped with this system.

Front Wide View Camera P. 299

Like other assistance systems, this system may not function properly depending on weather, environmental conditions, and so on.

* Not available on all models

Continued

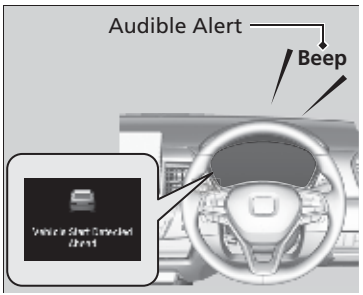
■ When the shift position is in N

The system will work when the vehicle is stopped, the brake pedal is depressed, the parking brake is in operation, or the brake hold function of the automatic brake hold system is in operation.

You can choose from two system operation timing modes, **Normal** and **Early**.
➡ **Settings** P. 128

In **Normal** mode, the system operates when the vehicle ahead of you has moved approximately 3 m from where it stopped.
In **Early** mode, the system operates as soon as movement has been detected.

■ When the System Activates



The beeper sounds and a message appears on the driver information interface when the system is activated.

Lead Car Departure Notification System*

You can turn off the Lead Car Departure Notification System.
➡ **Settings** P. 128

The Lead Car Departure Notification System will not activate while the Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow Indicator is on.
➡ **Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow** P. 266

* Not available on all models

Lead Car Departure Notification System Conditions and Limitations

In the following conditions, the system may or may not activate regardless of whether the vehicle ahead of you starts to move.

Environmental conditions

- Driving in bad weather (rain, fog, snow, etc.).
- Water is sprayed by or snow blown from a vehicle ahead.
- Sudden changes between light and dark, such as the entrance or exit of a tunnel or the shadows of trees, buildings, etc.
- Strong light is reflected onto vehicles or road surfaces.
- Driving at night or in a dark place such as a tunnel (due to low-light conditions, the whole vehicle may not be illuminated).
- Driving into low sunlight (e.g., at dawn or dusk).

Roadway conditions

- Driving on curvy, winding, undulating, or sloping roads or immediately after turning to the left or right.

Vehicle conditions

- The vehicle is tilted due to heavy luggage in the boot or rear seats.
- The vehicle is only stopped for a short time.
- The front of the camera is obstructed by dirt, fog, rain, mud, wet snow, accessories, decals, stickers, film, etc.
- Driving at night or in a dark place (e.g., a tunnel) with the headlights off.
- There is residue on the windscreen from the windscreen wipers.
- When lighting is weak due to dirt covering the headlight lenses, or there is poor visibility in a dark place due to the headlights being improperly adjusted.
- An abnormal tyre or wheel condition (incorrect sizes, varied sizes or construction, improperly inflated, compact spare tyre*, etc.).
- The suspension has been modified.

* Not available on all models

Continued

■ **Examples of conditions under which the camera may not correctly detect the vehicle ahead of you**

- The vehicle ahead of you is only stopped for a short time.
- The space between your vehicle and the vehicle ahead of you is too short.
- The vehicle ahead of you is moving too slowly.
- The vehicle ahead of you suddenly turns around or to the left or right.
- The vehicle ahead of you blends into the scenery and can't be detected.
- The vehicle ahead of you has only one or neither of their taillights on.

■ **Examples of other limitations on detection**

- There is a pedestrian, bicycle, motorcycle, or other specially-shaped vehicle in front of you.
- Another vehicle, pedestrian, or bicycle comes between your vehicle and the vehicle in front of you.
- The vehicle ahead of you is not directly in front of you.

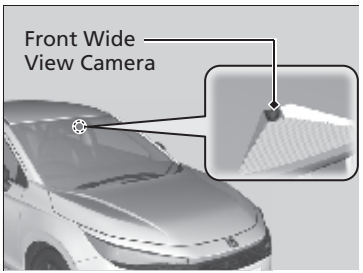
■ **Examples of other limitations on system operation**

- The camera cannot correctly detect the shape of the vehicle ahead of you.
- The vehicle ahead of you has very high ground clearance.
- The vehicle ahead of you, such as a lorry without a trailer, has a rear that is smaller than the front.

Front Wide View Camera

The camera, used in systems such as Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS), Road Departure Mitigation System, Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow, Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS), Lead Car Departure Notification System*, and auto high-beam system, is designed to detect an object that triggers any of the systems to operate its functions.

Camera Location and Handling Tips



This camera is located behind the rearview mirror.

To help to reduce the likelihood that high interior temperatures will cause the camera's sensing system to shut off, find a shady area or face the front of the vehicle away from the sun when parking. If you use a reflective sun shade, do not allow it to cover the camera housing. Covering the camera can concentrate heat on it.

Front Wide View Camera

Never apply a film or attach any objects to the windscreen, the bonnet, or the front grille that could obstruct the camera's field of vision and cause the system to operate abnormally.
Scratches, nicks, and other damage to the windscreen within the camera's field of vision can cause the system to operate abnormally. If this occurs, we recommend that you replace the windscreen with a genuine Honda replacement windscreen. Making even minor repairs within the camera's field of vision or installing an aftermarket replacement windscreen may also cause the system to operate abnormally.
After replacing the windscreen, have a dealer recalibrate the camera. Proper calibration of the camera is necessary for the system to operate properly.

Do not place an object on the top of the instrument panel. It may reflect onto the windscreen and prevent the system from detecting lane lines properly.

* Not available on all models

Continued

Front Wide View Camera

If the **Some Driver Assist Systems Cannot Operate: Camera Temperature Too High** message appears:

- Use the climate control system to cool down the interior and, if necessary, also use demister mode with the airflow directed towards the camera.
- Start driving the vehicle to lower the windscreen temperature, which cools down the area around the camera.

If the **Some Driver Assist Systems Cannot Operate: Clean Front Windscreen Or Poor Viewing Condition.** message appears:

- Park your vehicle in a safe place, and make sure the windscreen is clean. Clean the windscreen if it is dirty. If the message does not disappear after driven for a while, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

Brake System

Parking Brake

Use the parking brake to keep the vehicle stationary when parked. When the parking brake is applied, you can manually or automatically release it.



To apply

The electric parking brake can be applied any time the vehicle has 12-volt battery, no matter which position the power mode is in.

Pull the electric parking brake switch up gently and securely.

- The indicator in the switch comes on.
- The parking brake and brake system indicator (red) comes on.



To release

The power mode must be in ON in order to release the electric parking brake.

1. Depress the brake pedal.
2. Press the electric parking brake switch.
   - The indicator in the switch goes off.
   - The parking brake and brake system indicator (red) goes off.

Manually releasing the parking brake using the switch helps your vehicle to start slowly and smoothly when facing downhill on steep hills.

Braking

When you depress the brake pedal, you may hear a whirring sound from the engine compartment. This is because the brake system is in operation, and it is normal.

Parking Brake

You may hear the electric parking brake system motor operating from the rear wheel area when you apply or release the parking brake. This is normal.

The brake pedal may slightly move due to the electric parking brake system operation when you apply or release the parking brake. This is normal.

You cannot apply or release the parking brake if the 12-volt battery goes dead.

If the 12-Volt Battery Is Dead P. 396

If you pull up and hold the electric parking brake switch while driving, the brakes on all four wheels are applied by the electric servo brake system until the vehicle come to a stop. The electric parking brake then applies, and the switch should be released.

Continued

■ Automatic parking brake feature operation

If the automatic parking brake feature has been activated:

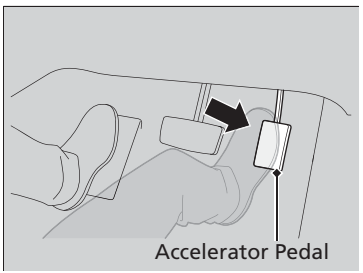
- The parking brake is applied automatically when you set the power mode to VEHICLE OFF.
- To confirm that the parking brake is applied, check if the parking brake and brake system indicator (red) is on.

➡ **Activating and deactivating the automatic parking brake feature** P. 303

■ To release automatically

Depressing the accelerator pedal releases the parking brake.

Use the accelerator pedal to release the parking brake when you are starting the vehicle facing uphill, or in a traffic jam.



Gently depress the accelerator pedal. When on a hill, it may require more accelerator input to release.

▶ The indicator in the switch goes off.

▶ The parking brake and brake system indicator (red) goes off.

You can release the parking brake automatically when:

- You are wearing the driver's seat belt.
- The power system is on.
- The transmission is not in P or N.

Parking Brake

In the following situations, the parking brake automatically operates.

- When the vehicle stops more than 10 minutes while ACC with Low Speed Follow is activated.
- When the driver's seat belt is unfastened while your vehicle is stopped automatically by ACC with Low Speed Follow.
- When the power system is turned off while ACC with Low Speed Follow is activated.
- When the vehicle stops with the automatic brake hold system activated for more than 10 minutes.
- When the driver's seat belt is unfastened while your vehicle is stopped and brake hold is applied.
- When the power system is turned off while brake hold is applied.
- When there is a problem with the Brake Hold System while brake hold is applied.

If the parking brake cannot be released automatically, release it manually.

When the vehicle is travelling uphill, the accelerator pedal may need to be pressed farther to automatically release the electric parking brake.

■ Activating and deactivating the automatic parking brake feature

With the power mode is in ON, carry out the following steps to either activate or deactivate the automatic parking brake feature.

1. Put the transmission into P.

2. Without depressing the brake pedal, pull up the electric parking brake switch.
▶ Check that the parking brake and brake system indicator (red) has come on.

3. Pull up and hold the parking brake switch. When you hear a beeping sound, release the switch and within three seconds pull up and hold the switch again.

4. When you hear a sound indicating that the procedure is completed, release the switch.
▶ Two beeps indicate that the feature has been activated.
▶ One beep indicates that the feature has been deactivated.
▶ When you have completed activating the feature, the parking brake will remain applied after you turn off the power system.
▶ To confirm that the parking brake is applied, check if the parking brake and brake system indicator (red) is on.

If you need to temporarily deactivate the feature for when having your vehicle towed, follow the procedure explained below.

1. Depress the brake pedal and bring the vehicle to a stop.

2. Set the power mode to VEHICLE OFF and then within two seconds push down the electric parking brake switch.
▶ Activation and deactivation settings for the feature will not be affected.
▶ Before temporarily deactivating the feature, make sure to first turn off both ACC with Low Speed Follow and the automatic brake hold system.
▶ To confirm that the parking brake is applied, check if the parking brake and brake system indicator (red) is on.

Parking Brake

The parking brake cannot be released automatically while the following indicators are on:
- Malfunction indicator lamp
- Transmission system indicator

The parking brake may not be released automatically while the following indicators are on:
- Power system indicator
- Parking brake and brake system indicator (red)
- VSA system indicator
- **ABS** indicator
- Supplemental restraint system indicator

Activating and deactivating the automatic parking brake feature

In cold climates, the parking brake may freeze in place if applied.
When parking the vehicle, chock the wheels and make sure the automatic parking brake feature is deactivated.
Also, when putting your vehicle through a conveyor-type car wash or when having your vehicle towed, deactivate the automatic parking brake feature and leave the parking brake released.

Continued

■ Foot Brake

Your vehicle is equipped with disc brakes at all four wheels. The brake assist system increases the stopping force when you depress the brake pedal hard in an emergency situation. The anti-lock brake system (ABS) helps you retain steering control when braking very hard.

➡ **Brake Assist System** P. 309
➡ **Anti-lock Brake System (ABS)** P. 308

Foot Brake

Check the brakes after driving through deep water, or if there is a buildup of road surface water. If necessary, dry the brakes by lightly depressing the pedal several times.

If you hear a continuous metallic friction sound when applying the brakes, the brake pads need to be replaced. Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

Applying constant pressure to the brakes while going down a long hill can cause the brakes to heat up, resulting in a loss of stopping power. Therefore, when descending a long hill, release the accelerator pedal and allow regenerative braking to slow the vehicle down. To adjust the rate of deceleration, use the deceleration paddle selector.
When the high voltage battery has fully recharged, regenerative braking may not be possible.

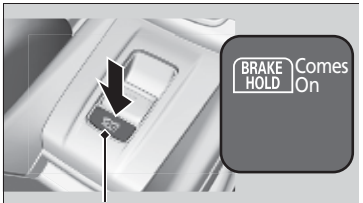
➡ **POWER/CHARGE Gauge** P. 114
➡ **Deceleration Paddle Selector** P. 229

Do not rest your foot on the brake pedal while driving, as it will lightly apply the brakes and cause them to lose effectiveness over time and reduce pad life. It will also confuse drivers behind you.

Automatic Brake Hold

Keeps the brake applied after releasing the brake pedal until the accelerator pedal is pressed. You can use this system while the vehicle is temporarily stopped, like at traffic lights and in heavy traffic.

Turning on the system



Automatic Brake Hold Button

Fasten your seat belt properly, then turn on the power system. Press the automatic brake hold button.

▶ The automatic brake hold system indicator comes on. The system is turned on.

Automatic Brake Hold

⚠WARNING

Activating the automatic brake hold system on steep hills or slippery roads may still allow the vehicle to move if you remove your foot from the brake pedal.

If a vehicle unexpectedly moves, it may cause a crash resulting in serious injury or death.

Never activate the automatic brake hold system or rely on it to keep a vehicle from moving when stopped on a steep hill or slippery roads.

⚠WARNING

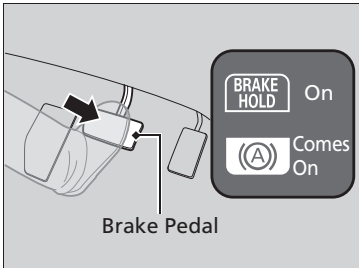
Using the automatic brake hold system to park the vehicle may result in the vehicle unexpectedly moving.

If a vehicle moves unexpectedly, it may cause a crash, resulting in serious injury or death.

Never leave the vehicle when braking is temporarily kept by automatic brake hold and always park the vehicle by putting the transmission in P and applying the parking brake.

Continued

■ Activating the system

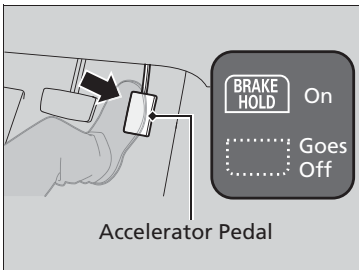


Depress the brake pedal to come to a complete stop. The transmission must not be in P or R.

▶ The automatic brake hold indicator comes on. Braking is kept for up to 10 minutes.

▶ Release the brake pedal after the automatic brake hold indicator comes on.

■ Cancelling the system



Depress the accelerator pedal while the transmission is in a position other than P or N. The system is cancelled and the vehicle starts to move.

▶ The automatic brake hold indicator goes off. The system continues to be on.

Automatic Brake Hold

⚠WARNING

When using the automatic brake hold, keep your foot on the brake pedal until the automatic brake hold indicator comes on.

If the vehicle unexpectedly moves, it may cause a crash resulting in serious injury or death.

Release your foot from the brake pedal after the automatic brake hold indicator comes on.

While the system is activated, you can turn off the power system or park the vehicle through the same procedure as you normally do.

When Stopped P. 311

Whether the system is on, or the system is activated, the automatic brake hold turns off once the power system is off.

You may hear an operating noise if the vehicle moves while the automatic brake hold system is in operation.

■ **The system automatically cancels when:**
- You engage the parking brake.
- You depress the brake pedal and put the transmission into P or R.

■ **The system automatically cancels and the parking brake is applied when:**
- Braking is kept for more than 10 minutes.
- The driver's seat belt is unfastened.
- The power system is turned off.
- There is a problem with automatic brake hold system.

■ **Turning off the automatic brake hold system**



Automatic Brake Hold Button

Only the automatic brake hold system indicator comes on:
- Press the automatic brake hold button.
  ▶ The automatic brake hold system indicator goes off.

When the automatic brake hold indicator comes on at the same time:
- Press the automatic brake hold button with the brake pedal depressed.
  ▶ The automatic brake hold system indicator and the automatic brake hold indicator go off.

Turning off the automatic brake hold system

Make sure to turn off the automatic brake hold system before using an automated car wash.

Anti-lock Brake System (ABS)

■ ABS

Helps to prevent the wheels from locking up, and helps you to retain steering control by pumping the brakes rapidly, much faster than you can.

The electronic brake distribution (EBD) system, which is part of the ABS, also balances the front-to-rear braking distribution according to vehicle loading.

You should never pump the brake pedal. Let the ABS work for you by always keeping firm, steady pressure on the brake pedal. This is sometimes referred to as "stomp and steer."

■ ABS operation

The brake pedal may pulsate slightly when the ABS is working. Depress the brake pedal and keep holding the pedal firmly down. On dry pavement, you will need to press on the brake pedal very hard before the ABS activates. However, you may feel the ABS activate immediately if you are trying to stop on snow or ice.

ABS may activate when you depress the brake pedal when driving on:
- Wet or snow covered roads.
- Roads paved with stone.
- Roads with uneven surfaces, such as potholes, cracks, manholes, etc.

When the vehicle speed goes under 10 km/h, the ABS stops.

Anti-lock Brake System (ABS)

NOTICE

The ABS may not function correctly if you use a tyre of the incorrect size or type.

If the **ABS** indicator comes on while driving, there may be a problem with the system.
While normal braking will not be affected, there is a possibility that the ABS will not be operating. Have your vehicle checked by a dealer immediately.

The ABS is not designed for the purpose of reducing the time or distance it takes for a vehicle to stop: It is designed to limit brake lockup which can lead to skidding and loss of steering control.

In the following cases, your vehicle may need more distance to stop than a vehicle without the ABS:
- You are driving on rough or uneven road surfaces, such as gravel or snow.
- The tyres are equipped with tyre chains*.

The following may be observed with the ABS system:
- Motor sounds coming from the engine compartment when the brakes are applied, or when system checks are being performed after the power system has been turned on and while the vehicle accelerates.
- Brake pedal and/or the vehicle body vibration when ABS activates.
  These vibrations and sounds are normal to ABS systems and are no cause for concern.

* Not available on all models

Brake Assist System

Is designed to assist the driver by generating greater braking force when you depress the brake pedal hard during emergency braking.

■ Brake assist system operation

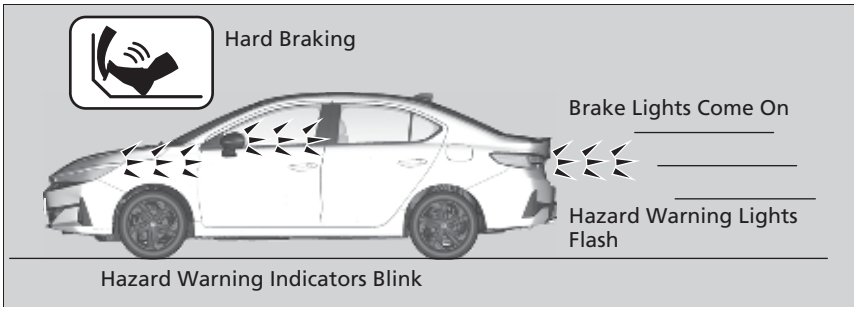
Press the brake pedal firmly for more powerful braking.

When brake assist operates, the pedal may wiggle slightly and an operating noise may be heard. This is normal. Keep holding the brake pedal firmly down.

Emergency Stop Signal

Activates when you brake hard while driving at 60 km/h or above to alert drivers behind you about sudden braking by rapidly flashing hazard warning lights. This may help to alert drivers behind you to take appropriate means to avoid a possible collision with your vehicle.

■ **When the system activates:**



The hazard warning lights stop flashing when:

- You release the brake pedal.
- The ABS is deactivated.
- Your vehicle's decelerating speed becomes moderate.
- You press the hazard warning button.

Emergency Stop Signal

The emergency stop signal is not a system that can prevent a possible rear-end collision caused by your hard braking. It flashes the hazard warning lights at the time you are braking hard. It is always recommended to avoid hard braking unless it is absolutely necessary.

The emergency stop signal does not activate with the hazard warning button pressed in.

If the ABS stops working for a certain period during braking, the emergency stop signal may not activate at all.

When Stopped

1. Depress the brake pedal firmly.
2. With the brake pedal depressed, pull up the electric parking brake switch slowly, but fully.
3. Change the shift position to P.
4. Turn off the power system.

Always set the parking brake, especially if you are parked on an incline.

Parking Your Vehicle

⚠WARNING

The vehicle can roll away if left unattended without confirming that Park is engaged.

A vehicle that rolls away could cause a crash resulting in serious injury or death.

Always keep your foot on the brake pedal until you have confirmed that P is shown on the shift position indicator.

Do not park your vehicle near flammable objects, such as dry grass, oil, or timber.
Heat from the exhaust can cause a fire.

NOTICE

The following can damage the driveline:
- Depressing the accelerator and brake pedals simultaneously.
- Changing to P before the vehicle stops completely.

When facing uphill, do not hold the vehicle by depressing the accelerator pedal.
Doing so may cause the power system to overheat and fail.

Continued

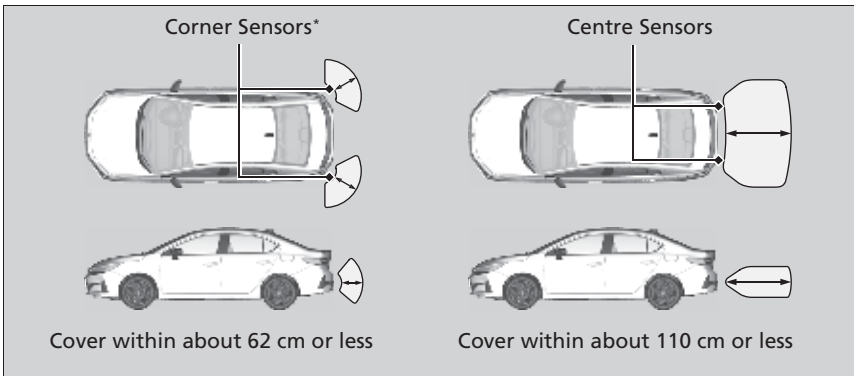
Parking Your Vehicle

In extremely cold temperatures, the parking brake may freeze up if applied. If such temperatures are expected, do not apply the parking brake but if parking on a slope, either turn the front wheels so they will contact the curb if the vehicle rolls down the slope or block the wheels to keep the vehicle from moving. If you do not take either precaution, the vehicle may roll unexpectedly, leading to a crash.

Parking Sensor System*

The rear corner* and centre sensors monitor obstacles behind your vehicle, and the beeper and driver information interface you know the approximate distance between your vehicle and the obstacle.

The Sensor Location and Range



The system activates when the transmission is in R, and the vehicle speed is less than 9 km/h.

Parking Sensor System*

Even when the system is on, always confirm if there is no obstacle near your vehicle before parking.

The system may not work properly when:
- The sensors are covered with snow, ice, mud, or dirt.
- The vehicle has been out in hot or cold weather.
- There is something nearby that emits ultrasonic waves or high frequency sounds.
- Driving in bad weather (rain, fog, snow, etc.).

The system may not detect these obstacles:
- Thin or low objects.
- Sonic-absorptive materials, such as snow, cotton, or sponge.
- Objects directly under the bumper.

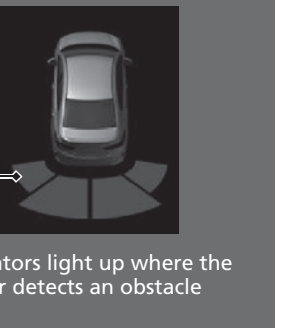
The system may falsely detect obstacles in the following situations:
- The vehicle is on uneven surface, such as grass, bumps, or a hill.
- When close to other vehicles with sonar sensors or other objects that emit ultrasonic waves.
- There is splashing water near the sensors due to heavy rains, etc.

Do not put any accessories on or around the sensors.

* Not available on all models

Continued

When the Distance Between Your Vehicle and Obstacles Becomes Shorter

Interval between beeps	Distance between the Bumper and Obstacle		Indicator	Driver information interface
	Corner Sensors*	Centre Sensors		
Moderate	—	About 60-110 cm	Blinks in Yellow*1	 Indicators light up where the sensor detects an obstacle
Short	About 45-62 cm	About 50-60 cm	Blinks in Amber	
Very short	About 35-45 cm	About 40-50 cm		
Continuous	About 35 cm or less	About 40 cm or less	Blinks in Red	

*1:At this stage, only the centre sensors detect obstacles.

 * Not available on all models

Fuel Information

■ Fuel recommendation

Thai, Indian, Bhutanese, Sri Lankan and Nepalese models

Unleaded petrol/gasohol up to E20 (80% petrol and 20% ethanol), research octane number 91 or higher

Use of lower octane number petrol/gasohol can cause a persistent, heavy metallic knocking noise that can lead to engine damage.

Except Thai, Indian, Bhutanese, Sri Lankan and Nepalese models

Unleaded petrol, research octane number 91 or higher

Use of lower octane number petrol can cause a persistent, heavy metallic knocking noise that can lead to engine damage.

■ Fuel tank capacity: 40 L

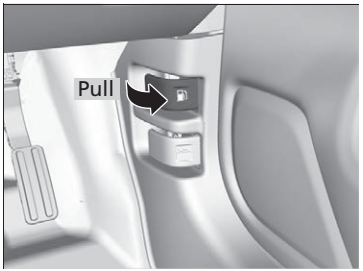
Fuel Information

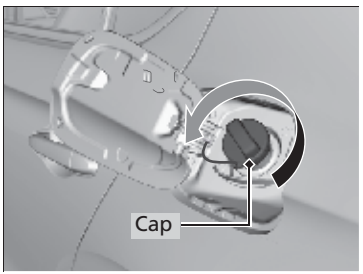
NOTICE

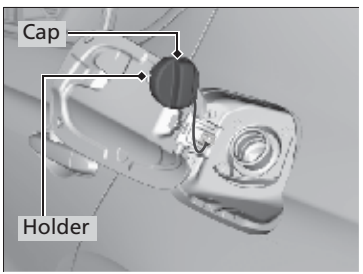
Use of petrol that contains lead presents the following risks:

- Damage to the exhaust system including the catalytic converter
- Damage to the engine and fuel system
- Detrimental effects on the engine and other systems

How to Refuel







1. Stop your vehicle with the service station pump on the left side of the vehicle in the rear.
2. Turn the power system off.
3. Pull on the fuel fill door release handle under the driver's side lower outside corner of the dashboard.
   ▶ The fuel fill door opens.
4. Remove the fuel fill cap slowly. If you hear a release of air, wait until this stops, then turn the knob slowly to open the fuel fill cap.
5. Place the fuel fill cap in the holder.
6. Insert the fuel filler nozzle fully.
   ▶ When the tank is full, the filler nozzle will click off automatically. This leaves space in the fuel tank in case the fuel expands with a change in the temperature.
7. After filling, replace the fuel fill cap, tightening it until you hear it click at least once.
   ▶ Shut the fuel fill door by hand.

How to Refuel

⚠WARNING

Petrol is highly flammable and explosive. You can be burned or seriously injured when handling fuel.

- Turn the power system off, and keep heat, sparks, and flames away.
- Handle fuel only outdoors.
- Wipe up spills immediately.

⚠CAUTION

The filler nozzle automatically stops to leave space in the fuel tank so that fuel does not overflow as a result of changes in air temperature.

Do not continue to add fuel after the filler nozzle has automatically stopped. Additional fuel can exceed the full tank capacity and cause fuel to spill.

Improving Fuel Economy and Reducing CO_2 Emissions

Achieving fuel economy and reducing CO_2 emissions is dependent on several factors, including driving conditions, load weight, idling time, driving habits, and vehicle condition. Depending on these and other factors, you may not achieve the rated fuel economy of this vehicle.

Maintenance and Fuel Economy

You can optimize your fuel economy with proper maintenance of your vehicle. Follow the maintenance schedule and, if necessary, consult the service information provided for your vehicle.

Maintenance Schedule P. 323

- Use engine oil with the viscosity recommended.

Recommended Engine Oil P. 330

- Maintain the specified tyre pressure.
- Do not load the vehicle with excess luggage.
- Keep your vehicle clean. A buildup of snow or mud on your vehicle's underside adds weight and increases wind resistance.

Improving Fuel Economy and Reducing CO_2 Emissions

Direct calculation is the recommended method to determine actual fuel consumed while driving.



Maintenance

This chapter discusses basic maintenance.



Before Performing Maintenance
- Inspection and Maintenance 320
- Safety When Performing Maintenance ..321
- Parts and Fluids Used in Maintenance Service 322

Maintenance Schedule 323

Maintenance Under the Bonnet
- Maintenance Items Under the Bonnet .. 328
- Opening the Bonnet 329
- Recommended Engine Oil 330
- Oil Check 331
- Adding Engine Oil 332
- Cooling System 333
- High Voltage System Coolant 335
- Transmission Fluid 336
- Brake Fluid 336
- Refilling Window Washer Fluid 337
- Fuel Filter 338

Replacing Light Bulbs 339

Checking and Maintaining Wiper Blades 347

Checking and Maintaining Tyres
- Checking Tyres 349
- Wear Indicators 351
- Tyre Service Life 351
- Tyre and Wheel Replacement 352
- Tyre Rotation 353
- Snow Traction Devices 354

12-Volt Battery 356

Remote Transmitter Care
- Replacing the Remote Battery 359

Climate Control System Maintenance ..361

Cleaning
- Interior Care 363
- Exterior Care 366

Accessories and Modifications 369

Inspection and Maintenance

For your safety, perform all listed inspections and maintenance to keep your vehicle in good condition. If you become aware of any abnormality (noise, smell, insufficient brake fluid, oil residue on the ground, etc.), have your vehicle inspected by a dealer. Refer to the maintenance schedule in this owner's manual for detailed maintenance and inspection information.

➡ **Maintenance Schedule** P. 323

■ Types of Inspection and Maintenance

■ Routine inspections

Perform inspections before long distance trips, when washing the vehicle, or when refueling.

■ Periodic inspections

- Check the brake fluid level monthly.
  ➡ **Brake Fluid** P. 336
- Check the tyre pressure monthly. Examine the tread for wear and foreign objects.
  ➡ **Checking and Maintaining Tyres** P. 349
- Check the operation of the exterior lights monthly.
  ➡ **Replacing Light Bulbs** P. 339
- Check the condition of the wiper blades at least every six months.
  ➡ **Checking and Maintaining Wiper Blades** P. 347

Safety When Performing Maintenance

Some of the most important safety precautions are given here. However, we cannot warn you of every conceivable hazard that can arise in performing maintenance. Only you can decide whether you should perform a given task.

■ Maintenance Safety

- To reduce the possibility of fire or explosion, keep cigarettes, sparks, and flames away from the 12-volt battery, all High Voltage systems, and all fuel related parts.
- Never leave rags, towels, or other flammable objects under the bonnet.
  ▶ Heat from the surrounding parts can ignite them, causing a fire.
- To clean parts, use a commercially available degreaser or parts cleaner, not petrol.
- Wear eye protection and protective clothing when working with the 12-volt battery or compressed air.
- Engine exhaust contains carbon monoxide, which is poisonous and can kill you.
  ▶ Only operate the engine if there is sufficient ventilation.

Safety When Performing Maintenance

⚠WARNING

Improperly maintaining this vehicle or failing to correct a problem before driving can cause a crash in which you can be seriously hurt or killed.

Always follow the inspection and maintenance recommendations and schedules in this owner's manual.

⚠WARNING

Failure to properly follow maintenance instructions and precautions can cause you to be seriously hurt or killed.

Always follow the procedures and precautions in this owner's manual.

Continued

■ Vehicle Safety

- The vehicle must be in a stationary condition.
  ▶ Make sure your vehicle is parked on level ground, the parking brake is set, and the power system is turned off.
- Make sure that the radiator fan is stopped before inspecting the engine compartment.
  ▶ Depending on the vehicle condition, the radiator fan may operate even when the power mode is in VEHICLE OFF.
- Be aware that hot parts can burn you.
  ▶ Make sure to let the power system including the engine and exhaust system cool thoroughly before touching vehicle parts.
- Be aware that moving parts can injure you.
  ▶ Do not activate the power system unless instructed, and keep your hands and limbs away from moving parts. When the power mode is on, the engine can automatically start, or the radiator fan may start operating without the engine running.
- Do not touch the high voltage battery and wiring (orange).

Parts and Fluids Used in Maintenance Service

The use of Honda Genuine Parts and fluids is recommended when maintaining and servicing your vehicle. Honda Genuine Parts are manufactured according to the same high quality standards used in Honda vehicles.

If your vehicle comes with the service book (Warranty booklet), the maintenance schedule for your vehicle is available in the book. For vehicles without the service book (Warranty booklet), refer to the following maintenance schedules.

The maintenance schedule outlines the minimum required maintenance that you should perform to ensure the troublefree operation of your vehicle. Due to regional and climatic differences, some additional servicing may be required. Please consult the service information provided for your vehicle for a more detailed description.

Maintenance work should be performed by properly trained and equipped technicians. Your authorised dealer meets all of these requirements.

Service at the indicated distance or time - whichever comes first.	km x 1,000	20	40	60	80	100	120	140	160	180	200
	months	12	24	36	48	60	72	84	96	108	120
Replace engine oil	Normal	Every 10,000 km or 1 year									
	Severe	Every 5,000 km or 6 months									
Replace engine oil filter	Normal	Every 20,000 km or 2 years									
	Severe	Every 10,000 km or 1 year									
Replace air cleaner element		Every 20,000 km*2 Every 30,000 km*3									
Inspect valve clearance*1		Every 120,000 km									

*1:Sensory Method: Adjust the valves during service 120,000 km if they are noisy.
*2:Indian models
*3:Except Indian models

Service at the indicated distance or time - whichever comes first.		km x 1,000	20	40	60	80	100	120	140	160	180	200
		months	12	24	36	48	60	72	84	96	108	120
Replace spark plugs			Every 100,000 km									
Replace engine coolant			At 200,000 km or 10 years, thereafter every 100,000 km or 5 years									
Replace transmission fluid*1						•				•		
Replace transmission fluid*2	Normal		Every 150,000 km or 6 years									
	Severe		Every 75,000 km or 3 years									
Replace dust and pollen filter			•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•
Inspect front and rear brakes			Every 10,000 km or 1 year									
Replace fuel filter*3	Normal		Every 150,000 km*4 Every 180,000 km*5									
	Severe		Every 70,000 km*4 Every 110,000 km*5									
Replace brake fluid			Every 3 years									
Check expiration date for tyre repair kit bottle (If equipped)			Every year									
Rotate tyres (Check tyre inflation and condition at least once per month)			Every 10,000 km									

*1:Indian models
*2:Except Indian models
*3:It is recommended that you replace the fuel filter if the fuel you are using is suspected to be contaminated with dust, etc. because the filter may be clogged sooner.
*4:Indian and African models
*5:Except Indian and African models

Service at the indicated distance or time - whichever comes first.	km x 1,000	20	40	60	80	100	120	140	160	180	200
	months	12	24	36	48	60	72	84	96	108	120
Visually inspect the following items:											
Tie rod ends, steering gear box, and boots Suspension components Driveshaft boots		Every 10,000 km or 1 year									
Brake hoses and lines (including ABS/VSA) All fluid levels and condition of fluid Exhaust system Fuel lines and connections		•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•

Severe Conditions

Follow the Severe Conditions Maintenance Schedule if you drive your car MAINLY under one or more of the following conditions:

- Driving less than 8 km per trip or, in freezing temperatures, driving less than 16 km per trip.
- Driving in extremely hot, over 35°C condition.
- Extensive idling or long periods of stop-and-go driving.
- Driving with a loaded car-top carrier or driving in mountainous conditions.
- Driving on muddy, dusty, or de-iced roads.

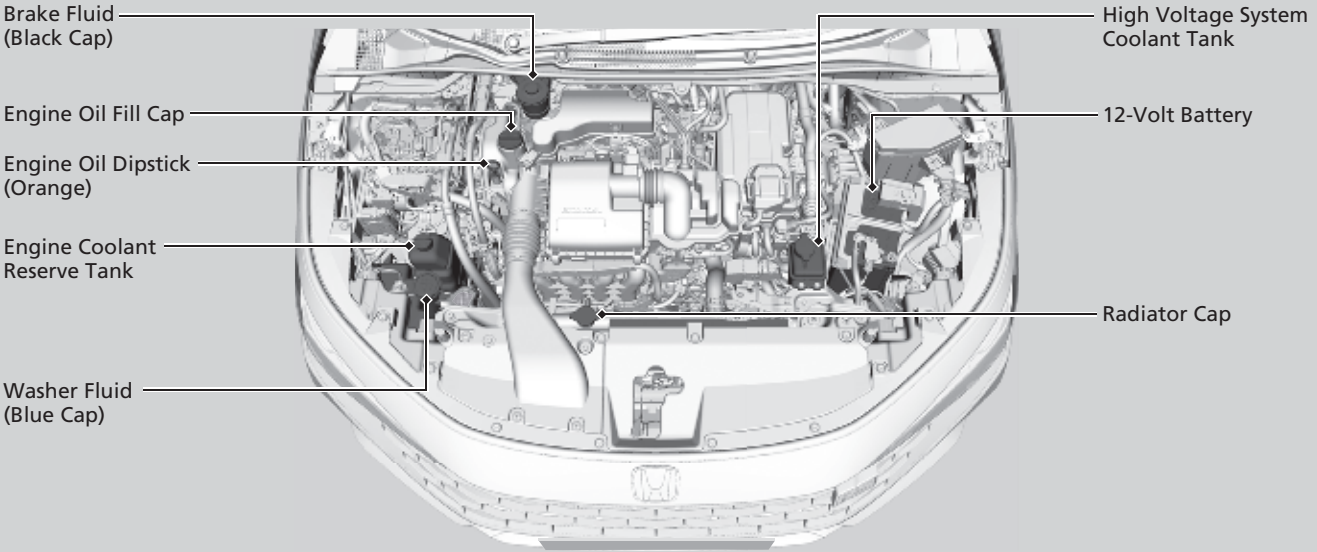
NOTE: If you only OCCASIONALLY drive under "severe" conditions, you should follow the Normal Conditions Maintenance Schedule.

Maintenance Record

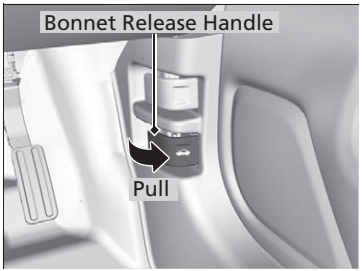
Have your servicing dealer record all required maintenance below. Keep receipts for all work done on your vehicle.

	Km or Month	Date	Sign or Stamp
20,000 km (or 12 Mo.)			
40,000 km (or 24 Mo.)			
60,000 km (or 36 Mo.)			
80,000 km (or 48 Mo.)			
100,000 km (or 60 Mo.)			
120,000 km (or 72 Mo.)			
140,000 km (or 84 Mo.)			
160,000 km (or 96 Mo.)			
180,000 km (or 108 Mo.)			
200,000 km (or 120 Mo.)			

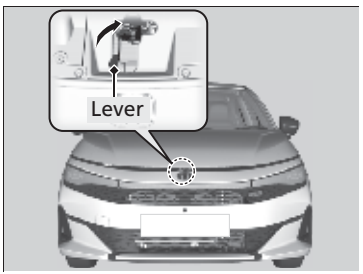
Maintenance Items Under the Bonnet



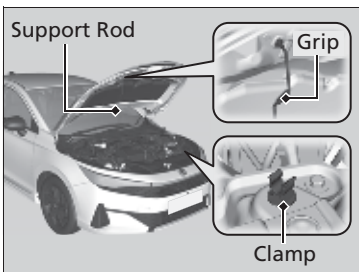
Opening the Bonnet



1. Park the vehicle on a level surface, and set the parking brake.
2. Pull the bonnet release handle under the driver's side lower outside corner of the dashboard.
   ▶ The bonnet will pop up slightly.



3. Pull up the bonnet latch lever (located under the front edge of the bonnet to the centre) and raise the bonnet. Once you have raised the bonnet slightly, you can release the lever.



4. Remove the support rod from the clamp using the grip. Mount the support rod in the bonnet.

When closing, remove the support rod and stow it in the clamp, then gently lower the bonnet. Remove your hand at a height of approximately 30 cm and let the bonnet close.

Opening the Bonnet

NOTICE

Do not open the bonnet when the wiper arms are raised. The bonnet will strike the wipers, resulting in possible damage to the bonnet and/or the wipers.

When closing the bonnet, check that the bonnet is securely latched.

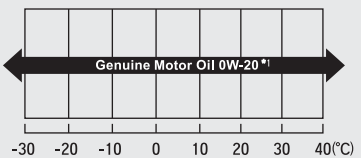
If the bonnet latch lever moves stiffly, or if you can open the bonnet without lifting the lever, the latch mechanism should be cleaned and lubricated.

Recommended Engine Oil

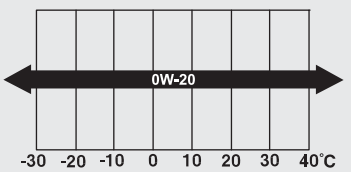
Use a genuine engine oil or another commercial engine oil of suitable type and viscosity (for the ambient temperature) as shown in the image that follows.

Oil is a major contributor to your engine's performance and longevity. If you drive the vehicle with insufficient or deteriorated oil, the engine may fail or be damaged.

Genuine Engine Oil	Commercial Engine Oil
• Honda Genuine Motor Oil	• API service SN or higher grade fuel-efficient oil • API Certification Mark "Starburst"



Ambient Temperature



Ambient Temperature

*1:Formulated to improve fuel economy.

Recommended Engine Oil

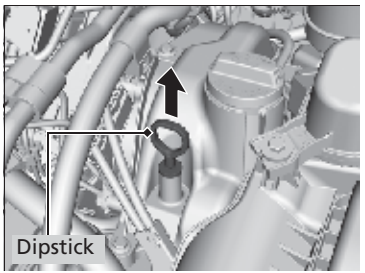
Engine Oil Additives
Your vehicle does not require oil additives. In fact, they may adversely affect the engine performance and durability.

The following seal indicates the oil is energy conserving and that it meets the American Petroleum Institute's latest requirements.

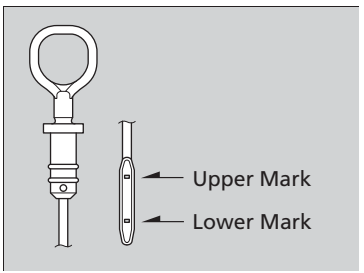


Oil Check

We recommend that you check the engine oil level every time you refuel.
Park the vehicle on level ground.
Turn off the power system. You can check the oil level without the engine having run beforehand. If the engine has been running, wait approximately three minutes before you check the oil.



1. Remove the dipstick (orange).
2. Wipe the dipstick with a clean cloth or paper towel.
3. Insert the dipstick back all the way into its hole.

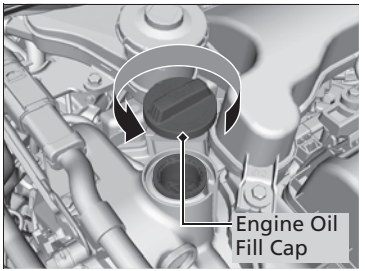


4. Remove the dipstick again, and check the level. It should be between the upper and lower marks. Add oil if necessary.

Oil Check

If the oil level is near or below the lower mark, slowly add oil, being careful not to overfill.

Adding Engine Oil



1. Unscrew and remove the engine oil fill cap.
2. Add oil slowly.
3. Reinstall the engine oil fill cap, and tighten it securely.
4. Wait for three minutes and recheck the engine oil dipstick.

Adding Engine Oil

NOTICE

Do not fill the engine oil above the upper mark. Overfilling the engine oil may result in leaks and engine damage.

If any oil spills, wipe it away immediately. Spilled oil may damage the engine compartment components.

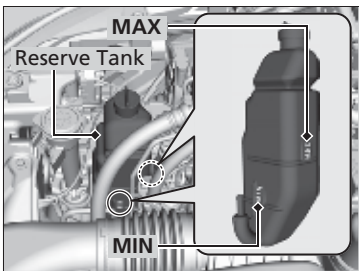
Cooling System

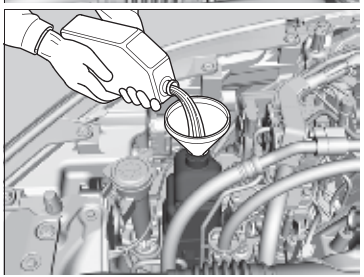
Specified coolant: Honda All Season Antifreeze/Coolant Type 2

This coolant is premixed with 50% antifreeze and 50% water. Do not add any straight antifreeze or water.

We recommend you check the engine coolant level every time you refuel. Check the reserve tank first. If it is completely empty, also check the coolant level in the radiator. Add the engine coolant accordingly.

Reserve Tank





1. **Make sure the engine and radiator are cool.**
2. Check the amount of coolant in the reserve tank.
   ▶ If the coolant level is below the **MIN** mark, add the specified coolant until it reaches the **MAX** mark.
3. Inspect the cooling system for leaks.

Cooling System

⚠WARNING

Removing the radiator cap while the engine is hot can cause the coolant to spray out, seriously scalding you.

Always let the engine and radiator cool down before removing the radiator cap.

NOTICE

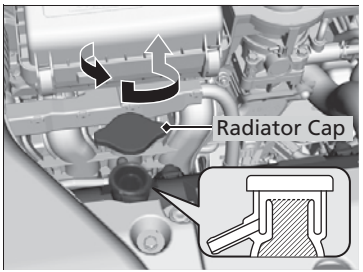
If temperatures consistently below -30°C are expected, the coolant mixture should be changed to a higher concentration. Consult your Honda dealer for details about a suitable coolant mixture.

If Honda antifreeze/coolant is not available, you may use another major brand of non-silicate coolant as a temporary replacement. Check that it is a high quality coolant recommended for aluminium engines. Continued use of any non-Honda coolant can result in corrosion, causing the cooling system to malfunction or fail. Have the cooling system flushed and refilled with Honda antifreeze/coolant as soon as possible.

Do not add rust inhibitors or other additives to your vehicle's cooling system. They may not be compatible with the coolant or with the engine components.

Continued

Radiator



1. **Make sure the engine and radiator are cool.**
2. Turn the radiator cap 1/8th turn anticlockwise and relieve any pressure in the cooling system.
3. Push down and turn the radiator cap anticlockwise to remove it.
4. The coolant level should be up to the base of the filler neck. Add coolant if it is low.
5. Put the radiator cap back on, and tighten it fully.

Radiator

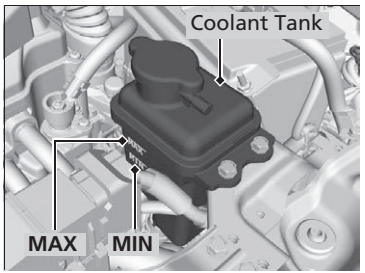
NOTICE

Pour the fluid slowly and carefully so you do not spill any. Clean up any spills immediately; they can damage components in the engine compartment.

High Voltage System Coolant

When checking the coolant level, make sure to follow the procedures listed below. If the coolant level is below the **MIN** mark, have your vehicle inspected by a dealer.

■ Coolant Tank



1. Check the coolant level in the tank.
2. If the coolant level has dropped below the **MIN** level, have your vehicle serviced at a dealer.
▶ Only a properly trained technician can refill the coolant and check the system for leaks.

High Voltage System Coolant

Do not add rust inhibitors or other additives to your vehicle's coolant system. They may not be compatible with the coolant or with the motor components.

Transmission Fluid

Specified fluid: Honda ATF DW-1

Have a dealer check the fluid level and replace if necessary.
Follow your vehicle's maintenance service timing of when to change transmission fluid.

Maintenance Schedule P. 323

Do not attempt to check or change the transmission fluid yourself.

Transmission Fluid

NOTICE

Do not mix Honda ATF DW-1 with other transmission fluids.

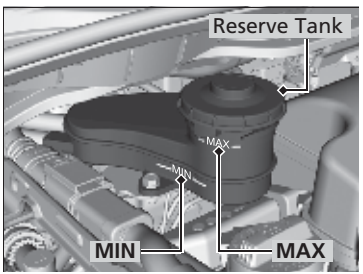
Using a transmission fluid other than Honda ATF DW-1 may adversely affect the operation and durability of your vehicle's transmission, and damage the transmission.

Any damage caused by using a transmission fluid that is not equivalent to Honda ATF DW-1 is not covered by Honda's new vehicle limited warranty.

Brake Fluid

Specified fluid: Brake Fluid with DOT 3 or DOT 4

■ Checking the Brake Fluid



The fluid level should be between the **MIN** and **MAX** marks on the side of the reserve tank.

Brake Fluid

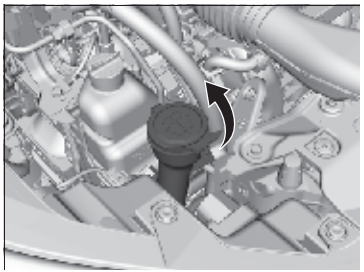
NOTICE

Brake fluid marked DOT 5 is not compatible with your vehicle's braking system and can cause extensive damage.

We recommend using a genuine product.

If the brake fluid level is at or below the **MIN** mark, have a dealer inspect the vehicle for leaks or worn brake pads as soon as possible.

Refilling Window Washer Fluid



Check the amount of window washer fluid by looking at the reservoir.

If the level is low, fill the washer reservoir.

Pour the washer fluid carefully. Do not overflow the reservoir.

Refilling Window Washer Fluid

NOTICE

Do not use engine antifreeze or a vinegar/water solution in the windscreen washer reservoir.
Antifreeze can damage your vehicle's paint. A vinegar/water solution can damage the windscreen washer pump.
Use only commercially available windscreen washer fluid.
Avoid prolonged use of hard water to prevent lime scale buildup.

Fuel Filter

Replace fuel filter according to the time and distance recommendations in the maintenance schedule.

Have a qualified technician change the fuel filter. Fuel in the system can spray out and create a hazard if all fuel line connections are not handled correctly.

Headlight Bulbs

Headlights are LED type. Have an authorised Honda dealer inspect and replace the light assembly.

Front Turn Signal, Position/Daytime Running Lights

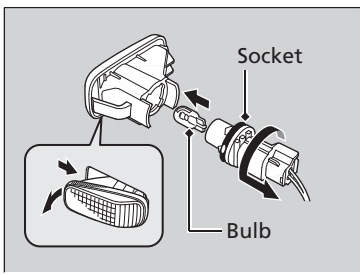
Front turn signal, position/daytime running lights are LED type. Have an authorised Honda dealer inspect and replace the light assembly.

Side Turn Signal/Emergency Indicator Lights

Fender type

When replacing, use the following bulbs.

Side Turn Signal Light: 5 W Amber (WY5W)



1. Push the front of the side turn signal assembly towards the rear of the vehicle until it pops out of the body.
2. Turn the socket anticlockwise and remove it.
3. Remove the old bulb and insert a new bulb.

Door mirror type

Door mirror side turn lights are LED type. Have an authorised Honda dealer inspect and replace the light assembly.

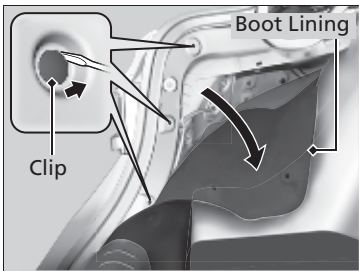
Headlight Bulbs

The headlight aim is set by the factory, and does not need to be adjusted. However, if you regularly carry heavy items in the boot, have the aiming readjusted at a dealer or by a qualified technician.

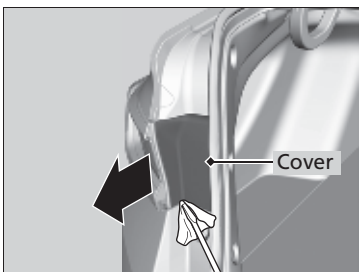
Brake Light, Rear Side Marker/Taillight and Rear Turn Signal Light Bulbs

When replacing, use the following bulbs.

Brake Light:	**LED Type**
Rear Side Marker/Taillight:	**LED Type**
Rear Turn Signal Light:	**21W Amber (WY21W)**



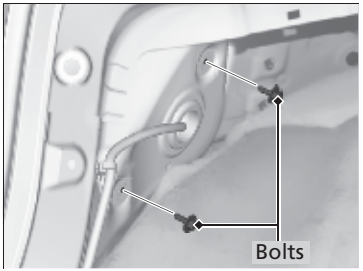
1. Remove the holding clips using a flat-tip screwdriver, then pull the lining back.



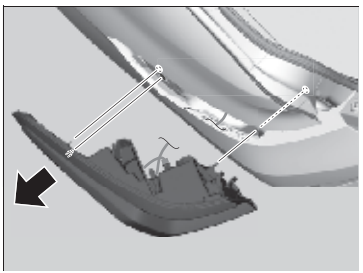
2. Pry on the edge of the cover using a flat-tip screwdriver to remove the cover.
▶ Wrap the flat-tip screwdriver with a cloth to prevent scratches.

Brake Light, Rear Side Marker/Taillight and Rear Turn Signal Light Bulbs

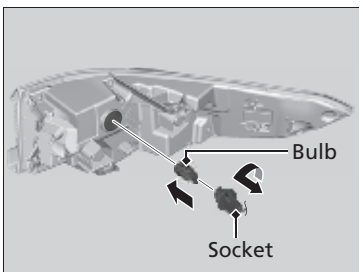
Brake lights, rear side marker/taillights are LED type. Have an authorised Honda dealer inspect and replace the light assembly.



3. Use a Phillips-head screwdriver or socket to remove the bolts.



4. Pull the light assembly out of the rear pillar.

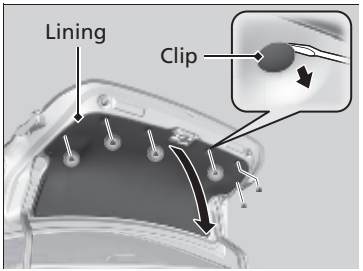


5. Turn the socket anticlockwise and remove it.
6. Remove the old bulb and insert a new bulb.

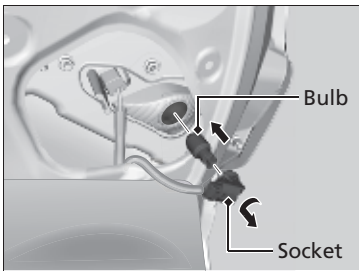
Taillight and Back-Up Light Bulbs

When replacing, use the following bulbs.

Taillight:	**LED Type**
Back-Up Light:	**16 W (W16W)**



1. Remove the holding clips using a flat-tip screwdriver, then pull the lining back.



2. Turn the socket anticlockwise and remove it.

3. Remove the old bulb and insert a new bulb.

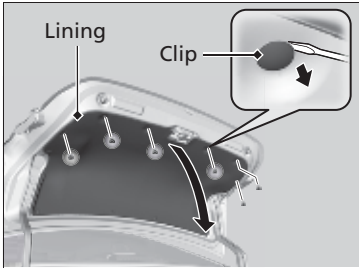
Taillight and Back-Up Light Bulbs

Taillights are LED type. Have an authorised Honda dealer inspect and replace the light assembly.

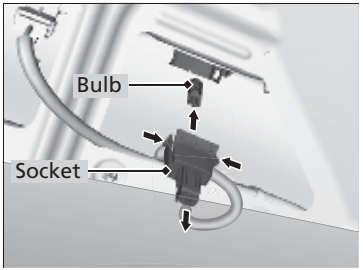
Rear Licence Plate Light Bulbs

When replacing, use the following bulb.

Rear Licence Plate Light: 5 W (W5W)



1. Remove the holding clips using a flat-tip screwdriver, then pull the lining back.



2. Remove the licence plate light assembly by squeezing the tabs on both sides of the socket.
3. Remove the old bulb and insert a new bulb.

High-Mount Brake Light

High-mount brake light is LED type. Have an authorised Honda dealer inspect and replace the light assembly.

Grille Light*

Grille Light is LED type. Have an authorised Honda dealer inspect and replace the light assembly.

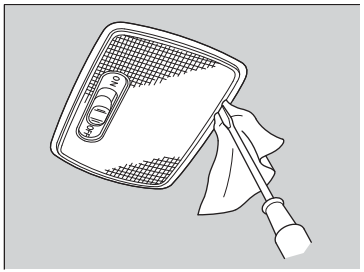
 * Not available on all models

Other Light Bulbs

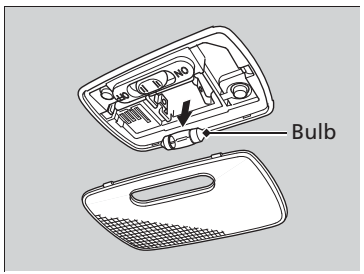
■ Ceiling Light Bulb*

When replacing, use the following bulb.

Ceiling Light: 8 W



1. Pry on the edge of the cover using a flat-tip screwdriver to remove the cover.
▶ Wrap the flat-tip screwdriver with a cloth to prevent scratches.

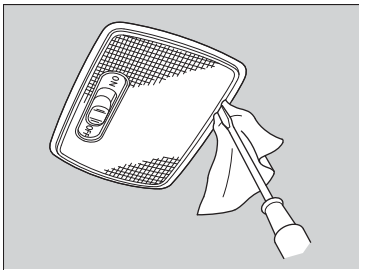


2. Remove the old bulb and insert a new bulb.

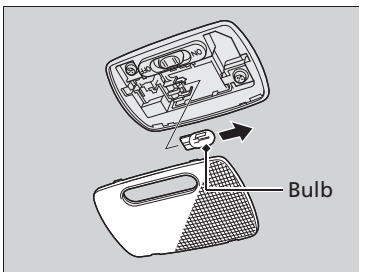
■ Ceiling Light Bulb*

When replacing, use the following bulb.

Ceiling Light: 8 W



1. Pry on the edge of the cover using a flat-tip screwdriver to remove the cover.
▶ Wrap the flat-tip screwdriver with a cloth to prevent scratches.

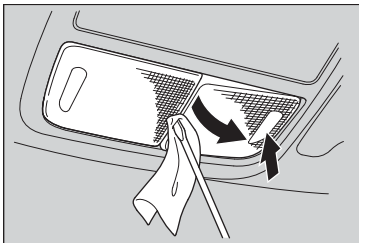


2. Remove the old bulb and insert a new bulb.

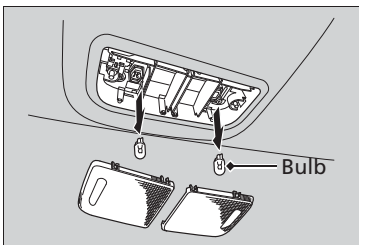
■ Map Light Bulbs*

When replacing, use the following bulbs.

Map Light: 8 W



1. Push on the lens of the opposite side you are replacing.
2. Pry on the edge between the lenses using a flat-tip screwdriver to remove the cover.
▶ Wrap the flat-tip screwdriver with a cloth to prevent scratches.



3. Remove the old bulb and insert a new bulb.

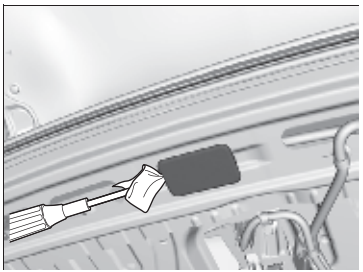
* Not available on all models

Continued

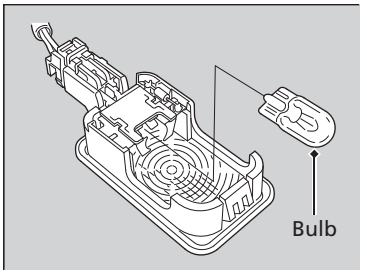
■ Boot Light Bulb

When replacing, use the following bulb.

Boot Light: 5 W



1. Pry on the edge of the cover using a flat-tip screwdriver to remove the cover.
▶ Wrap the flat-tip screwdriver with a cloth to prevent scratches.

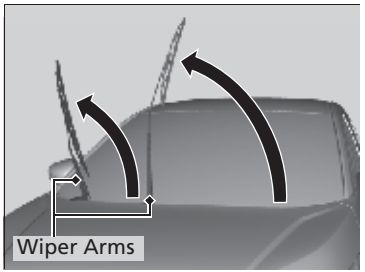


2. Remove the old bulb and insert a new bulb.

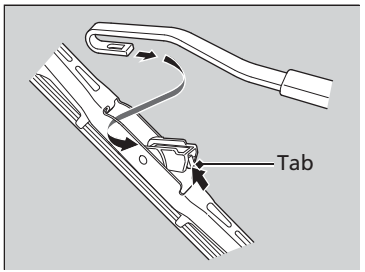
Checking Wiper Blades

If the wiper blade rubber has deteriorated, it will leave streaks and become noisy, and the hard surfaces of the blade may scratch the window glass.

Changing the Wiper Blade Rubber



1. Lift the driver side wiper arm first, then the passenger side.



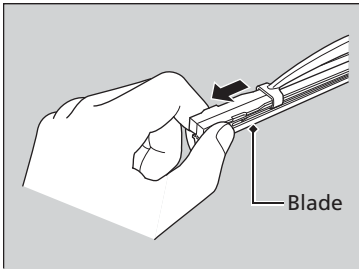
2. Press up on and hold the tab, then slide the holder off the wiper arm.

Changing the Wiper Blade Rubber

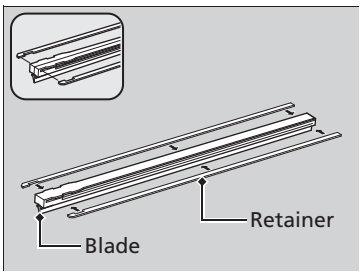
NOTICE

Avoid dropping the wiper arm onto the windscreen, as it may damage the wiper arm and/or the windscreen.

Continued



3. Slide the wiper blade out of the holder by pulling the tabbed end out.



4. Remove the retainers from the wiper blade that has been removed, and mount to a new wiper blade.
▶ Correctly align the wiper blade protrusion and the retainer grooves.
5. Slide the new wiper blade onto the holder from the bottom end.
▶ The tab on the holder should fit in the indent of the wiper blade.
6. Slide the holder onto the wiper arm securely.
7. Lower the passenger side wiper arm first, then the driver side.

Checking Tyres

To safely operate your vehicle, your tyres must be of the proper type and size, in good condition with adequate tread, and properly inflated.

■ Inflation guidelines

Properly inflated tyres provide the best combination of handling, tread life, and comfort. Refer to the driver's doorjamb label for the specified pressure.

Underinflated tyres wear unevenly, adversely affect handling and fuel economy, and are more likely to fail from overheating.

Overinflated tyres make your vehicle ride harshly, are more prone to road hazards, and wear unevenly.

Every day before you drive, look at each of the tyres. If one looks lower than the others, check the pressure with a tyre gauge.

At least once a month or before long trips, use a gauge to measure the pressure in all tyres, including the spare*. Even tyres in good condition can lose 10-20 kPa (0.1-0.2 bar, 1-2 psi) per month.

Checking Tyres

⚠WARNING

Using tyres that are excessively worn or improperly inflated can cause a crash in which you can be seriously hurt or killed.

Follow all instructions in this owner's manual regarding tyre inflation and maintenance.

Measure the air pressure when tyres are cold. This means the vehicle has been parked for at least three hours, or driven less than 1.6 km. If necessary, add or release air until the specified pressure is reached.

If checked when hot, tyre pressure can be as much as 30–40 kPa (0.3-0.4 bar, 4-6 psi) higher than if checked when cold.

Have a dealer check the tyres if you feel a consistent vibration while driving. New tyres and any that have been removed and reinstalled should be properly balanced.

Models with deflation warning system

Whenever tyre pressure is adjusted, you must calibrate the deflation warning system.

➡ **Deflation Warning System*** P. 237

* Not available on all models

Continued

■ Inspection guidelines

Every time you check inflation, also examine the tyres and valve stems.
Look for:

- Bumps or bulges on the side or in the tread. Replace the tyre if you find any cuts, splits, or cracks in the side of the tyre. Replace it if you see fabric or cord.
- Remove any foreign objects and inspect for air leaks.
- Uneven tread wear. Have a dealer check the wheel alignment.
- Excessive tread wear.
  ➡ **Wear Indicators** P. 351
- Cracks or other damage around valve stem.

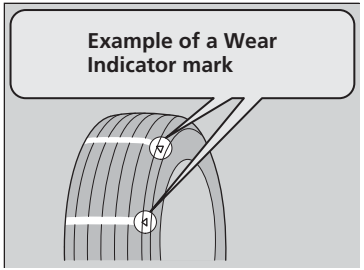
Checking Tyres

High speed driving

We recommend that you do not drive faster than the posted speed limits and conditions allow. If you drive at sustained high speeds (over 160 km/h), adjust the cold tyre pressures as shown below to avoid excessive heat build up and sudden tyre failure.

Tyre Size	185/55R16 87H
Pressure	Front: 260 kPa (2.6 bar, 38 psi)
	Rear: 240 kPa (2.4 bar, 35 psi)

Wear Indicators



The groove where the wear indicator is located is about 1.6 mm shallower than elsewhere on the tyre. If the tread has worn so that the indicator is exposed, replace the tyre. **Worn out tyres have poor traction on wet roads.**

Tyre Service Life

The life of your tyres is dependent on many factors, including driving habits, road conditions, vehicle loading, inflation pressure, maintenance history, speed, and environmental conditions (even when the tyres are not in use).

In addition to regular inspections and inflation pressure maintenance, it is recommended that you have annual inspections performed once the tyres reach five years old. All tyres, including the spare*, should be removed from service after 10 years from the date of manufacture, regardless of their condition or state of wear.

* Not available on all models

Tyre and Wheel Replacement

Replace your tyres with radials of the same size, load range, speed rating, and maximum cold tyre pressure rating (as shown on the tyre's sidewall). Using tyres of a different size or construction can cause certain vehicle systems such as the ABS and Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) system to work incorrectly.

It is best to replace all four tyres at the same time. If that isn't possible, replace the front or rear tyres in pairs.

Make sure that the wheel's and wheel nut's specifications match those of the original wheels.

Tyre and Wheel Replacement

⚠WARNING

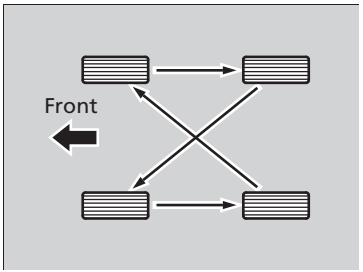
Installing improper wheel, wheel nuts and tyres on your vehicle can affect handling and stability. This can cause a crash in which you can be seriously hurt or killed.

Always use the size and type of tyres recommended in the tyre information label on your vehicle.

Tyre Rotation

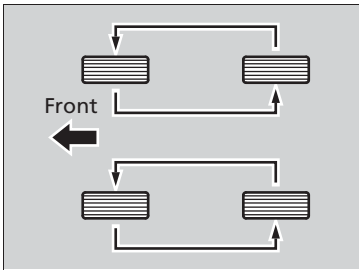
Rotating tyres according to the maintenance schedule helps to distribute wear more evenly and increase tyre life.

■ Tyres without rotation marks



Rotate the tyres as shown here.

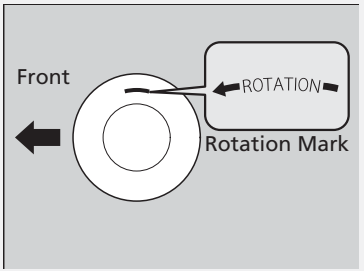
■ Tyres with rotation marks



Rotate the tyres as shown here.

Tyre Rotation

Tyres with directional tread patterns should only be rotated front to back (not from one side to the other). Directional tyres should be mounted with the rotation indication mark facing forward, as shown below.



When the tyres are rotated, make sure the air pressures are checked.

Models with deflation warning system

Whenever tyres are rotated, you must calibrate the deflation warning system.

Deflation Warning System* P. 237

Wheel nut torque for the tyres that come standard-equipped with your vehicle is as follows.
Wheel nut torque:
108 N·m (11 kgf·m, 80 lbf·ft)

* Not available on all models

Snow Traction Devices

If driving on snowy or frozen roads, mount winter tyres, or tyre chains; reduce speed; and maintain sufficient distance between vehicles when driving.

Be particularly careful when operating the steering wheel or brakes to prevent skidding.

Use tyre chains, winter tyres, or all season tyres when necessary or according to the law.

When mounting, refer to the following points.

For winter tyres:
- Select the size and load ranges that are the same as the original tyres.
- Mount the tyres to all four wheels.

For tyre chains:
- Consult a dealer before purchasing any type of chains for your vehicle.
- Install them on the front tyres only.
- Because your vehicle has limited tyre clearance, we strongly recommend using the chains listed below:

Indian, Bhutanese, Sri Lankan and Nepalese models

Original Tyre Size*1	Chain Type
185/55R16 87H	RUD-matic classic 48479

*1:Original tyre size is mentioned on the tyre information label on the driver's doorjamb.

Snow Traction Devices

⚠WARNING

Using the wrong chains, or not properly installing chains, can damage the brake lines and cause a crash in which you can be seriously injured or killed.

Follow all instructions in this owner's manual regarding the selection and use of tyre chains.

NOTICE

Traction devices that are the wrong size or improperly installed can damage your vehicle's brake lines, suspension, body, and wheels. Stop driving if they are hitting any part of the vehicle.

When tyre chains are mounted, follow the chain manufacturer's instructions regarding vehicle operational limits.

Use tyre chains only in an emergency or when they are legally required for driving through a certain area.

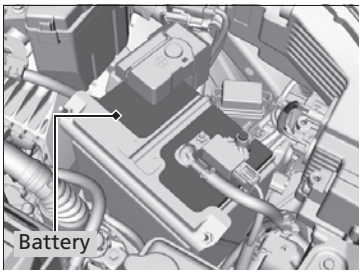
- Follow the chain manufacturer's instruction when installing. Mount them as tightly as you can.
- Check that the chains do not touch the brake lines or suspension.
- Drive slowly.

Snow Traction Devices

Use greater caution when driving with tyre chains on snow or ice. They may have less-predictable handling than good winter tyres without chains.

If your vehicle is equipped with summer tyres, be aware that these tyres are not designed for winter driving conditions. For more information, contact a dealer.

Checking the 12-Volt Battery



The condition of the battery is monitored by a sensor located on the negative terminal of the battery. If there is a problem with this sensor, the driver information interface will display a warning message. If this happens, have your vehicle inspected by a dealer.

Check the battery terminals for corrosion monthly.

If your vehicle's battery is disconnected or goes dead:

- The clock resets.

Clock P. 138

12-Volt Battery

⚠WARNING

The battery gives off explosive hydrogen gas during normal operation.

A spark or open flame can cause the battery to explode with enough force to kill or seriously hurt you.

Keep all sparks, open flames, and smoking materials away from the battery.

Wear protective clothing and a face shield, or have a skilled technician do any battery maintenance.

⚠WARNING

The battery contains sulfuric acid (electrolyte) which is highly corrosive and poisonous.

Getting electrolyte in your eyes or on your skin can cause serious burns. Wear protective clothing and eye protection when working on or near the battery.

Swallowing electrolyte can cause fatal poisoning if immediate action is not taken.

KEEP OUT OF THE REACH OF CHILDREN

Charging the 12-Volt Battery

Disconnect both battery cables to prevent damaging your vehicle's electrical system. Always disconnect the negative (-) cable first, and reconnect it last.

12-Volt Battery

Emergency Procedures
Eyes: Flush with water from a cup or other container for at least 15 minutes. (Water under pressure can damage the eye.) Call a physician immediately.
Skin: Remove contaminated clothing. Flush the skin with large quantities of water. Call a physician immediately.
Swallowing: Drink water or milk. Call a physician immediately.

When you find corrosion, clean the battery terminals by applying a baking powder and water solution. Clean the terminals with a damp towel. Cloth/towel dry the battery. Coat the terminals with grease to help prevent future corrosion.

When replacing the battery, the replacement must be of the same specifications.
Consult a dealer for more information.

Continued

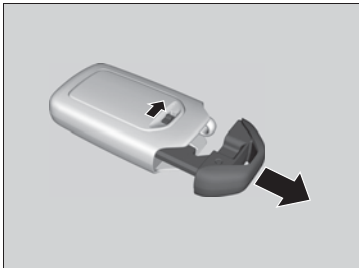
12-Volt Battery

The Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow, vehicle stability assist (VSA) system, vehicle stability assist (VSA) **OFF**, safety support, low tyre pressure/deflation warning system*, Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS), and Road Departure Mitigation indicators may come on in amber along with a message in the driver information interface when you set the power mode to ON after reconnecting the 12-volt battery.
Drive a short distance at more than 20 km/h. The indicator should go off. If it does not, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

* Not available on all models

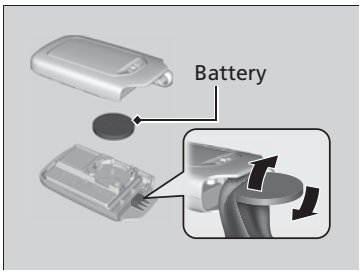
Replacing the Remote Battery

If the indicator does not come on when the button is pressed, replace the battery.



Battery type: CR2032

1. Remove the built-in key.



2. With the buttons facing down, remove the upper half of the cover by carefully prying on the edge with a coin.
▶ Wrap a coin with a cloth to prevent scratching the keyless remote.

3. Make sure to replace the battery with the correct polarity.

Replacing the Remote Battery

⚠⚠WARNING

CHEMICAL BURN HAZARD
The battery that powers the remote transmitter can cause severe internal burns and can even lead to death if swallowed.
Keep new and used batteries away from children.
If you suspect that a child has swallowed the battery, seek medical attention immediately.

CAUTION: Danger of explosion if battery is incorrectly replaced. Replace only with the same or equivalent type.

CAUTION: Do not exposed to excessive heat such as sunshine, fire or the like, that can result in an explosion or the leakage of flammable liquid or gas during use, storage or transportation.

CAUTION: Do not dispose of a battery into fire or a hot oven, or give mechanically crushing or cutting of a battery, that can result in an explosion.

CAUTION: Do not subjected to extremely low air pressure at high altitude that may result in an explosion or the leakage of flammable liquid or gas.

A warning mark is located adjacent to the button battery*.

* Not available on all models

Continued

Replacing the Remote Battery

NOTICE

An improperly disposed of battery can damage the environment. Always confirm local regulations for battery disposal.

Replacement batteries are commercially available or at a dealer.

Dust and Pollen Filter

When to Replace the Dust and Pollen Filter

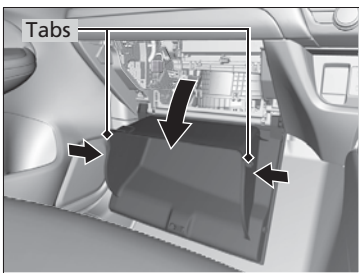
Replace the dust and pollen filter according to your vehicle's recommended maintenance schedule. It is recommended to replace the filter even sooner if the vehicle has been driven in a dusty environment.

Maintenance Schedule P. 323

How to Replace the Dust and Pollen Filter



1. Open the glove box.



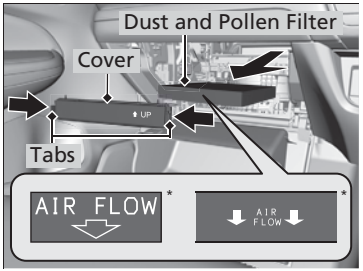
2. Disengage the two tabs by pushing on each side panel.
3. Pivot the glove box out of the way.

Dust and Pollen Filter

If the airflow from the climate control system deteriorates noticeably, and the windows fog up easily, the filter may need to be replaced.

The dust and pollen filter collects pollen, dust, and other debris in the air.

Continued



4. Push in the tabs on the corners of the filter case cover, and remove it.
5. Remove the filter from the case.
6. Install a new filter in the case.
▶ Put the **AIR FLOW** arrow directed side down.

Dust and Pollen Filter

If you are not sure how to replace the dust and pollen filter, have it replaced by a dealer.

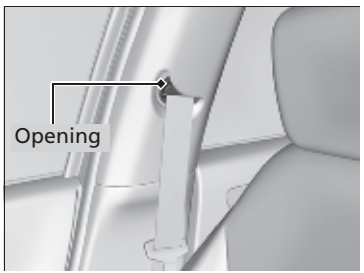
 * Not available on all models

Interior Care

Use a vacuum cleaner to remove dust before using a cloth.
Use a damp cloth with a mixture of mild detergent and warm water to remove dirt.
Use a clean cloth to remove detergent residue.

Cleaning Seat Belts

Use a soft brush with a mixture of mild soap and warm water to clean the seat belts. Let the belts air dry. Wipe the openings of the seat belt anchorages using a clean cloth.



Interior Care

Do not spill liquids inside the vehicle.
Electrical devices and systems may malfunction if liquids are splashed on them.

Do not use silicone-based sprays on electrical devices such as audio devices and switches.
Doing so may cause the items to malfunction or cause a fire inside the vehicle.
If a silicone-based spray is inadvertently used on electrical devices, consult a dealer.

Depending on their composition, chemicals and liquid aromatics may cause discolouration, wrinkles, and cracking to resin-based parts and textiles.
Do not use alkali solvents or organic solvents such as benzene or petrol.

After using chemicals, make sure to gently wipe them away using a dry cloth.
Do not place used cloths on top of resin-based parts or textiles for long periods of time without washing.

Be careful not to spill a liquid type air freshener.

Continued

Cleaning the Window

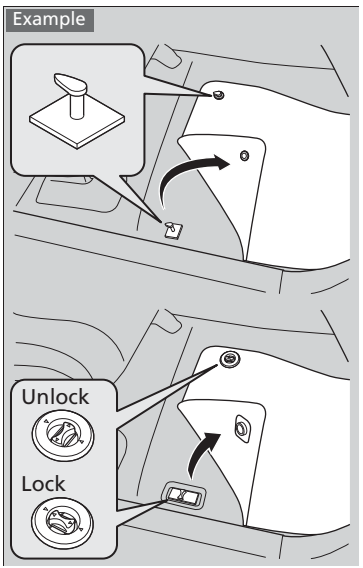
Wipe using a glass cleaner.

Cleaning the Window

Wires are mounted to the inside of the rear window. Wipe along the same direction as the wires with a soft cloth so as not to damage them.

Be careful not to spill fluids, such as water or glass cleaner, on or around the cover of the electrical components around the rearview mirror.

Floor Mats



The driver's floor mat hooks over floor anchorages, which keep the mat from sliding forward.

Do not put any additional floor mats on top of the anchored mat.

Floor Mats

If you use any floor mats that were not originally provided with your vehicle, make sure they are designed for your specific vehicle, fit correctly, and are securely anchored by the floor anchorages. Position any rear seat floor mats properly. If not properly positioned, the floor mats can interfere with the front seat functions.

Maintaining Genuine Leather*

To properly clean leather:

1. Use a vacuum or soft dry cloth first to remove any dirt or dust.

2. Clean the leather with a soft cloth dampened with a solution comprised of 90% water and 10% neutral soap.

3. Wipe away any soap residue with a clean damp cloth.

4. Wipe away residual water and allow leather to air dry in the shade.

Maintaining Genuine Leather*

It is important to clean or wipe away dirt or dust as soon as possible. Spills can soak into leather, resulting in stains. Dirt or dust can cause abrasions in the leather. In addition, please note that some dark coloured clothing can rub onto the leather seats, resulting in discolouration or stains.

* Not available on all models

Exterior Care

Dust off the vehicle body after you drive. Regularly inspect your vehicle for scratches on painted surfaces. A scratch on a painted surface can result in body rust. If you find a scratch, promptly repair it.

■ Washing the Vehicle

Wash the vehicle regularly. Wash more frequently when driving in the following conditions:

- If driving on roads with road salt.
- If driving in coastal areas.
- If tar, soot, bird droppings, insects, or tree sap is stuck to painted surfaces.
- If driving in conditions that cause buildup of mud, snow, ice, or other debris on the left side inner fender vent.

■ Using an Automated Car Wash

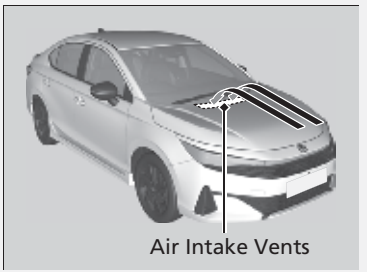
- Make sure to follow the instructions indicated on the automated car wash.
- Fold in the door mirrors.
- For models equipped with automatic intermittent wipers, turn the wipers off.

■ Using High Pressure Cleaners

- Keep sufficient distance between the cleaning nozzle and the vehicle body.
- Take particular care around the windows. Standing too close may cause water to enter the vehicle interior.
- Do not spray high pressure water directly into the engine compartment. Instead, use low pressure water and a mild detergent.
- Do not spray water directly onto the camera or the area around it. Water may enter the lens and cause the camera to malfunction.

Washing the Vehicle

Do not spray water into the air intake vents. It can cause a malfunction.



Air Intake Vents

If water and any chemicals are on the brakes when your vehicle is being washed, drive a short distance and apply the brakes several times before parking. Parking while brakes are wet may cause them to be stuck by rust.

Applying Wax

A good coat of automotive body wax helps to protect your vehicle's paint from the elements. Wax will wear off over time and expose your vehicle's paint to the elements, so reapply as necessary.

Maintaining the Bumpers and Other Resin-Coated Parts

If you get petrol, oil, engine coolant, or battery fluid on resin-coated parts, they may stain or the coating may peel. Promptly wipe it away using a soft cloth and clean water.

Cleaning the Window

Wipe using a glass cleaner.

Maintaining Aluminium Wheels

Aluminium is susceptible to deterioration caused by salt and other road contaminants. When necessary, as early as possible use a sponge and mild detergent to wipe away these contaminants. Do not use a stiff brush or harsh chemicals (including some commercial wheel cleaners). These can damage the protective finish on aluminium alloy wheels, resulting in corrosion. Depending on the type of finish, the wheels also may lose their lustre or appear burnished. To avoid water stains, wipe the wheels dry with a cloth while they are still wet.

Applying Wax

NOTICE

Chemical solvents and strong cleaners can damage the paint, metal, and plastic on your vehicle. Wipe away spills immediately.

Maintaining the Bumpers and Other Resin-Coated Parts

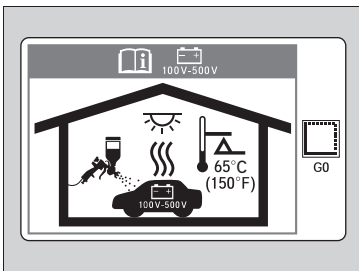
Ask a dealer about the correct coating material when you want to repair the painted surface of the parts made of resin.

Continued

■ Fogged Exterior Light Lenses

The inside lenses of exterior lights (headlights, brake lights, etc.) may fog temporarily if you have driven in the rain, or after the vehicle has been run through a car wash. Dew condensation also may build up inside the lenses when there is a significant enough difference between the ambient and inside lens temperatures (similar to vehicle windows fogging up in rainy conditions). These conditions are natural processes, not structural design problems in the exterior lights.
Lens design characteristics may result in moisture developing on the light lens frame surfaces. This also is not a malfunction.
However, if you see large amounts of water accumulation, or large water drops building up inside the lenses, have your vehicle inspected by a dealer.

■ Painting the Vehicle*



High temperature may damage the high voltage battery used to power the electric motor.
When painting the vehicle in a heated paint booth, make sure the temperature does not exceed 65°C.

 * Not available on all models

Accessories

When installing accessories, check the following:

- Do not install accessories on the windscreen. They can obstruct your view and delay your reaction to driving conditions.
- Do not install any items other than Honda genuine accessories designated for your vehicle over areas marked **SRS AIRBAG**, on the sides or backs of the front seats, on front or side pillars, or near the side windows.
  Items other than Honda genuine accessories designated for your vehicle installed in these areas may interfere with proper operation of the vehicle's airbags or may be propelled into you or another occupant if the airbags deploy.
- Be sure electronic accessories do not overload electrical circuits or interfere with proper operation of your vehicle.
  Fuses P. 409
- Before installing any electronic accessory, have the installer contact a dealer for assistance. If possible, have a dealer inspect the final installation.

Accessories and Modifications

⚠WARNING

Improper accessories or modifications can affect your vehicle's handling, stability, and performance, and cause a crash in which you can be seriously hurt or killed.

Follow all instructions in this owner's manual regarding accessories and modifications.

⚠WARNING

Use of improperly designed, engineered or manufactured high voltage battery assemblies could cause a fire in your vehicle.

A vehicle fire could result in a crash or injury.

Only use a genuine Honda high voltage battery assembly, or its equivalent, in your vehicle.

Modifications

Do not modify your vehicle in a manner that may affect its handling, stability, or reliability, or install non-genuine Honda parts or accessories that may have a similar effect.

Even minor modifications to vehicle systems can affect overall vehicle performance. Always make sure all equipment is properly installed and maintained, and do not make any modification to your vehicle or its systems that might cause your vehicle to no longer meet your country's and local regulations.

The on-board diagnostic port (OBD-II/SAE J1962 connector) installed on this vehicle is intended to be used with automobile system diagnostic devices or with other devices that Honda has approved. Use of any other type of device may adversely affect the vehicle's electronic systems or allow them to be compromised, possibly resulting in a system malfunction, drained battery, or other unexpected problems.

Do not modify or attempt to repair your vehicle's high voltage hybrid power system or otherwise modify vehicle electrical systems. Disassembling or modifying electrical equipment can result in a crash or a fire.

If you ever need to replace your vehicle's high voltage battery assembly outside of warranty coverage, we highly recommend that you only use a genuine Honda high voltage battery assembly. Genuine Honda high voltage battery assemblies are designed to work with your vehicle's hybrid power system and have been designed, engineered, and manufactured to avoid overcharging situations. Non-genuine high voltage battery assemblies may not have been similarly designed, engineered, and manufactured, and installation of such assemblies could result in overcharging, fires, loss of power, or other conditions that may increase the likelihood of a crash or injury.

Accessories and Modifications

When properly installed, mobile phones, alarms, two-way radios, radio antennas, and low-powered audio systems should not interfere with your vehicle's computer controlled systems, such as your airbags and anti-lock brakes.

Honda Genuine Accessories are recommended to ensure proper operation on your vehicle.

Some Honda Genuine Accessories are supplied with an exclusive owner's manual for the operation and care detail of the product. If an accessory owner's manual is provided to you, please refer to it for full detail.

If any Honda Genuine Accessories become inoperable, refer to the separate accessory owner's manual (if applicable) or consult a dealer for assistance to troubleshoot the potential faulty condition.

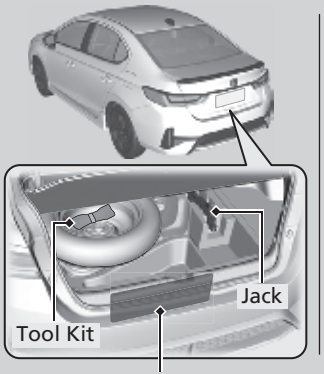
Handling the Unexpected

This chapter explains how to handle unexpected troubles.

Tools
Types of Tools 372
If a Tyre Goes Flat
Models with tyre repair kit
Temporarily Repairing a Flat Tyre 373
Models with spare tyre
Changing a Flat Tyre 383
Models with tyre repair kit
Handling of the Jack 392
Power System Won't Start
Checking the Procedure 393
If the Keyless Remote Battery is Weak .. 394
Emergency Power System Off 395
If the 12-Volt Battery Is Dead
Jump Starting Procedure 396
Shift Lever Does Not Move 399
Overheating
How to Handle Overheating 400
Indicator Coming On/Blinking
If the Engine Oil Pressure Low Warning Appears 402
If the 12-Volt Battery Charging System Indicator Comes On 403
If the Malfunction Indicator Lamp Comes On or Blinks 404
If the Brake System Indicator (Red) Comes On 405
If the Brake System Indicator (Red) comes on or blinks at the same time when the Brake System Indicator (Amber) comes on ...406
If the Electric Power Steering (EPS) System Indicator Comes On 407
Indian, Bhutanese, Nepalese and Sri Lankan models
If the Low Tyre Pressure/Deflation Warning System Indicator Comes On or Blinks ..408
Fuses
Fuse Locations 409
Inspecting and Changing Fuses 416
Emergency Towing 417

Types of Tools

Models with spare tyre




Jack Handle Bar

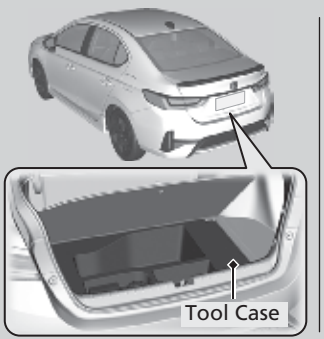

Jack


Wheel Nut Wrench/
Jack Handle


Detachable Towing Hook


Emergency Warning
Triangle

Models with tyre repair kit




Detachable Towing Hook

Types of Tools

The tools are stored in the boot.

Models with tyre repair kit

Temporarily Repairing a Flat Tyre

If the tyre has a large cut or is otherwise severely damaged, you will need to have the vehicle towed. If the tyre only has a small puncture, from a nail for instance, you can use the temporary tyre repair kit so that you can drive to the nearest service station for a more permanent repair.

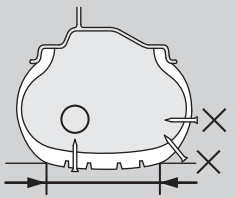
If a tyre goes flat while driving, grasp the steering wheel firmly and brake gradually to reduce speed. Then stop in a safe place.

1. Park the vehicle on a firm, level, and non-slippery ground and apply the parking brake.
2. Put the transmission into P.
3. Turn on the hazard warning lights and set the power mode to VEHICLE OFF.

Temporarily Repairing a Flat Tyre

The kit should not be used in the following situations. Instead, contact a dealer or a roadside assistant to have the vehicle towed.

- The tyre sealant has expired.
- More than one tyre is punctured.
- The puncture or cut is larger than 4 mm (3/16 inch).
- The tyre side wall is damaged or the puncture is outside the contact area.



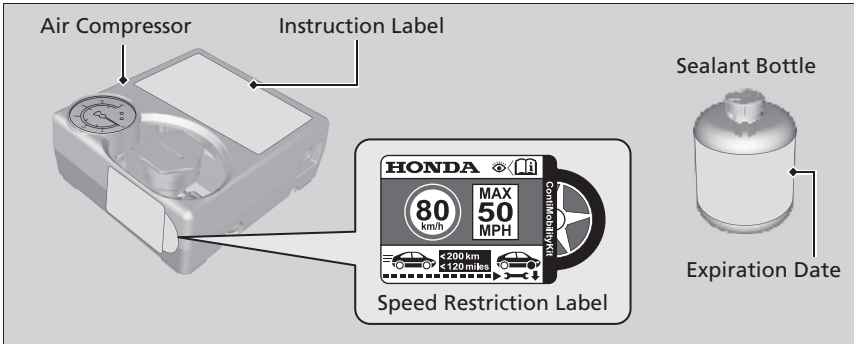
When the puncture is:	Kit Use
Smaller than 4 mm (3/16 inch)	Yes
Larger than 4 mm (3/16 inch)	No

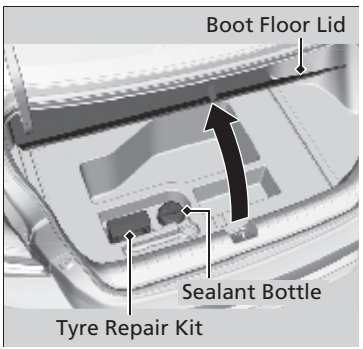
- Damage has been caused by driving with the tyres extremely under inflated.
- The tyre bead is no longer seated.
- The rim is damaged.

Do not remove a nail or screw that punctured the tyre. If you remove it from the tyre, you may not be able to repair the puncture using the kit.

Continued

Getting Ready to Temporarily Repair the Flat Tyre





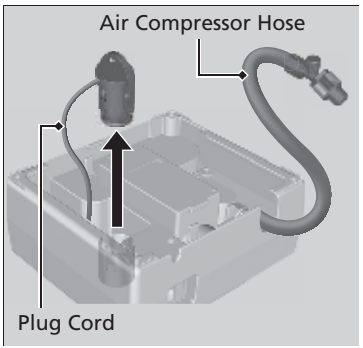
1. Pull the strap on the boot floor lid and open the lid.
2. Take the kit and sealant bottle out of the case.
3. Place the kit, face up, on flat ground near the flat tyre, away from traffic. Do not place the kit on its side.

Getting Ready to Temporarily Repair the Flat Tyre

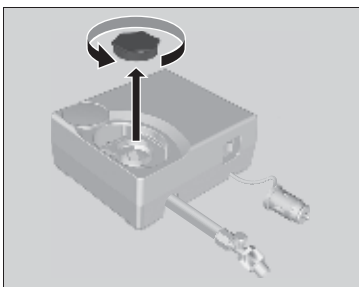
Speed restriction label are applied to the side of the temporary tyre repair kit.

When making a temporary repair, carefully read the instruction label provided on the kit.

Injecting the Sealant and Air



1. Take the air compressor hose and plug cord out of the back of the air compressor.



2. Remove the cap from the air compressor.

Injecting the Sealant and Air

⚠WARNING

Tyre sealant contains substances that are harmful and can be fatal if swallowed.

If accidentally swallowed, do not induce vomiting. Drink plenty of water and get medical attention immediately.

For skin or eye contact, flush with cool water and get medical attention if necessary.

Keep the sealant bottle out of the reach of children.

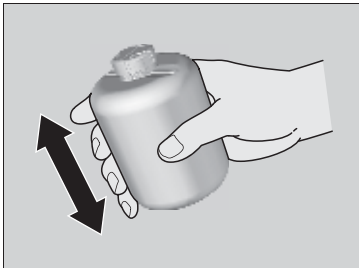
In cold temperatures, the sealant may not flow easily. In this situation, warm it by keeping the bottle in the passenger compartment before using.

The sealant is latex based and can permanently stain clothing and other materials. Be careful during handling and wipe up any spills immediately.

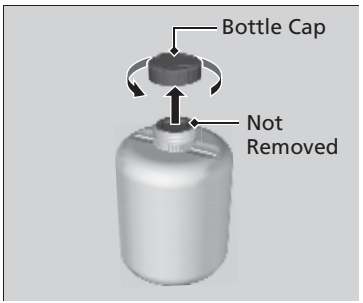
Do not remove the empty bottle after injecting the sealant.

See a Honda dealer for a replacement of sealant bottle and proper disposal of the empty bottle.

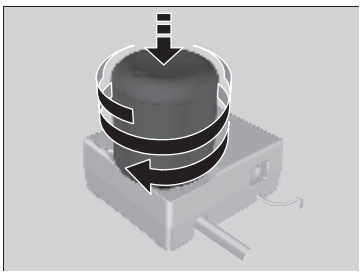
Continued



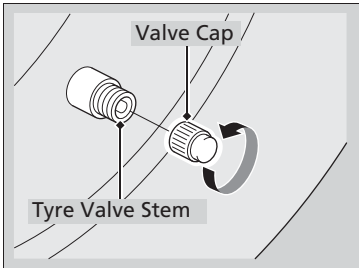
3. Shake the bottle well.



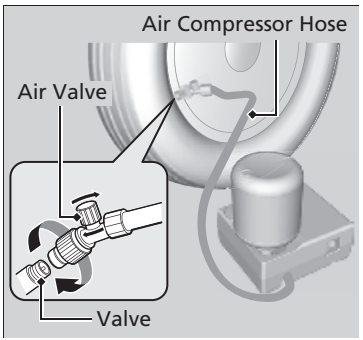
4. Remove the bottle cap.
▶ Do not remove the sealed cover.



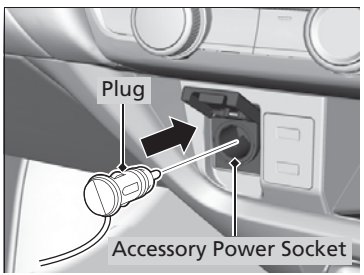
5. Screw the sealed bottle onto the air compressor.
▶ Screw the bottle tightly so that it does not become loose.



6. Remove the valve cap from the tyre valve stem.



7. Screw the air compressor hose onto the tyre valve.
▶ Make sure the air valve is closed and the air compressor is turned off.



8. Plug in the compressor to the accessory power socket.
▶ Be careful not to pinch the cord in a door or window.
➡ **Accessory Power Socket** P. 200

9. Turn on the vehicle's power system.
➡ **Carbon Monoxide Gas** P. 93

Injecting the Sealant and Air

⚠WARNING

Running the engine with the vehicle in an enclosed or even partly enclosed area can cause a rapid buildup of toxic carbon monoxide.

Breathing this colourless, odourless gas can cause unconsciousness and even death. Only run the engine to power the air compressor with the vehicle outdoors.

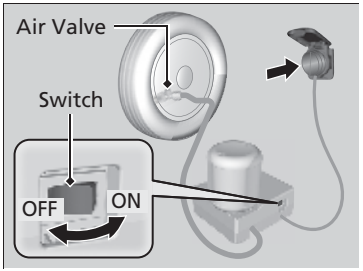
Turn the air compressor off when connecting the air compressor hose.

You hear a motor sound coming from the activated air compressor. This is normal.

If the required air pressure is not reached within 10 minutes, the tyre may be too severely damaged for the kit to provide the necessary seal and your vehicle will need to be towed.

If you want to measure the air pressure using a gauge, turn the air compressor off first.

Continued



10. Turn the air compressor switch on to inflate the tyre.
▶ The compressor starts injecting sealant and air into the tyre.
▶ Refer to the driver's doorjamb label for the specified pressure.

11. After the air pressure reaches to specified pressure, turn off the compressor.
▶ Check the air pressure gauge on the air compressor.
▶ If overinflated, release the air by turning the air valve. Be careful not to spill any sealant.

12. Unplug the kit from the accessory power socket.

13. Unscrew the air compressor hose from the tyre valve. Install the valve cap.
▶ Be careful not to spill any sealant when the hose is disconnected. Wipe away any spills.

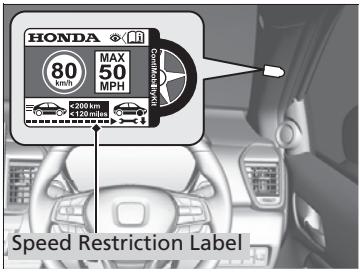
14. Store the tyre repair kit in the boot.
▶ Do not remove the sealant bottle from the air compressor.

Injecting the Sealant and Air

Inform the use of tyre sealant when you ask a Honda dealer or the road assistant service for replacing or repairing the flat tyre.

This air compressor is designed for the automotive tyre. Check the following:
- The power supply of the air compressor is limited to your vehicle's 12-volt DC accessory power socket.
- Do not operate the temporary tyre repair kit compressor for more than 10 minutes. The compressor can overheat and become permanently damaged.
  Make it cool down when using the compressor continuously.

Distributing the Sealant in the Tyre



Speed Restriction Label

1. Apply the speed restriction label to the location as shown.
2. Drive the vehicle for about 10 minutes or 3 to 10 kilometres.
   ▶ Do not exceed 80 km/h.
3. Stop the vehicle in a safe place.

Distributing the Sealant in the Tyre

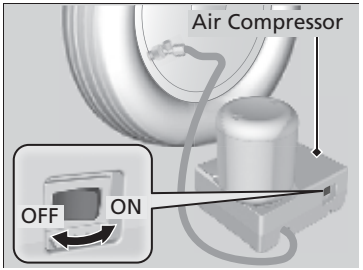
⚠WARNING

Running the engine with the vehicle in an enclosed or even partly enclosed area can cause a rapid buildup of toxic carbon monoxide.

Breathing this colourless, odourless gas can cause unconsciousness and even death. Only run the engine to power the air compressor with the vehicle outdoors.

Refer to the driver's doorjamb label for the specified pressure.

Continued



4. Recheck the air pressure using the gauge on the compressor.
▶ Do not turn the air compressor switch on to check the pressure.

5. If the air pressure is
- Less than 130 kPa (1.3 bar, 19 psi): Do not add air or continue driving. The leak is too severe. Call for help and have your vehicle towed.
  ➡ **Emergency Towing** P. 417
- Specified air pressure (See the label on driver's doorjamb.) or more: Continue driving until you reach the nearest service station. Do not exceed 80 km/h.
- Greater than 130 kPa (1.3 bar, 19 psi), but less than specified air pressure (See the label on driver's doorjamb.): Inflate the tyre to the specified air pressure.
  ➡ **Inflating an Under-inflated Tyre** P. 381

And repeat steps 2 to 4 until you reach the nearest service station. Do not exceed 80 km/h.
▶ The distance to the nearest service station has to be within about 200 kilometres.

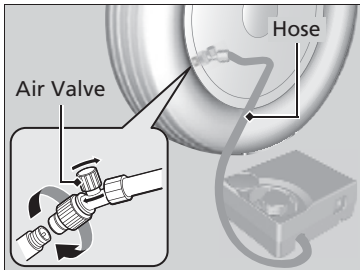
6. Repackage and properly stow the kit.

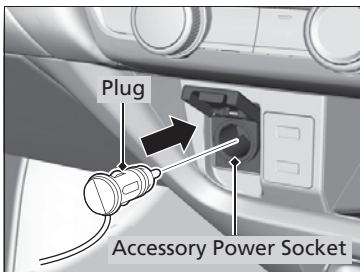
Distributing the Sealant in the Tyre

Make sure to store the air compressor with the empty bottle in the boot.

Inflating an Under-inflated Tyre

You can use the kit to inflate a non-punctured under-inflated tyre.





1. Open the boot floor lid.
   ➡ **Getting Ready to Temporarily Repair the Flat Tyre** P. 374
2. Place the kit, face up, on flat ground near the tyre to inflate, away from traffic. Do not place the kit on its side.
3. Remove the valve cap.
4. Attach the hose onto the tyre valve stem. Screw it until it is tight.
   ▶ Make sure the air valve is closed.
5. Plug in the compressor to the accessory power socket.
   ▶ Be careful not to pinch the cord in a door or window.
   ➡ **Accessory Power Socket** P. 200
6. Turn on the vehicle's power system.
   ➡ **Carbon Monoxide Gas** P. 93

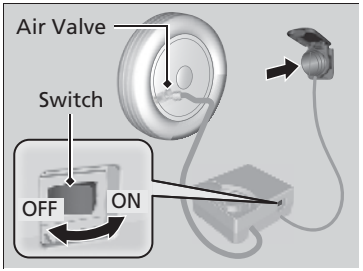
Inflating an Under-inflated Tyre

⚠WARNING

Running the engine with the vehicle in an enclosed or even partly enclosed area can cause a rapid buildup of toxic carbon monoxide.

Breathing this colourless, odourless gas can cause unconsciousness and even death. Only run the engine to power the air compressor with the vehicle outdoors.

Continued



7. Turn the air compressor switch on to inflate the tyre.
▶ The compressor starts to inject air into the tyre.
▶ If you have started the engine, leave it running while injecting air.
8. Inflate the tyre to the specified air pressure.
9. Turn off the air compressor.
▶ Check the pressure gauge on the air compressor.
▶ If overinflated, turn the air valve to deflate.
10. Turn off the vehicle's power system, then unplug the air compressor from the accessory power socket.
11. Unscrew the air compressor hose from the tyre valve stem. Reinstall the valve cap.
12. Repackage and properly stow the kit.

Inflating an Under-inflated Tyre

NOTICE
Do not operate the temporary tyre repair kit compressor for more than 10 minutes. The compressor can overheat and become permanently damaged.

Models with spare tyre

Changing a Flat Tyre

If a tyre goes flat while driving, grasp the steering wheel firmly and brake gradually to reduce speed. Then, stop in a safe place. Replace the flat tyre with a compact spare tyre. Go to a dealer as soon as possible to have the regular tyre repaired or replaced.

1. Park the vehicle on a firm, level, non-slippery surface and apply the parking brake.

2. Put the transmission into P.

3. Turn on the hazard warning lights and set the power mode to VEHICLE OFF.

Changing a Flat Tyre

Follow compact spare precautions:
Periodically check the tyre pressure of the compact spare. It should be set to the specified pressure.
Specified Pressure: 420 kPa (4.2 bar, 60 psi)

When driving with the compact spare tyre, keep the vehicle speed under 80 km/h. Replace with regular tyre as soon as possible.

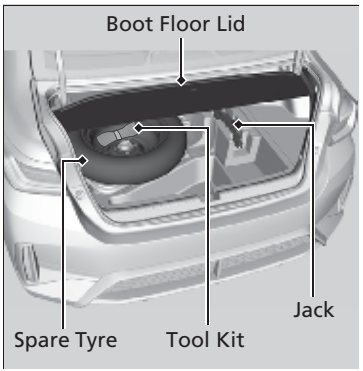
The compact spare tyre and wheel in your vehicle are specifically for this model. Do not use them with another vehicle. Do not use another type of compact spare tyre or wheel with your vehicle.

Do not mount tyre chains on a compact spare tyre. If a chain-mounted front tyre goes flat, remove one of the regular rear tyres and replace it with the compact spare tyre. Remove the flat front tyre and replace it with the regular tyre that was removed from the rear. Mount the tyre chains on the front tyre.

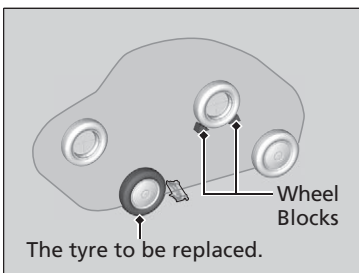
A compact spare tyre gives a harsher ride and less traction on some road surfaces. Use greater caution while driving.

Continued

Getting Ready to Replace the Flat Tyre



1. Pull the strap on the boot floor lid and open the lid.
2. Take the tool kit and jack out of the boot.
3. Unscrew the wing bolt, and remove the spacer cone. Then, remove the spare tyre.



4. Place a wheel block or rock in front and rear of the wheel diagonal to the flat tyre.

Changing a Flat Tyre

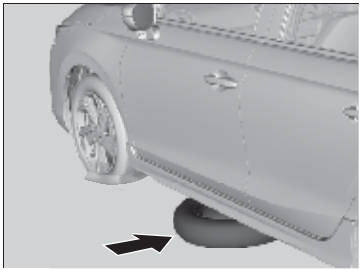
The compact spare tyre is smaller than the regular tyre. Your vehicle's ground clearance reduces when the compact spare tyre is installed. Driving over road debris or bumps could possibly damage the underside of your vehicle.

WARNING: The jack can only be used for helping an emergency vehicle breakdown, not for changing the regular seasonal tyre or any other normal maintenance or repair operation.

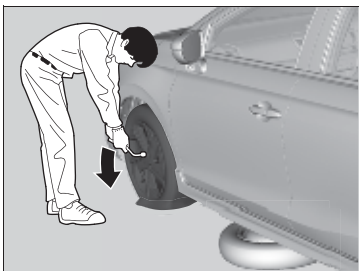
NOTICE

Do not use the jack if it doesn't work properly. Call your dealer or a professional towing service.

Do not use more than one compact spare tyre at the same time.



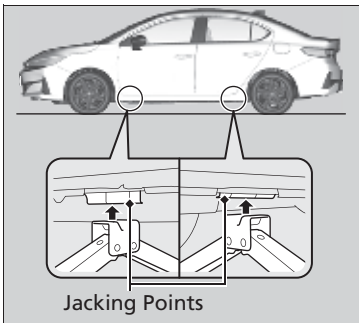
5. Place the spare tyre (wheel side up) under the vehicle body, near the tyre that needs to be replaced.



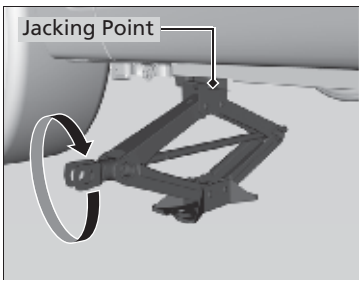
6. Loosen each wheel nut about one turn using the wheel nut wrench.

Continued

How to Set Up the Jack



1. Place the jack under the jacking point closest to the tyre to be changed.



2. Turn the end bracket clockwise as shown in the image until the top of the jack contacts the jacking point.
▶ Make sure that the jacking point tab is resting in the jack notch.

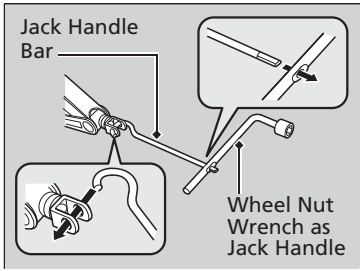
How to Set Up the Jack

⚠WARNING

The vehicle can easily roll off the jack, seriously injuring anyone underneath.

Follow the directions for changing a tyre exactly, and no person should place any portion of their body under a vehicle that is supported by a jack.

WARNING: The jack shall be placed on a flat and stable surface on the same level as the vehicle is parked.



3. Raise the vehicle, using the jack handle bar and the jack handle, until the tyre is off the ground.

How to Set Up the Jack

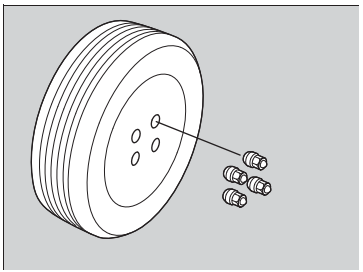
Do not use the jack with people or luggage in the vehicle.

Use the jack provided in your vehicle.
Other jacks may not support the weight (“load”) or may not fit the jacking point.

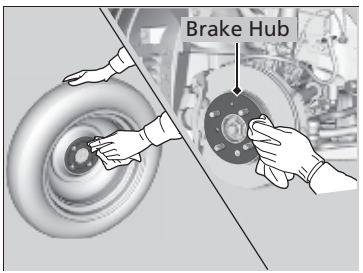
The following instructions must be followed to use the jack safely:
- Do not use while the power system is on.
- Use only where the ground is firm and level.
- Use only at the jacking points.
- Do not get in the vehicle while using the jack.
- Do not put anything on top of or underneath the jack.

Continued

Replacing the Flat Tyre



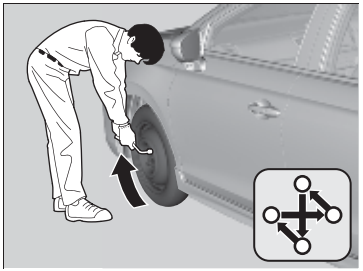
1. Remove the wheel nuts and flat tyre.



2. Wipe the mounting surfaces of the wheel with a clean cloth.
3. Mount the spare tyre.
4. Screw the wheel nuts until they touch the lips around the mounting holes, then stop rotating.

Replacing the Flat Tyre

Do not over tighten the wheel nuts by applying extra torque using your foot or a pipe.

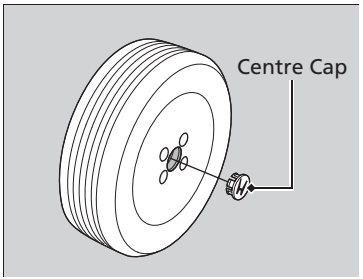


5. Lower the vehicle and remove the jack. Tighten the wheel nuts in the order indicated in the image. Go around tightening the nuts two to three times in this order.

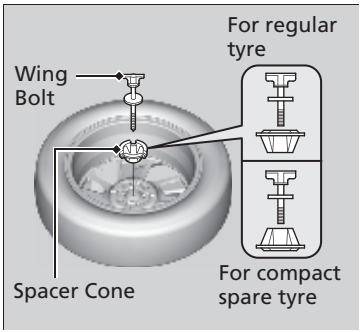
Wheel nut torque:
108 N·m (11 kgf·m, 80 lbf·ft)

Continued

■ Storing the Flat Tyre



1. Remove the centre cap.



2. Place the flat tyre face down in the spare tyre well.
3. Remove the spacer cone from the wing bolt, flip it over, and insert it back on the bolt. Secure the flat tyre with the wing bolt.
4. Securely store the wheel nut wrench and jack handle bar back in the tool bag. Store the tool bag and jack in the boot.

Storing the Flat Tyre

⚠WARNING

Loose items can fly around the interior in a crash and can seriously injure the occupants.
Store the wheel, jack, and tools securely before driving.

Models with deflation warning system

Deflation Warning System and the Compact Spare Tyre

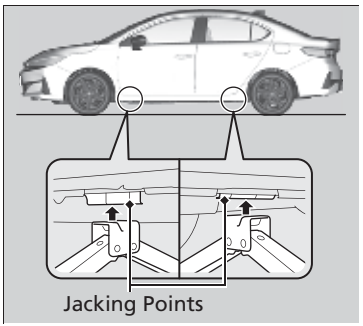
If you replace a flat tyre with the spare tyre, the low tyre pressure/deflation warning system indicator comes on while you are driving. After driving for a few kilometres, **Tyre Pressure Monitor System Problem** will appear on the driver information interface and the indicator will start blinking for a short time and then stay on; however, this is normal and is no cause for concern.

Calibrate the deflation warning system when you replace the tyre with a specified regular tyre.

➡ **Deflation Warning System Initialisation** P. 239

Models with tyre repair kit

Your vehicle has jacking points as shown.
When replacing your tyres, consult a dealer.


Jacking Points

Checking the Procedure

If the power system won't start, check the following items and take appropriate action.

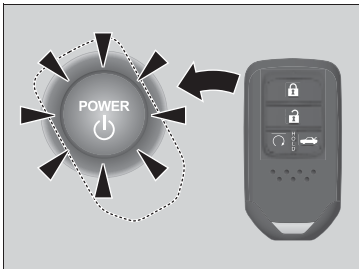
Checklist	Condition	What to Do
Check if the related indicator or driver information interface messages come on.	The **Temperature Too Low For Vehicle To Operate** message appears.	• You must wait for an increase in the ambient temperature or move the vehicle to a warmer location. • Consult a dealer if necessary.
	The **To Start, Hold Remote Near Start Button** message appears. ▶Make sure the keyless remote is in its operating range. ➡ **POWER Button Operating Range** P. 162	➡ **If the Keyless Remote Battery is Weak** P. 394
Check the shift position.	The transmission is not in P.	Change the shift position to P.
Check the immobilizer system indicator.	When the immobilizer system indicator is blinking, the power system cannot be turned on.	➡ **Immobilizer System** P. 154 ➡ **Immobilizer System Indicator** P. 105
Check the power system starting procedure.		Follow the instructions, and try to start the power system again. ➡ **Turning on the Power** P. 218
Check the fuses.		Check all fuses, or have your vehicle checked by a dealer. ➡ **Inspecting and Changing Fuses** P. 416

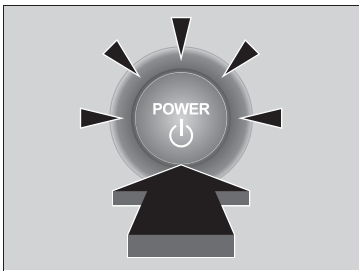
If you cannot turn on the power system after checking all the items in the list above, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

If you must start the vehicle immediately, use an assisting vehicle or booster battery to jump start it.
➡ **If the 12-Volt Battery Is Dead** P. 396

If the Keyless Remote Battery is Weak

If the beeper sounds, the **To Start, Hold Remote Near Start Button** message appears on the driver information interface, the **POWER** button flashes, and the **READY** indicator does not come on, turn on the power system as follows:





1. Press the **POWER** button.
   ▶ The beeper sounds and the **POWER** button flashes for about 30 seconds.
2. Touch the centre of the **POWER** button with the **H** logo on the keyless remote while the **POWER** button is flashing. The buttons on the keyless remote should be facing you.
   ▶ The beeper sounds, and the **POWER** button stays on for about 10 seconds.
3. Depress the brake pedal and press the **POWER** button while the **POWER** button is on.
   ▶ The **READY** indicator comes on.
   ▶ If you don't depress the pedal, the mode will change to ACCESSORY.

Emergency Power System Off

The **POWER** button may be used to turn the power system off due to an emergency situation even while driving. If you must turn the power system off, do either of the following operations:

- Press and hold the **POWER** button for about two seconds.
- Firmly press the **POWER** button three times.

The steering wheel will not lock. However, because turning off the power system disables the power assist the power system provides to the steering and braking systems, it will require significantly more physical effort and time to steer and slow the vehicle. Use both feet on the brake pedal to slow down the vehicle and stop immediately in a safe place.

The power mode is in ACCESSORY when the power system is stopped.
To change the mode to VEHICLE OFF, put the transmission into P after the vehicle comes to a complete stop.
Then, press the **POWER** button twice without depressing the brake pedal.

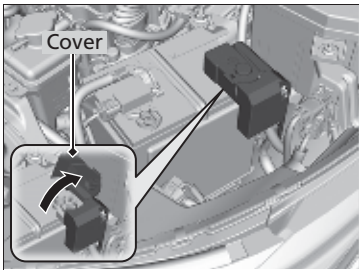
Emergency Power System Off

NOTICE

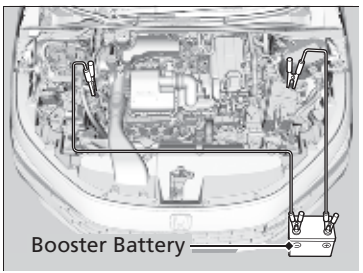
Do not press the **POWER** button while driving unless it is absolutely necessary for the power system to be turned off.
If you press the **POWER** button while driving, the beeper sounds.

Jump Starting Procedure

Turn off the power to electric devices, such as audio and lights. Turn off the power system, then open the bonnet.



1. Open the terminal cover on your vehicle's battery positive ⊕ terminal.



2. Connect the first jumper cable to your vehicle's 12-volt battery ⊕ terminal.

3. Connect the other end of the first jumper cable to the booster battery ⊕ terminal.
- ▶ Use a 12-volt booster battery only.
- ▶ When using an automotive battery charger to boost your 12-volt battery, select a lower charging voltage than 15-volt. Check the charger manual for the proper setting.

4. Connect the second jumper cable to the booster battery ⊖ terminal.

Jump Starting Procedure

⚠WARNING

A 12-volt battery can explode if you do not follow the correct procedure, seriously injuring anyone nearby.

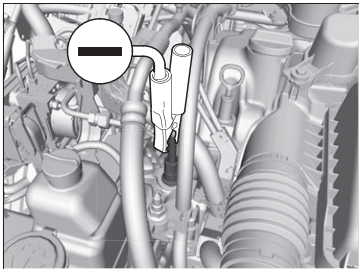
Keep all sparks, open flames, and smoking materials away from the 12-volt battery.

NOTICE

If a 12-volt battery sits in extreme cold, the electrolyte inside can freeze. Attempting to jump start with a frozen 12-volt battery can cause it to rupture.

Securely attach the jumper cables clips so that they do not come off when the engine vibrates. Also be careful not to tangle the jumper cables or allow the cable ends to touch each other while attaching or detaching the jumper cables.

12-volt battery performance degrades in cold conditions and may prevent the engine from starting.



5. Connect the other end of the second jumper cable to the stud bolt as shown. Do not connect this jumper cable to any other part.
6. If your vehicle is connected to another vehicle, start the assisting vehicle's engine and increase its RPM slightly.
7. Attempt to start your vehicle's engine. If it turns over slowly, check that the jumper cables have good metal-to-metal contact.

Continued

What to Do After the Power System Starts

Once your vehicle's power system has started, remove the jumper cables in the following order.

1. Disconnect the jumper cable from your vehicle's ground.
2. Disconnect the other end of the jumper cable from the booster battery ⊖ terminal.
3. Disconnect the jumper cable from your vehicle's 12-volt battery ⊕ terminal.
4. Disconnect the other end of the jumper cable from the booster battery ⊕ terminal.

Have your vehicle inspected by a nearby service station or a dealer.

If the 12-Volt Battery Is Dead

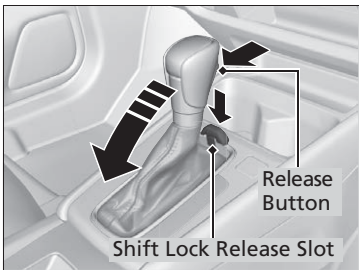
The Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow, vehicle stability assist (VSA) system, vehicle stability assist (VSA) **OFF**, safety support, low tyre pressure/deflation warning system*, Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS), and Road Departure Mitigation indicator may come on after reconnecting the 12-volt battery.
Drive a short distance at more than 20 km/h. Each indicator should go off. If it does not, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

* Not available on all models

Shift Lever Does Not Move

Follow the procedure below if you cannot move the shift lever out of the P position.

Releasing the Lock



1. Set the parking brake.
2. Remove the built-in key from the keyless remote.
3. Insert the key into the shift lock release slot.
4. While pushing the key down, press the shift lever release button, and place the shift lever into N.
   ▶ The lock is now released. Have the shift lever checked by a dealer as soon as possible.

How to Handle Overheating

Overheating symptoms are as follows:

- The **High Temperature. Power Reduced.** message appears on the driver information interface.
- The **Engine Temperature Too Hot. Allow Engine To Cool.** message appears on the driver information interface.
- Steam or spray comes out of the engine compartment.

The High Temperature. Power Reduced. Message Appears on the Driver Information Interface

The **High Temperature. Power Reduced.** message appears on the driver information interface when the power system temperature is high.

1. Immediately park the vehicle in a safe place.
▶ Set the parking brake, and put the transmission into P, and set the parking brake. Turn off all accessories and turn on the hazard warning lights.
2. Keep the power mode in ON, and wait until the message disappears.
▶ If the message does not disappear, have your vehicle inspected at a dealer.

The Engine Temperature Too Hot. Allow Engine To Cool. Message Appears on the Driver Information Interface

■ First thing to do

1. Immediately park the vehicle in a safe place.
2. Turn off all accessories and turn on the hazard warning lights.
▶ **No steam or spray present:**
Keep the power system on and open the bonnet.
▶ **Steam or spray is present:**
Turn off the power system and wait until it subsides. Then, open the bonnet.

How to Handle Overheating

⚠WARNING

Steam and spray from an overheated engine can seriously scald you.

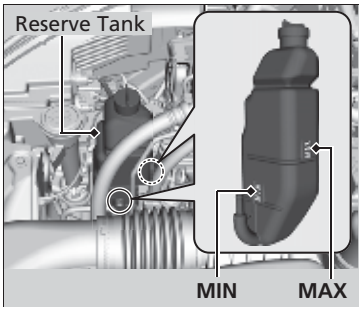
Do not open the bonnet if steam is coming out.

NOTICE

Continuing to drive with the **Engine Temperature Too Hot. Allow Engine To Cool.** message on the driver information interface may damage the engine.

If **High Temperature. Power Reduced.** message on the driver information interface, your vehicle has less ability to accelerate and may be harder to start on an incline.

■ **Next thing to do**



1. Check that the cooling fan is operating and turn the power system off once **Engine Temperature Too Hot. Allow Engine To Cool.** message disappears.
   ▶ If the cooling fan is not operating, immediately turn the power system off.
2. Once the engine has cooled down, inspect the coolant level and check the cooling system components for leaks.
   ▶ If the coolant level in the reserve tank is low, add coolant until it reaches the **MAX** mark.
   ▶ If there is no coolant in the reserve tank, check that the radiator is cool. Cover the radiator cap with a heavy cloth and open the cap. If necessary, add coolant up to the base of the filler neck, and put the cap back on.

■ **Last thing to do**

Once the engine has cooled sufficiently, turn the power system on.
If the **Engine Temperature Too Hot. Allow Engine To Cool.** message does not appear, resume driving. If it appears again, contact a dealer for repairs.

How to Handle Overheating

⚠WARNING

Removing the radiator cap while the engine is hot can cause the coolant to spray out, seriously scalding you.

Always let the engine and radiator cool down before removing the radiator cap.

If the coolant is leaking, contact a dealer for repairs.

Use water as an emergency/temporary measure only. Have a dealer flush the system with proper antifreeze as soon as possible.

If the Engine Oil Pressure Low Warning Appears



■ **Reasons for the warning to appear**

Appears when the engine oil pressure is low.

■ **What to do as soon as the warning appears**

1. Immediately park the vehicle on level ground in a safe place.

2. If necessary, turn the hazard warning lights on.

■ **What to do after parking the vehicle**

1. Turn the power system off and let it sit for approximately three minutes.

2. Open the bonnet and check the oil level.
➡ **Oil Check** P. 331

3. Start the engine and check the **Engine Oil Pressure Low** warning.

▶ The warning disappears: Start driving again.

▶ The warning does not disappear: Immediately turn the power system off and contact a dealer for repairs.

If the Engine Oil Pressure Low Warning Appears

NOTICE

Running the engine with low oil pressure can cause serious mechanical damage almost immediately.

If the 12-Volt Battery Charging System Indicator Comes On



■ **Reasons for the indicator to come on**

Comes on when there is a problem with the charging system.

■ **What to do when the indicator comes on**

Stop in a safe place and have your vehicle checked by a dealer immediately.

If the 12-Volt Battery Charging System Indicator Comes On

If you need to stop temporarily, do not turn off the power system. The power system uses the 12-volt battery to activate. You may not be able to turn the power system on again if you have turned it off with this indicator on.

If the Malfunction Indicator Lamp Comes On or Blinks



■ **Reasons for the indicator lamp to come on or blink**

- Comes on when there is a problem with the engine emissions control system or electric vehicle system.
- Blinks when engine misfiring is detected.

■ **What to do when the indicator lamp comes on**

Avoid high speeds and immediately get your vehicle inspected at a dealer.

- Comes on when there is no petrol in the fuel tank, and goes off after vehicle is refueled, power mode is turned on, vehicle is driven, and the power system is turned off multiple times. If it does not go off, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

■ **What to do when the indicator lamp blinks**

Park the vehicle in a safe place with no flammable items and wait at least 10 minutes or more with the engine stopped until it cools.

If the Malfunction Indicator Lamp Comes On or Blinks

NOTICE

If you drive with the malfunction indicator lamp on, the emissions control system and the engine could be damaged.

If the malfunction indicator lamp blinks again when restarting the engine, drive to the nearest dealer at 50 km/h or less. Have your vehicle inspected.

If the Brake System Indicator (Red) Comes On



■ **Reasons for the indicator to come on**

- The brake fluid is low.
- There is a malfunction in the brake system.

■ **What to do when the indicator comes on while driving**

Depress the brake pedal lightly to check pedal pressure.

- If normal, check the brake fluid level the next time you stop.
- If abnormal, take immediate action. Pull the [−] deceleration paddle selector several times to help slow the vehicle using regenerative braking.

■ **Reasons for the indicator to blink**

- There is a problem with the electric parking brake system.

■ **What to do when the indicator blinks**

- Avoid using the parking brake and have your vehicle checked by a dealer immediately.

If the Brake System Indicator (Red) Comes On

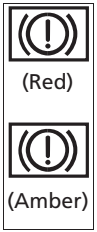
Have your vehicle repaired immediately. It is dangerous to drive with low brake fluid. If there is no resistance from the brake pedal, stop immediately in a safe place. If necessary, pull the [−] deceleration paddle selector to help slow the vehicle using regenerative braking.

If the brake system indicator (red) and **ABS** indicator come on simultaneously, the electronic brake distribution system is not working. This can result in vehicle instability under sudden braking.
Have your vehicle inspected by a dealer immediately.

If the brake system indicator (red) blinks at the same time when the brake system indicator (amber) comes on, the parking brake may not work.
Avoid using the parking brake and have your vehicle checked by a dealer immediately.

➡ **If the Brake System Indicator (Red) comes on or blinks at the same time when the Brake System Indicator (Amber) comes on**
P. 406

If the Brake System Indicator (Red) comes on or blinks at the same time when the Brake System Indicator (Amber) comes on



■ **If the brake system indicator (red) comes on or blinks at the same time when the brake system indicator (amber) comes on, release the parking brake manually or automatically**

➡ **Parking Brake** P. 301

- If the brake system indicator (red) continuously comes on or blinks at the same time when the brake system indicator (amber) comes on, stop the vehicle in a safe place and have it inspected by a dealer immediately.
  ▶ To prevent the vehicle from moving, put the transmission into P.
- If only the brake system indicator (red) is turned off, avoid using the parking brake and have your vehicle checked by a dealer immediately.

If the Brake System Indicator (Red) comes on or blinks at the same time when the Brake System Indicator (Amber) comes on

If you apply the parking brake, you may not be able to release it.

If the brake system indicator (red) and the brake system indicator (amber) come on at the same time, the parking brake is working.

If the brake system indicator (red) blinks at the same time when the brake system indicator (amber) comes on, the parking brake may not work because it is checking the system.

If you repeatedly operate the electric parking brake in a short period of time, the brake stops operating to prevent heating of the system and the indicator blinks.
It returns to its original state in approximately one minute.

If the Electric Power Steering (EPS) System Indicator Comes On



■ **Reasons for the indicator to come on**

Comes on when there is a problem with the EPS system.

■ **What to do when the indicator comes on**

- Stop the vehicle in a safe place and turn on the power system again. If the indicator comes on and stays on, immediately have your vehicle inspected by a dealer.
- If **Do Not Drive** displays on the driver information interface, immediately stop in a safe place and contact a dealer.

Models with deflation warning system

If the Low Tyre Pressure/Deflation Warning System Indicator Comes On or Blinks



■ Reasons for the indicator to come on or blink

A tyre pressure is significantly low, or the deflation warning system has not been calibrated. If there is a problem with the deflation warning system, the indicator blinks for about one minute, and then stays on.

If the compact spare tyre is installed, the indicator will either come on or it will first blink for about one minute, then stay on.

■ What to do when the indicator comes on

Drive carefully and avoid abrupt cornering and hard braking.

Stop your vehicle in a safe place. Check the tyre pressure and adjust the pressure to the specified level. The specified tyre pressure is on a label on the driver side doorjamb.

▶ Calibrate the deflation warning system after the tyre pressure is adjusted.

Deflation Warning System Initialisation P. 239

If the compact spare tyre causes the indicator to come on, change the tyre to a regular tyre. The indicator goes off after calibrating the deflation warning system.

■ What to do when the indicator blinks, then remains on

Have the tyre inspected by a dealer as soon as possible. If the compact spare tyre causes the indicator first blink, and then stay on, change the tyre to a regular tyre.

The indicator goes off after calibrating the deflation warning system.

If the Low Tyre Pressure/Deflation Warning System Indicator Comes On or Blinks

NOTICE

Driving on an extremely underinflated tyre can cause it to overheat. An overheated tyre can fail. Always inflate your tyres to the prescribed level.

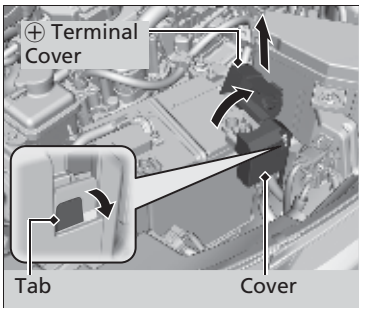
Fuse Locations

If any electrical devices are not working, set the power mode to VEHICLE OFF and check to see if any applicable fuse is blown.

There are two fuse boxes in the engine compartment.

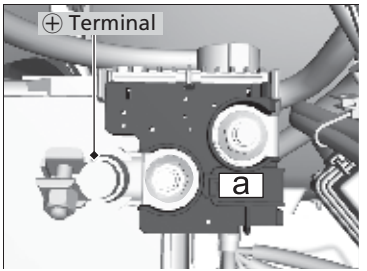
Engine Compartment Fuse Box (Type A)

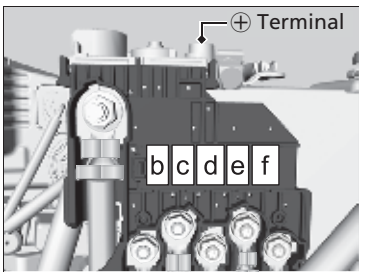
Located near the ⊕ terminal on the battery.



1. Open the ⊕ terminal cover.
2. Remove the cover by pulling the tab as shown.
   Replacement of engine compartment fuses should be done by a dealer.

Circuit protected and fuse rating



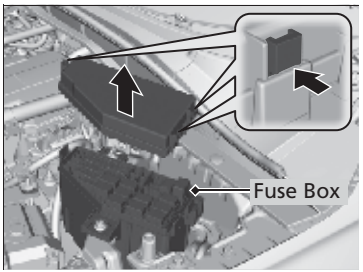


		Circuit Protected	Amps
a		MAIN	170 A
b		MAIN (FAN)	60 A
c		MAIN (ENG)	80 A
d		MAIN (HEV)	60 A
e		EPS	70 A
f		ESB	40 A

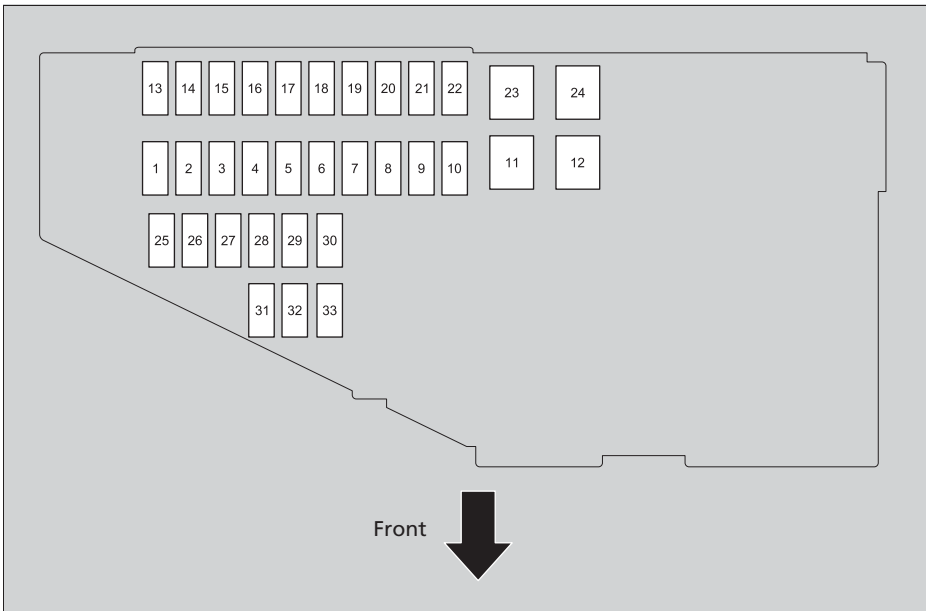
Continued

Engine Compartment Fuse Box (Type B)

Located in the back side of the engine compartment on the left side.
Push the tabs to open the box.



Fuse locations are shown on the image below.
Locate the fuse in question by the fuse number in the image and chart.

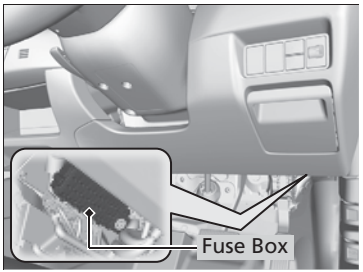


■ **Circuit protected and fuse rating**

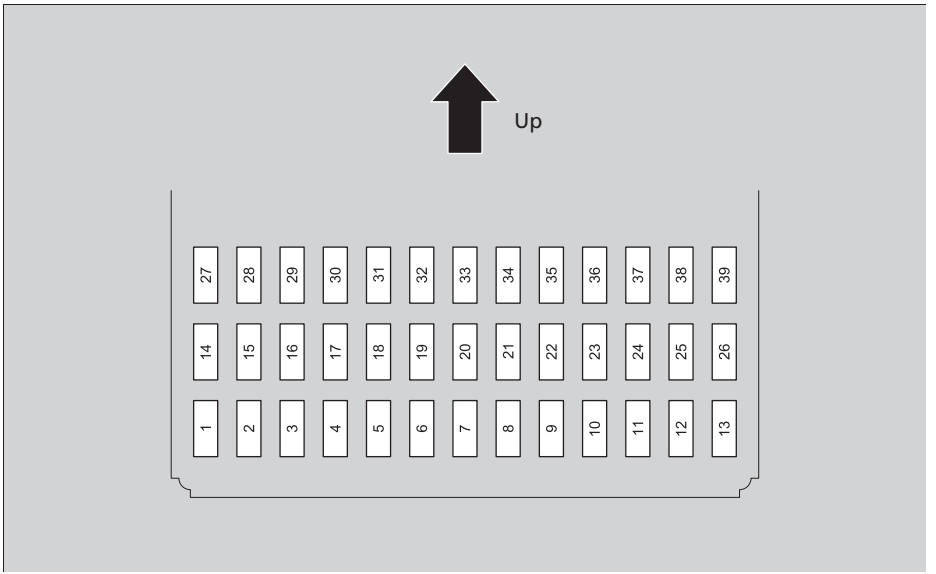
	Circuit Protected	Amps
1	Wiper	30 A
2	–	–
3	Hazard	10 A
4	Stop	10 A
5	PCU EWP	15 A
6	EVTC	20 A
7	IMG	10 A
8	IGP	15 A
9	IG Coil	15 A
10	DBW	15 A
11	ABS/VSA MTR	40 A
12	Main Fan	30 A
13	–	–
14	Engine Water Pump	30 A
15	Battery Sensor	7.5 A
16	–	–
17	Back Up FI-ECU	10 A
18	Horn	10 A
19	–	–
20	–	–
21	Back Up Main	15 A
22	Back Up	10 A
23	Sub Fan	30 A
24	ABS/VSA FSR	40 A
25	IGP2 Sub	7.5 A
26	IGPS (LAF)	10 A
27	–	–
28	–	–
29	–	–
30	–	–
31	–	–
32	–	–
33	–	–

Driver's Side Interior Fuse Box

Located under the dashboard.



Fuse locations are shown on the image below.
Locate the fuse in question by the fuse number in the image and chart.



■ **Circuit protected and fuse rating**

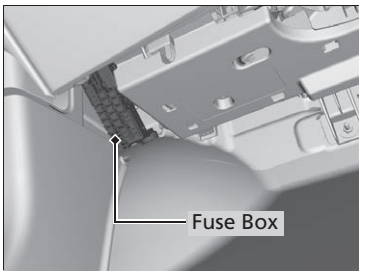
	Circuit Protected	Amps
1	Accessory	7.5 A
2	Accessory Key Lock	7.5 A
3	–	–
4	–	–
5	Option	10 A
6	Option2	10 A
7	Meter	10 A
8	Fuel Pump	15 A
9	A/C	10 A
10	–	20 A
11	Mon	5 A
12	Right Side Door Lock	10 A
13	Left Side Door Unlock	10 A
14	Rear Left Power Window	20 A
15	Front Passenger's Power Window	20 A
16	Door Lock	20 A
17	Transmission Control Unit	10 A
18	–	–
19	Sunroof*	(20 A)
20	Starter Cut	7.5 A
21	ACG	10 A
22	Daytime Running Lights	7.5 A
23	–	–
24	Option	7.5 A
25	–	–
26	Right Side Door Unlock	10 A
27	Rear Right Power Window	20 A
28	Driver's Power Window	20 A
29	Front Accessory Socket	20 A
30	Smart	10 A
31	USB*	(10 A)
32	Seat Ventilators*	(20 A)
33	–	–
34	ABS/VSA	10 A
35	SRS	10 A
36	–	–
37	IMG	10 A
38	Left Side Door Lock	10 A
39	–	–

* Not available on all models

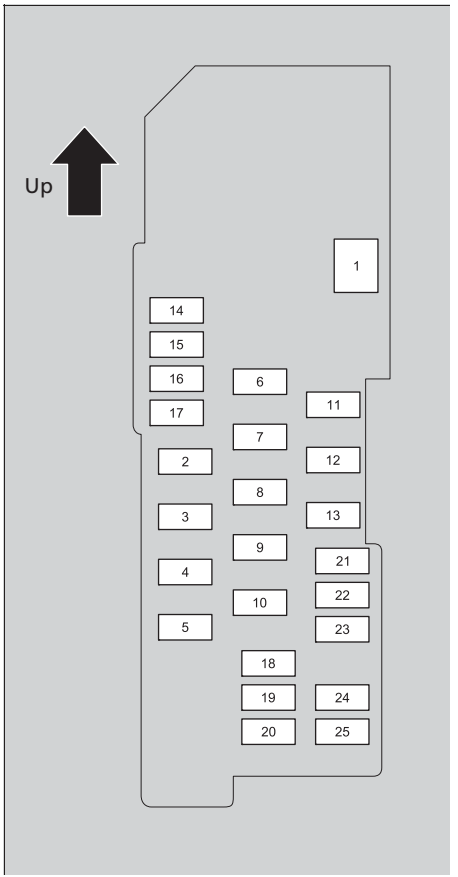
Continued

Passenger's Side Interior Fuse Box

Located under the dashboard.



Fuse locations are shown on the image below.
Locate the fuse in question by the fuse number in the image and chart.



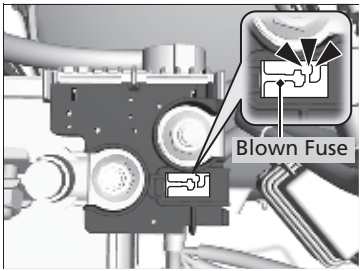
■ **Circuit protected and fuse rating**

	Circuit Protected	Amps
1	Fuse Box Main1*1	60 A
2	IG Main	30 A
3	IG Main 2	30 A
4	Relay Module1	30 A
5	Relay Module2	30 A
6	Fuse Box Main2	40 A
7	Fuse Box Option*	(40 A)
8	–	–
9	–	–
10	–	–
11	–	–
12	Heater Motor	30 A
13	Rear Demister	30 A
14	SRS	10 A
15	IG Hold 3	10 A
16	IG Hold 1	10 A
17	Smart	10 A
18	–	–
19	USB Charger*	(10 A)
20	Auto Retra*	(7.5 A)
21	Washer	15 A
22	–	–
23	IG Hold 2	15 A
24	–	–
25	–	–

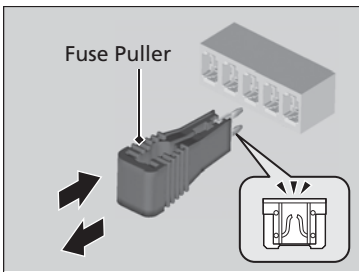
*1:Replacement of this fuses should be done by a dealer.

* Not available on all models

Inspecting and Changing Fuses



1. Set the power mode to VEHICLE OFF. Turn headlights and all accessories off.
2. Remove the fuse box cover.
3. Check the large fuses in the engine compartment.
   ▶ If the fuse is blown, have it replace by a dealer.



4. Inspect the small fuses in the engine compartment and the vehicle interior.
   ▶ If there is a blown fuse, remove it with a commercially available fuse puller and replace it with a new one.

Inspecting and Changing Fuses

NOTICE

Replacing a fuse with one that has a higher rating greatly increases the chances of damaging the electrical system.

Use the charts to locate the fuse in question and confirm the specified amperage.

➔ **Fuse Locations** P. 409

Replace with a fuse of the same specified amperage.

Call a professional towing service if you need to tow your vehicle.

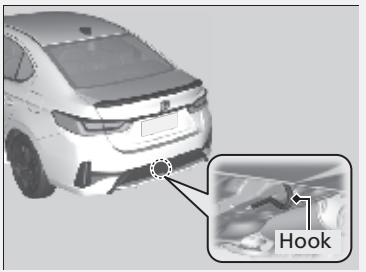
■ **Flatbed equipment**
The operator loads your vehicle on the back of a truck.
This is the best way to transport your vehicle.

■ **Wheel lift equipment**
The tow truck uses two pivoting arms that go under the front tyres and lift them off the ground. The rear tyres remain on the ground. **This is an acceptable way to tow your vehicle.**

Emergency Towing

NOTICE
Trying to lift or tow your vehicle by the bumpers will cause serious damage. The bumpers are not designed to support the vehicle's weight.

Do not use the hook on the rear of your vehicle for the towing of other vehicles or emergency removal of your vehicle. The hook may break. If your vehicle needs to be towed backward, contact a dealer or a professional towing service.



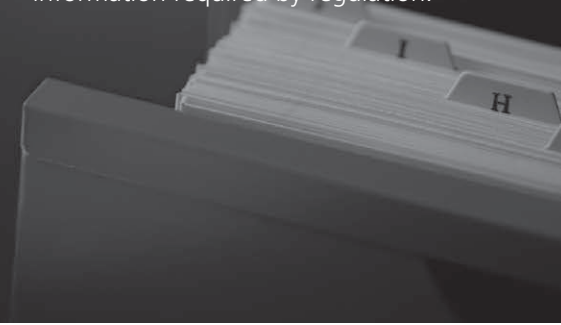
NOTICE
Improper towing such as towing behind a motorhome or other motor vehicle can damage the transmission.

Never tow your vehicle with just a rope or chain. It is very dangerous since ropes or chains may shift from side to side or break.

Make sure the parking brake is released. If you cannot release the parking brake, your vehicle must be transported by the flatbed equipment.
➡ **Parking Brake** P. 301

Information

This chapter includes your vehicle's specifications, locations of identification numbers, and other information required by regulation.



Specifications 420
Identification Numbers
Vehicle Identification Number (VIN), Engine Number, Motor Number and Transmission Number 423
Devices that Emit Radio Waves* 424
Open Source Licence 425

* Not available on all models

■ Vehicle Specifications

Model	CITY	
Curb Weight	1,224-1,232 kg*1 1,247 kg*2 1,294 kg*3 1,225 kg*4	
Maximum Permissible Weight	1,700 kg	
Maximum Permissible Axle Weight	Front	925 kg
	Rear	780 kg

*1: Thai models
*2: Malaysian models
*3: Indian, Bhutanese, Sri Lankan and Nepalese models
*4: Trinidad and Bangladeshi models

■ Engine Specifications

Type	Water-cooled in-line 4-cylinder DOHC	
Bore x Stroke	73.0 x 89.5 mm	
Displacement	1,498 cm³	
Compression Ratio	13.5 : 1	
Spark Plugs	NGK	DILZKAR7C11H
	DENSO	DXE22HCR11H

■ Fuel

Type	Unleaded petrol/gasohol up to E20 (80% petrol and 20% ethanol), research octane number 91 or higher*1 Unleaded petrol, research octane number 91 or higher*2
Fuel Tank Capacity	40 L

*1: Thai, Indian, Bhutanese, Sri Lankan and Nepalese models
*2: Except Thai, Indian, Bhutanese, Sri Lankan and Nepalese models

■ 12-V Battery

Capacity	27AH(5)/30AH(20)

■ Washer Fluid

Tank Capacity	1.8 L

■ Light Bulbs

Headlights (High/Low Beams)	LED	
Front Turn Signal Lights	LED	
Position/Daytime Running Lights	LED	
Grille Light*	LED	
Side Turn Signal Lights (on Front Fenders)*	5 W Amber (WY5W)	
Side Turn Signal Lights (on Door Mirrors)*	LED	
Brake Lights	LED	
Taillights/Rear Side Marker Lights	LED	
Taillights	LED	
Rear Turn Signal Lights	21 W Amber (WY21W)	
Back-Up Lights	16 W (W16W)	
High-Mount Brake Light	LED	
Rear Licence Plate Lights	5 W (W5W)	
Interior Lights		
	Front Map Lights	8W*1 LED*2
	Rear Map Lights*	LED
	Ambient Light*	LED
	Ceiling Light*	8 W
	Centre Pocket Light	LED
	Boot Light	5 W
	Foot Lights*	LED
	Door Pocket Lights*	LED
	Door Inner Handle Lights*	LED

*1: Models without sunroof
*2: Models with sunroof

* Not available on all models

■ Air Conditioning

Refrigerant Type	HFC-134a (R-134a)
Charge Quantity	405 - 455 g

■ Brake Fluid

Specified	Brake Fluid with DOT 3 or DOT 4

■ Transmission Fluid

Specified	Honda ATF DW-1	
Capacity	Change	1.8 L

■ Engine Oil

Recommended	·Honda Genuine Motor Oil 0W-20 ·API service SN or higher grade 0W-20	
Capacity	Change	3.1 L
	Change including filter	3.3 L

■ Engine Coolant

Specified	Honda All Season Antifreeze/Coolant Type 2
Ratio	50/50 with distilled water
Capacity	3.73 L*1 (change including the remaining 0.45 L in the reserve tank) 3.85 L*2 (change including the remaining 0.45 L in the reserve tank)

*1: Indian, Bhutanese, Sri Lankan and Nepalese models
*2: Malaysian, Thai, Trinidad and Bangladeshi models

■ Tyre

Regular	Size*1	185/55R16 87H 185/60R16 86H
	Pressure	See the label on driver's doorjamb
Compact Spare*	Size	T135/80D15 100M
	Pressure kPa (bar) psi	420 (4.2) 60
Wheel Size	Regular	16 x 6J
	Compact Spare*	15 x 4T

*1: Original tyre size is mentioned on the tyre information label on the driver's doorjamb.

Indian model only
The tyres fitted in the vehicles meet the requirement of the BIS and they comply with the requirements under the central motor vehicles rules (CMVR), 1989.

■ Brake

Type	Power assisted
Front	Ventilated disc
Rear	Solid disc
Parking	Electric parking brake system

* Not available on all models

Continued

■ Vehicle Dimensions

Malaysian models

Length		4,594 mm
Width		1,748 mm
Height		1,467 mm
Wheelbase		2,589 mm
Track	Front	1,497 mm
	Rear	1,485 mm

Thai models

Length		4,577 mm*1 4,594 mm*2
Width		1,748 mm
Height		1,480 mm
Wheelbase		2,589 mm
Track	Front	1,495 mm
	Rear	1,486 mm

*1: Models without boot spoiler
*2: Models with boot spoiler

Indian, Bhutanese, Sri Lankan and Nepalese models

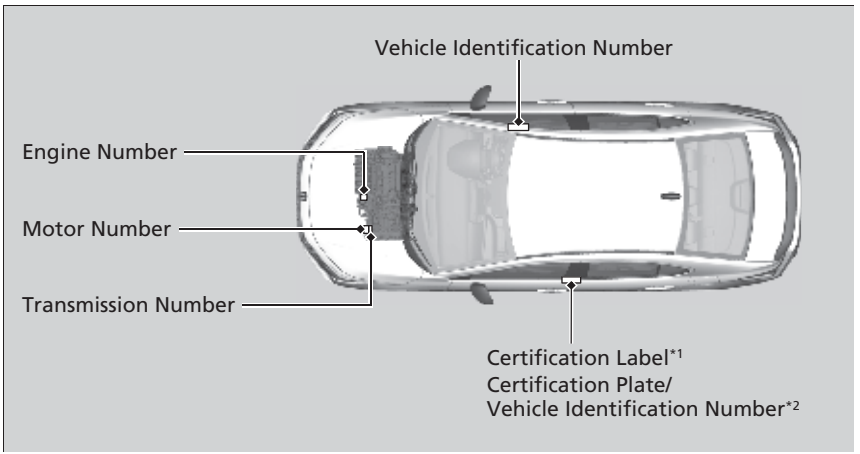
Length		4,594 mm
Width		1,748 mm
Height		1,489 mm
Wheelbase		2,600 mm
Track	Front	1,496 mm
	Rear	1,485 mm

Trinidad and Bangladeshi models

Length	4,594 mm
Width	1,748 mm
Height	1,477 mm
Wheelbase	2,600 mm

Vehicle Identification Number (VIN), Engine Number, Motor Number and Transmission Number

Your vehicle has a 17-digit vehicle identification number (VIN) used to register your vehicle for warranty purposes, and for licensing and insuring your vehicle.
The locations of your vehicle's VIN, engine number, motor number and transmission number are shown as follows.

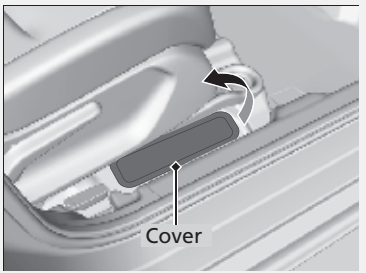


*1: Thai, Trinidad and Bangladeshi models
*2: Indian, Bhutanese, Sri Lankan, Nepalese and Malaysian models

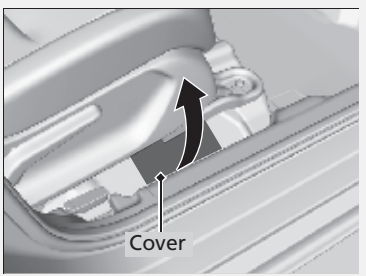
Vehicle Identification Number (VIN), Engine Number, Motor Number and Transmission Number

The interior vehicle identification number (VIN) is located under the cover.

Malaysian, Thai, Trinidad and Bangladeshi models



Indian, Bhutanese, Sri Lankan and Nepalese models



Devices that Emit Radio Waves*

The following products and systems on your vehicle emit radio waves when in operation.

Thai models

Keyless Access System
เครื่อง โทรคมนาคมและอุปกรณ์นี้ มีความสอดคล้องตามข้อกำหนดของ กสทช

 * Not available on all models

■ **TCU open source licence***

Free/Open Source Software Information
This product contains Free/Open Source Software(FOSS).
The licence information and/or the source code of such FOSS can be found at the following URL.
https://www.denso.com/global/en/opensource/tcu/honda/

* Not available on all models

A

ABS (Anti-lock Brake System) 308
ACC (Adaptive Cruise Control) with Low Speed Follow 266
Accessories and Modifications 369
Accessory Power Socket 200
Acoustic Vehicle Alerting System 233
Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow 266
Adding
- Coolant 333
- Engine Oil 332
- Washer 337

Additives, Engine Oil 330, 331
Adjusting
- Armrest 192
- Front Seats 184
- Head Restraints 190
- Headlights 169
- Mirrors 181
- Rear Seats 187
- Steering Wheel 180
- Temperature 115

Agile Handling Assist 236
Air Conditioning System (Climate Control System) 207
- Changing the Mode 207
- Defrosting the Windscreen and Windows 209
- Dust and Pollen Filter 361
- Recirculation/Fresh Air Mode 207, 208
- Sensors 210
- Using Automatic Climate Control 207

Air Pressure 421
Airbags 50
- After a Collision 53
- Airbag Care 59
- Event Data Recorder 1
- Front Airbags (SRS) 52
- Indicator 58, 103
- Sensors 50
- Side Airbag 55
- Side Curtain Airbag 57

Anti-lock Brake System (ABS) 308
- Indicator 102

Armrest 192
Auto Door Locking/Unlocking 151
Auto High-Beam 170
Automatic Brake Hold 100, 305
- Indicator 100, 305

Automatic Brake Hold System
- Indicator 305

Automatic Intermittent Wipers 177
Average Fuel Economy 119
Average Speed 122

B

Battery 10, 356
- 12-Volt Battery Charging System Indicator 100, 403
- High Voltage 10, 241
- If the Battery Is Dead 396
- Maintenance (Checking the Battery) 356

Belts (Seat) 40
Beverage Holders 196
Booster Seats (For Children) 91
Boot 152
- Lid 152
- Light Bulb 346

Brake System 301
- Anti-lock Brake System (ABS) 308
- Automatic Brake Hold 305
- Brake Assist System 309
- Fluid 336
- Foot Brake 304
- Indicator 98, 99, 100, 405
- Parking Brake 301

Brightness Control (Instrument Panel) 178
Bulb Replacement 339
- Back-Up Lights 342
- Boot Light 346
- Brake Lights 340
- Ceiling Light 345
- Headlights 339
- High-Mount Brake Light 343
- Map Lights 345
- Position/Daytime Running Lights 339
- Rear Licence Plate Lights 343
- Rear Side Marker Lights 340
- Rear Turn Signal Lights 340
- Side Turn Signal Lights 339
- Taillights 340, 342

Bulb Specifications 420

C

Carbon Monoxide Gas 93
Carrying Luggage 215, 216
Certification Label 423
Changing Bulbs 339
Charging System Indicator 100, 403
Child Restraint System 60
  Booster Seats 91
  Child Restraint System for Infants 64
  Child Restraint System for Small Children .. 66
  Installing a Child Restraint System with a Lap/Shoulder Seat Belt 87
  Installing a Lower Anchorage-Compatible Child Restraint System 83
  Larger Children 90
  Rearward Facing Child Restraint System 64
  Selecting a Child Restraint System 67
  Using Tether 89
Child Safety 60
  Childproof Door Locks 150
Cleaning the Exterior 366
Cleaning the Interior 363
Climate Control System 207
  Changing the Mode 207
  Defrosting the Windscreen and Windows 209
  Dust and Pollen Filter 361
  Recirculation/Fresh Air Mode 207, 208
  Sensors 210
  Using Automatic Climate Control 207
Clock 138
CMBS (Collision Mitigation Braking System) 245
Coat Hook 199
Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS) 245
Compact Spare Tyre 421
Console Compartment 195
Controls 137
Coolant (Engine) 333
  Adding the Coolant 334
  Checking the Coolant 333
  Overheating 400
Creeping 226
Cup Holders 196
Customize 128

D

Daytime Running Lights 175
Dead Battery 396
Deceleration Paddle Selector 229
Deflation Warning System 237
Defrosting the Windscreen and Windows 209
Devices that Emit Radio Waves 424
Dimming
  Headlights 166
Dipstick (Engine Oil) 331
Directional Signals (Turn Signals) 165
Door Mirrors 182
Doors 140
  Auto Door Locking 151
  Auto Door Unlocking 151
  Door/Boot Open Indicator 39
  Keys 140
  Locking/Unlocking the Doors from the Inside 149
  Locking/Unlocking the Doors from the Outside 142
  Lockout Prevention System 148
Drive Cycle Score/Lifetime Points 136
Driver Information Interface 116
Driver's Side Pocket 197
Driving 213
  Braking 301
  Shifting Gear 227
  Transmission 226
  Turning on the Power 218
Dust and Pollen Filter 361

E

e:HEV 9
Eco Assist System 14
Eco Drive Display 126
ECON Mode 232
Elapsed Time 122
Electric Power Steering (EPS) System Indicator 104, 407

Emergency 417
Emergency Stop Signal 310
Engine
Coolant 333
If the Battery Is Dead 396
Number 423
Oil 330
Starting 218
Switch Buzzer 162
Engine Coolant 333
Adding the Coolant 334
Checking the Coolant 333
Overheating 400
Engine Oil 330
Adding 332
Checking 331
Engine Oil Pressure Low Warning 402
Recommended Engine Oil 330
Engine Status Display 127
EPS (Electric Power Steering) System 104
Exhaust Hazard (Carbon Monoxide) 93
Exterior Care (Cleaning) 366
Exterior Mirrors 182

F

Features 211
Filter
Dust and Pollen 361
Flat Tyre 373
Fluids
Brake 336
Engine Coolant 333
Windscreen Washer 337
Folding Down the Rear Seats 187
Foot Brake 304
Front Airbags (SRS) 52
Front Seat Ventilation 206
Front Seats 185
Adjusting 185
Front Wide View Camera 299
Fuel 26, 315
Fuel Economy and CO_2 Emissions 317
Gauge 114
Instant Fuel Economy 119
Low Fuel Indicator 102
Range 119
Recommendation 315
Refueling 315
Fuel Economy 120
Fuel Economy and CO_2 Emissions 317
Fuel Fill Cap 26, 316
Fuel Fill Door 26, 316
Fuses 409
Inspecting and Changing 416
Locations 409, 410, 412, 414

G

Gauges 114
Glass (care) 364, 367
Glove Box 195
G-Meter 123

H

Halogen Bulbs 339
Hazard Warning Button 4
Head Restraints 190
Headlights 166
Adjuster 169
Aiming 339
Dimming 166
Operating 166
High Voltage Battery 241
High Voltage Battery Charge Level Gauge 127
High Voltage System Coolant 335
High-Beam Indicator 104
Honda SENSING 27, 242
Hybrid Vehicle
e:HEV 9

I

Identification Numbers 423
Engine, Motor and Transmission 423
Vehicle Identification 423
Illumination Control
Knob 178
Immobilizer System 154
Indicator 105

Indicators 96
12-Volt Battery Charging System 100
ABS (Anti-lock Brake System) 102
Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) (Amber) .. 108
Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) (White/Green) 108
Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow 266
Auto High-Beam 104
Automatic Brake Hold 100, 305
Automatic Brake Hold System 100, 305
Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS) Indicator (Amber) 109
Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS) Indicator (Grey) 109
Deceleration Paddle Selector 101
ECON Mode 105
Electric Power Steering (EPS) System 104
EV 102
High-Beam 104
Immobilizer System 105
Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS) (Amber) 108
Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS) (White/Green) 109
Lights On 104
Low Fuel 102
Low Tyre Pressure/Deflation Warning System 106
Malfunction Indicator Lamp 100
Parking Brake and Brake System (Red) 98, 99
Parking Brake and Brake System Indicator (Amber) 100
Power System 101
READY 102
Road Departure Mitigation Indicator (Amber) 110
Road Departure Mitigation Indicator (Grey) 110
Road Departure Mitigation System Steering Assist Auto OFF Indicator 110
Safety Support (Amber) 111, 112
Safety Support (Green/Gray) 113
Seat Belt Reminder 102
Security System Alarm 105
Shift Position 101
Speed Alarm Indicator 107
Supplemental Restraint System 103
System Message Indicator 107
Transmission System 101
Turn Signal 104
Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) System 103
VSA OFF 103, 235
Instant Fuel Economy 119
Instrument Panel 95
Brightness Control 178
Interior Lights 193
Interior Rearview Mirror 181

J

Jack (Wheel Nut Wrench) 386
Jacking Points 392
Jump Starting 396

K

Key Number Tag 141
Keys 140
Lockout Prevention 148
Number Tag 141
Rear Door Won't Open 150
Remote Transmitter 142
Types and Functions 140
Kickdown 226

L

Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS) 284
Lead Car Departure Notification System 295
Light Switches 166
Lights 166, 339
Bulb Replacement 339
Daytime Running Lights 175
High-Beam Indicator Light 104
Interior 193
Lights On Indicator 104
Turn Signals 165
Load Limits 216

Locking/Unlocking 140
Auto Door Locking/Unlocking 151
Childproof Door Locks 150
From Inside 149
From Outside 142
Keys 140
Using a Key 147
Lockout Prevention System 148
Low Battery Charge 403
Low Fuel Indicator 102
Low Tyre Pressure/Deflation Warning System Indicator 106, 408
Lower Anchorages 83
Lubricant Specifications Chart 421
Luggage (Load Limit) 216

M

Maintenance 319
12-Volt Battery 356
Brake Fluid 336
Cleaning 363
Climate Control 361
Coolant 333
Oil 331
Precautions 320
Radiator 334
Remote Transmitter 359
Replacing Light Bulbs 339
Safety 321
Transmission Fluid 336
Tyres 349
Under the Bonnet 328
Malfunction Indicator Lamp 100, 404
Map Lights 194
Maximum Permissible Weight 216
Meters, Gauges 114
Mirrors 181
Adjusting 181
Door 182
Exterior 182
Interior Rear View 181
Modifications (and Accessories) 369
Motor
Number 423

N

Numbers (Identification) 423

O

Odometer 115
Oil (Engine) 330
Adding 332
Checking 331
Engine Oil Pressure Low Warning 402
Recommended Engine Oil 330
Viscosity 330
Opening/Closing
Bonnet 329
Boot 152
Power Windows 156
Sunroof 160
Outside Temperature 115
Adjusting 115
Overheating 400

P

Parking Brake 301
Parking Brake and Brake System Indicator 98, 99, 100, 405
Parking Sensor System 313
Passing Indicators 166
Petrol 26, 315
Fuel Economy and CO_2 Emissions 317
Gauge 114
Information 315
Instant Fuel Economy 119
Low Fuel Indicator 102
Refueling 315
POWER Button 162
Power Flow 127
POWER/CHARGE Gauge 114
Precautions While Driving 225
Rain 225
Pregnant Women 47
Puncture (Tyre) 373

R

Radiator 334

Range ... 119
Rear Demister Button ... 179
Rear Seat Reminder ... 188
Rear Seats (Folding Down) ... 187
Rear Sunshade ... 201
Refueling ... 315
  Fuel Gauge ... 114
  Low Fuel Indicator ... 102
  Petrol ... 315, 420
Remote Engine Start ... 220
Remote Transmitter ... 142
Replacement
  12-Volt Battery ... 356
  Bulbs ... 339
  Fuses ... 409, 410, 412, 414
  Wiper Blade Rubber ... 347
Resetting a Trip Meter ... 119
Road Departure Mitigation ... 259
  On and Off ... 262

S

Safe Driving ... 35
Safety Check ... 39
Safety Labels ... 94
Safety Message ... 0
Safety Support ... 124
Seat Belts ... 40
  Checking ... 48
  Fastening ... 45
  Installing a Child Restraint System with a Lap/Shoulder Seat Belt ... 87
  Pregnant Women ... 47
  Reminder ... 42
  Warning Indicator ... 42, 102
Seat Ventilation ... 206
Seats ... 184
  Adjusting ... 184
  Front Seats ... 185
  Rear Seats ... 187
Security System ... 154
  Immobilizer System Indicator ... 105
  Security System Alarm Indicator ... 105
Select Lever ... 227
Selecting a Child Restraint System ... 67
Setting the Clock ... 138
Settings ... 128
Shift Lever ... 227
  Operation ... 227
  Releasing ... 399
  Shift Position Indicator ... 228
  Won't Move ... 399
Shifting (Transmission) ... 227
Side Airbags ... 55
Side Curtain Airbag ... 57
Spare Tyre ... 421
Spark Plugs ... 420
Specifications ... 420
Specified Fuel ... 315
Speedometer ... 114
SRS Airbags (Airbags) ... 52
Steering Wheel ... 180
  Adjusting ... 180
Stopping ... 311
Sunroof ... 160
Supplemental Restraint System (SRS) ... 52
Switches (Around the Steering Wheel) ... 4, 5, 162

T

TCU Open Source Licence ... 425
Temperature
  Outside Temperature Display ... 115
Temperature Sensor ... 115, 210
Temporarily Repairing a Flat Tyre ... 373
Temporary Repair Kit (TRK) ... 373
Time (Setting) ... 138
Tools ... 372
Towing a Trailer ... 217
Towing Your Vehicle
  Emergency ... 417
Transmission ... 227
  Creeping ... 226
  Fluid ... 336
  Kickdown ... 226
  Number ... 423
  Operating the Shift Lever ... 227, 228
  Shift Lever Does Not Move ... 399
  Shift Position Indicator ... 228
  Shifting ... 227
Trip Meter ... 119

TRK (Temporary Repair Kit) 373
Troubleshooting 371
Blown Fuse 409, 410, 412
Brake Pedal Vibrates 30
Buzzer Sounds When Opening Door 32
Emergency Towing 417
Noise When Braking 33
Overheating 400
Power System Won't Start 393
Puncture/Flat Tyre 383
Rear Door Won't Open 31
Shift Lever Won't Move 399
Warning Indicators 96
Turn signals 165
Indicators (Instrument Panel) 104
Turning on the Power 218
Does Not Start 393
If the Battery Is Dead 396
Tyres 349
Air Pressure 421
Checking and Maintaining 349
Inspection 350
Puncture (Flat Tyre) 383
Rotation 353
Spare Tyre 421
Tyre Chains 354
Wear Indicators 351
Winter 354

U

Under-Floor Storage Area 198
Unlocking the Doors 142
Unlocking the Driver's Doors from the Inside 149
USB Ports 205

V

Vanity Mirrors 7
Vehicle Identification Numbers 423
Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) 234
Off Button 235
OFF Indicator 103
System Indicator 103
Ventilation 207
Viscosity (Oil) 330, 421
VSA (Vehicle Stability Assist) 234

W

Warning Indicator On/Blinking 402
Warning Labels 94
Watts 420
Wear Indicators (Tyre) 351
Wheel Nut Wrench (Jack Handle) 386
Window Washers
Adding/Refilling Fluid 337
Switch 176
Windows (Opening and Closing) 156
Windscreen
Cleaning 364, 367
Defrosting/Defogging 209
Washer Fluid 337
Wiper Blades 347
Wipers and Washers 176
Winter Tyres 354
Tyre Chains 354
Wipers and Washers 176
Automatic Intermittent Wipers 177
Checking and Replacing Wiper Blades 347
Wireless Charger 202
Worn Tyres 349